外研社
新概念英语
NEW CONCEPT ENGLISH
3
Developing Skills
沪江论坛荣誉出品
本文档仅用于学习交流之用
不得用于商业目的
沪江论坛
www.hjbbs.com

CONTENTS

Lesson 02 Thirteen equals one 十三等于一 10
Lesson 03 An unknown goddess 无名女神 14
Lesson 04 The double life of Alfred Bloggs 阿尔弗雷德.布洛格斯的双重生活 20
Lesson 05 The facts 确切数字 25
Lesson 06 Smash-and-grab 砸橱窗抢劫 29
Lesson 07 Mutilated ladies 残钞鉴别组 35
Lesson 08 A famous monastery 著名的修道院 39
Lesson 09 Flying cats 飞猫 43
Lesson 10 The loss of the Titanic “泰坦尼克”号的沉没 48
Lesson 11 Not guilty 无罪 54
Lesson 12 Life on a desert island 60
Lesson 13 "It's only me' “是我，别害怕” 64
Lesson 14 A noble gangster 贵族歹徒 69
Lesson 15 Fifty pence worth of trouble 五十便士的麻烦 75
Lesson 16 Mary had a little lamb 玛丽有一头羔羊 80
Lesson 17 The longest suspension bridge in the world世界上最长的吊桥 84
Lesson 18 Electric currents in modern art 现代艺术的电流 90
Lesson 19 A very dear cat 一条贵重的宝贝猫 96
Lesson 20 Pioneer pilots 飞行员的先驱 101
Lesson 21 Daniel Mendoza 丹尼尔.门多萨 105
Lesson 22 By heart 熟记台词 110
Lesson 23 One man's meat is another man's poison 各有所爱 116
Lesson 24 A skeleton in the cupboard “家丑” 123
Lesson 25 The Cutty Sark 卡蒂萨克”号帆船 130
Lesson 26 Wanted: a large biscuit tin 购大饼干筒 136
Lesson 27 Nothing to sell and nothing to buy 不卖也不买 142
Lesson 28 Five pounds too dear 五镑也太贵 148
Lesson 30 The death of a ghost 幽灵之死 161
Lesson 31 A lovable eccentric 可爱的怪人 167
Lesson 32 A Lost Ship 沉船之谜 173
Lesson 33 A day to remember 难忘的一天 178
Lesson 34 A happy discovery 幸运的发现 185
Lesson 35 Justice was done 伸张正义 192
Lesson 36 A Chance in a Million 百万之一的机会 197
Lesson 37 The Westhaven Express 开往威斯特海温的快车 204
Lesson 38 The first calendar 第一本日历 211
Lesson 39 Nothing to worry about 不必担心 215
Lesson 40 Who's who真假难辨 220
Lesson 41 Illusions of Pastoral peace 宁静田园生活的遐想 223
Lesson 42 Flash无讲解 231

Lesson 43 Fully Insured 全保险 232
Lesson 44 Speed and comfort 速度和舒适 242
Lesson 45 The power of the press 新闻报道的威力 250
Lesson 47 Too high a price 代价是否太高....255
Lesson 48 The silent village 沉默的村庄....261
Lesson 49 The ideal servant 理想的仆人 267
Lesson 50 New Year Resolutions 新年的决心 269
Lesson 51 Flash无讲解....275
Lesson 52 Mud is Mud 实事求是....275
Lesson 53 In the public interest 为了公众的利益....285
Lesson 55 Flash无讲解....301
Lesson 56 Flash无讲解....301
Lesson 57 Flash无讲解....301
Lesson 58 A spot of bother 一点小麻烦（记叙文）....303
Lesson 59 Collecting 收藏....305
Lesson 60 Too early and too late 太早和太晚....309

特别说明

本文档根据新东方新概念第三册（第二版）网络课堂 Flash 制作

前 30 课笔记来自网络，原创作者已无从考证，在此对他表示严重感谢！！！

后 30 课由沪友历时一个月共同努力完成，致谢名单如下（排名不分先后顺序）

zm02178，jxrtvu，benrose，wbj0201，changtong，kisscat，scarletly，橘子柠檬，firefly007 不方便透露 id 的沪友，pearl_ma，minkyn，星际米兰，ghost555，清风雅致，downey，david515，qqfrog，rosegirl19，chenxi82，cracker，2005，lingyu5758

<若有遗漏 敬请见谅>

只可用于学习交流，不得用于商业目的
转发请保持文档的完整性
沪江论坛荣誉出品

Lesson 01 A Puma at large 逃遁的美洲狮

New words and expression 生词和短语

学习词汇时仅知道汉语语义是不够的，要把单词放在语句中体会其应用
学习关键句结构是则要把它放在段落结构或文章里

puma n.美洲狮

spot v.看出，发现
= see, pick out, recognize, catch sight of 强调结果，辨别出，看见，识别，发现
-- A tall man is easy to spot in the crowd.
-- He has good eye for spotting mistakes.
同意词：
-- find：强调发现的结果 / find out：查出事实真相
-- discover：做出重大发现 / notice：注意到
-- observe：观察 / watch：观察活动中的人或画面
Spot n.斑点
-- There is a white spot on the shirt.
on the spot 有两个含义：
1> 立刻，马上（at once, immediately）
-- Anyone breaking the rules will be asked to leave on the spot.
2> at the place of the action 在现场
-- Wherever she is needed, she is quickly on the spot.

Evidence n.证据（不可数名词）
Evident adj.明显的，显然的 / evidently adv.明显地，显然
Evidence = proof (n.证据)
-- When the police arrived, he had already destroyed the evidence.
in evidence 显而易见的
-- He was in evidence at the party.

Accumulate v.积累，积聚（强调积累的过程）
-- As the evidence accumulates, experts from the zoo felt obliged to investigate.
Gather vt.聚集，把某人召集在某处
-- The teacher gathered his students in the class
Collect vt.搜集，采集
-- Do you collect stamps? Yes, I collect stamps as my hobby.（n.业余爱好）
Assemble v.集合，集会 / 装配
-- A large number of people assemble on the square.
Hoard vt.大量的储存 （-- hoard up = store up 储藏）
-- The squirrel hoards up nuts for the cold winter （squirrel n.松鼠）（nut n.坚果）
amass vt.积聚（主要用于诗歌和文学作品）
-- The clouds amassed above the hills

Oblige v.使…感到必须
feel obliged to do sth 感觉有必要做某事
-- I feel obliged to say no to his demand（n.要求，需要）
be obliged to do sth 被迫做某事
-- They were obliged to sell their car to pay their debts off.（debt n.债务）

hunt **v.n**.追猎，寻找 （hunt for）
-- The experts from London zoo began to hunt (v.) for a puma.
-- The hunt (n.) for the puma proved the difficult. （prove vt.证明，证实）
search 搜寻某处为了寻找到某人或某物
-- The police were searching the forest for the missing boy.
run after 强调追赶，追求
-- look, a dog is running after a cat
-- what are you run after in your life
seek = pursue v.追寻(理想)
chase v.追赶 （-- They are chasing a thief / They are running after a thief）

blackberry n.黑莓 / berry n.浆果
human being 人类

corner v.使走投无路，使陷入困境
作为动词，经常使用被动语态
-- The thief was cornered at last
-- The problem cornered me.
corner n.角落
-- at the corner of the street
-- in the corner of the room
-- on the corner of the desk

Trail n.一串，一系列
trail **vt. 跟踪，追踪**（= follow）
-- The police trailed the criminal to the place where he was hiding （criminal n.罪犯）

Print n.印痕

Cling v.粘 （clung, clung, clinging）
-- She is always clinging to her mother.
-- He clung to the hope that he would succeed. 他怀有成功的希望
stick v.粘住 （-- stick the envelop）n.信封
stick to 坚持 （-- stick to the plan / stick to one's promise）n.许诺
sticky adj.粘的 （-- sticky fingers）

convince v.使…信服
1>convince sb of sth

-- I convince him of my honesty.（n.诚实，正直） 我使他相信我的诚实。

2> be convinced that…

-- I am convinced that she is honest girl.（adj.诚实的，正直的）

somehow adv.不知怎么搞地，不知什么原因

= by some means, in some way, for some reason unknown

-- I'll get the book back somehow. 无论如何我要把这本书取回来。

-- I got lost somehow 不知怎么搞地，我迷失了。

Somewhat adv.稍微，有点，有些 （= a little）

-- The price is somewhat higher than I expect.（high adj.高的）

disturb v.令人不安

disturbing adj.令人不安的 / disturbed adj.感到不安的

surprising adj.令人惊讶的 / surprised adj.感到惊讶的

exciting adj.令人激动的 / excited adj.感到激动的

wild adj.野性的，野生的

investigate v.调查，研究

description n.描写，描述

extraordinarily adv.特别地，非常地，格外

similar adj.相似的，类似的

attack vt.攻击

difficult adj.困难的，艰难的 **difficulty** n.困难，难点

rabbit n.兔，野兔

paw n.手掌，手爪

fur n.毛皮，毛，软毛

bush n.矮树丛

fully adv.充分地，完全地

collector n.收藏家，征收者

Text 课文

at large 逃遁的，没有被控制的

-- The thief is still at large

at large 详细地（= in detail）n.细节，详情

-- I need talk to you at large

at large 总体来讲（= as a whole）

-- The students at large are hungry for English. （hungry adj.饥饿的，渴望的）

Where must the puma have come from?

Pumas are large, cat-like animals which are found in America.

在英文的表达方式中，首先呈现给读者的是结果（和中文不同）

英文擅长用长句，中文擅长用短句。

-- Pandas are large cat-like animals which are found in Asia. （panda n.熊猫）

cat-like 猫一样的，偷偷摸摸的 / dog-like 狗一样的 / life-like 栩栩如生的

When reports came into London Zoo that a wild puma had been spotted forty-five miles south of London, they were not taken seriously.

一般来讲**定语从句**和**同位语从句**紧随在被修饰名词的后面，但为了保持句子平衡，也可以把谓语动词放到从句之前

1> **定语从句**只是对于被修饰词的补充说明、修饰

-- 定语从句的引导词：

-- **指人：**主语 who；宾语 who, whom；定语 whose

-- **指物：**that（也可以指人）/ which

-- **时间状语**：when / **地点状语：**where / **原因状语：**why

2> **同位语从句**则是讲述被修饰名词的内容

-- 同位语从句的引导词：

-- **名词**(做主语、宾语等)：关系词用 that 而不是 which

-- **时间：**when； **地点：**where

-- 定语从句中没有 what 这个关系词，但 what 可以引导同位语从句

-- An idea came to her that she might do the experiment in another way.

-- I have no idea what has happened to him。

they were not taken seriously（they指代reports）

take sth seriously = deal with sth seriously 认真地对待某事

-- I always take your suggestions seriously.

take sth lightly 草率地对待某事 （lightly adv.轻率地）

-- Don't take the hot potato lightly （hot potato n.棘手的问题）

However, as the evidence began to accumulate, experts from the Zoo felt obliged to investigate, for the descriptions given by people who claimed to have seen the puma were extraordinarily similar.

However adv.然而(起转折作用)

As 连词：随着，当...之时

过去分词做定语：

-- the descriptions given by people

-- the story told by the sailor (n.海员，水手，船员)

-- a book written by Luxun

claim to have done sth 声称曾经做过某事

-- He claimed to have been the manager of the large shop.

The hunt for the puma began in a small village where a woman picking blackberries saw 'a large cat' only five yards away from her.

Where a woman picking… 定语从句

-- I still remember the school where I studied English.

It immediately ran away when she saw it, and experts confirmed that a puma will not attack a human being unless it is cornered.

Confirm = be sure = be certain (confirm vt.确定)
Unless it is cornered = if it is not cornered (unless conj.如果不，除非)
-- He will accept the job unless the salary is too low.

The search proved difficult, for the puma was often observed at one place in the morning and at another place twenty miles away in the evening.
search = hunt

Wherever it went, it left behind it a trail of dead deer and small animals like rabbits.
把某物留在后面：leave behind
-- Wherever he went, the wound left behind him a trail of blood.（n.血）

Paw prints were seen in a number of places and puma fur was found clinging to bushes.
英文表达方式习惯用被动语态，突出客观事实。而中文则善于运用动作的执行者。
puma fur was found clinging to bushes. （被动）
→ We found the puma fur clinging to bushes. （主动）
-- clinging to bushes 是现在分词短语做宾补

Several people complained of "cat-like noises' at night and a businessman on a fishing trip saw the puma up a tree.
complain of/about sth 抱怨某事
on+名词：强调动作正在进行
-- on the rise 在上升 / on the increase 在增加
-- on the watch 在观看 / on the match 在比赛中
-- on the fishing trip 在钓鱼的途中 / on holiday 在度假

The experts were now fully convinced that the animal was a puma, but where had it come from?
Fully（adv.充分地，完全地）= completely = entirely

As no pumas had been reported missing from any zoo in the country, this one must have been in the possession of a private collector and somehow managed to escape.
sth be in the possession of sb = sth be in sb's possession 某物归某人所有**(主语是物)**
-- The beautiful car is in my possession.= The beautiful car is in the possession of me.
Sb be in possession of sth 某人拥有某物**(主语是人)**
-- I am in possession of the beautiful car.（in possession of… 做表语）
-- The person in possession of the big house is excited. （in possession of… 做定语）
take possession of… 拥有…

The hunt went on for several weeks, but the puma was not caught.
Went on = lasted （last vi.继续，持续）

It is disturbing to think that a dangerous wild animal is still at large in the quiet countryside.
It is disturbing to think that... 一想到…就心理不安

-- It is disturbing to think that I fail my examination

in the quiet countryside　在宁静的山村

Special difficulties 难点

Exercises A

1. at/for　2. to　3. to　4. in　5. on

Exercises B

1. He is the man we have heard about so much.

2. The shelf you put those books on has collapsed.（vi.倒塌，崩溃，瓦解）

3.Whom did you receive a letter from?

特殊疑问句中 whom 不能省略（本句）。

定语从句中 Which 以及指代人的做宾语的 Whom，在非正式用法当中可以省略。

省略时，介词不能前置到关系代词 Whom, Which 前，只能用于**非固定的动词短语**后面。

固定的动词短语

look for：寻找**（去掉 for 后 look 没有寻找的意思，所以介词 for 不能前置）**

非固定的动词短语

look at：注视

live in：居住**（去掉 in 后 live 仍有居住的意思，所以介词 in 可以前置）**

This is the old house in which he lived. = This is the old house he lived in.

4.This is the road we came by?

5.Where is the pencil you were playing with?

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1… 正确答案：D

in common　adv.共有　（替换了 similar）

2… 正确答案：B

A）只是一个具体的特定的事列，阅读理解题的时候要把握中心大意

B） large cat

persuade　v.说服，劝说

3… 答案正确：C

做理解题时要紧扣主题、紧扣中心大意

文章最后一句话总结了大意

句型结构题和词汇题是每课的关键

4… 答案正确：C

Make 的用法：

make somebody do（在主动语态中不定式的符号 to 应该省略）

be made to do（被动语态中不定式的符号 to 必须补充完整）

-- They made her wait for hours. → She was made to wait for hours.

5… 答案正确： D

A）把 say 改成 claim 就对了 （-- People claimed to have seen the puma.）

D）清楚的道明了动作发生的先后关系

6… 正确答案：B

原句中的 when 引导的时间状语从句表示：一...就…（as soon as）

被动：On being observed, it immediately ran away.

主动：On observing her, it immediately ran away.

On seeing me, he waved to me.

7… 正确答案：D

except 可以和名词/名词性从句进行搭配（也可是 when/if 引导的从句形式）

unless = if...not = except on the condition that…

when = if

-- …except when they are cornered. = …except if they are cornered.

-- Whenever you come, you are welcome. = If ever you come, you are welcome.

8… 正确答案：D

A）must be 只是对客观现实的推测，时态不一致

-- 对于过去事实推测一定要用：情态动词+ have +过去分词

9… 正确答案：C

on more than = nothing more than = only / within = not more than

10… 正确答案：B

in a corner 偷偷摸摸地，暗中地，秘密地

in a trap 落于陷阱中

at an angle 不正的，倾斜的（angle n.角，角度，角落，墙角，棱角）

under cover 在遮蔽处，秘密地，暗中

11... 正确答案：B

fishes for pleasure 钓鱼消遣

travel for pleasure 外出游玩

read for pleasure 阅读消遣

12…

on one's own adv.独自地，独立地，主动地 （= alone）

for one's own benefit 为了某人自己的利益

Lesson 02 Thirteen equals one 十三等于一

New words and expression 生词和短语

equal v.等于
A 等于 B → A equals B
Equal vt.与...相匹敌
-- None of us can equal her, either in beauty or as a dancer.
be equal to +名词（equal adj.不相上下的）
-- Mary is quite equal to John in brains.（n.智力，脑髓）
玛丽可以和约翰在脑力上相匹敌。
be equal to doing：有能力，有力量来做某事 （to 是介词）
-- I am equal to running the company.
vicar n.牧师
raise v.募集，筹（款） -- raise money 募集资金
提高 -- raise the price 提高物价
饲养、供养 -- raise a horse 饲养一匹马
种植 -- raise wheat 种植小麦
召集、招募 -- raise an army 招募一支军队 （army n.陆军，军队）
提出、发出 -- raise a cheer 发出欢呼声 （cheer n.愉快，欢呼）
torchlight n.电筒光 **torch** n.手电筒
cause n.事情
church n.教堂
figure n.外形，轮廓，体形
grocer n.食品商人，杂货商人
bell n.钟，铃，钟声，钟形之物
tower n.塔，城堡

Text 课文

Was the vicar pleased that the clock was striking? Why?
Our vicar is always raising money for one cause or another, but he has never managed to get enough money to have the church clock repaired.
现在进行时和 always 等频度副词搭配时：表示说话人带有某种的情感色彩
Tom is always doing homework. 汤姆总是做家庭作业，怎么也做不完。
Tom always does his homework. 汤姆总是做家庭作业，不拖欠作业。
He is always making noises. 他总是吵吵闹闹，真烦人。

one or another：表示这样或那样
-- for one reason or another 处于这样或那样的原因
-- at one time or another 在这样或那样的时间
-- in one way or another 用这样或那样的方法
get enough money to do sth 募集足够的资金做某事
-- I have to get enough money to have my house repaired.

have something done

1>找某人来做某事

-- have the church clock repaired

-- have the plane repaired / -- have hair cut

2>某人所遭受到的意外某种情况（主语必须是发出动作的人）

-- His wallet was stolen. → He had his wallet stolen.

The big clock which used to strike the hours day and night was damaged many years ago and has been silent ever since.

used to：过去常常做，而现在不再发生的事情了。

-- He used to smoke every day.

One night, however, our vicar woke up with a start: the clock was striking the hours!

However -- 在口语中，主要用于句首；在作文中，最好用在句中、句尾。
要用逗号分隔开来

-- He said that it was so, he was mistaken, however.

He said that it was so, however, he was mistaken.

他说这件事就是如此，然而他弄错了。

-- I know his story, however, I wouldn't like to tell you.

I know his story, I, however, wouldn't like to tell you.

However = Nevertheless (adv. conj.) = Nonetheless (adv.)

Start n.vt.惊跳，惊起

-- The noise made him started(v.).

-- What a start(n.) you give me. / -- he stood up with a start(n.).

Looking at his watch, he saw that it was one o'clock, but the bell struck thirteen times before it stopped.

before：...才

-- Nearly a week passed before she could explain what had happened to her.

Armed with a torch, the vicar went up into the clock tower to see what was going on.

Armed with a torch... 过去分词

Looking at his watch… 现在分词

分词做状语/定语的时候，一定要注意它和逻辑主语要呼应一致

In the torchlight, he caught sight of a figure whom he immediately recognized as Bill Wilkins, our local grocer.

in the torchlight 在手电筒光下 / in the moonlight 在月光下

in the sunshine 在太阳光下 / in the candlelight 在烛光下

非正式用语中 whom 可以省略掉

recognized somebody as… 认出某人是…

regard somebody as 认为某人是 / think of somebody as 认为某人是

treat somebody as 把某人对待为 / have on somebody as 把某人尊敬为

'Whatever are you doing up here Bill?' asked the vicar in surprise.

Whatever 中的 ever 用来加强语气

'I'm trying to repair the bell,' answered Bill. 'I've been coming up here night after night for weeks now. You see, I was hoping to give you a surprise.'

night after night 一夜连着一夜

day after day 一天又一天 / year after year 一年又一年

week after week 一周又一周 / bus after bus 一辆车接着一辆车

'You certainly did give me a surprise!' said the vicar.

肯定句中常用 do, did, does 加强语气和情感色彩（一定要位于动词原形之前）

-- You do like nice today. 你今天看上去确实很不错。

-- I do like you.

'You've probably woken up everyone in the village as well.

as well 用在句尾相当于 too，主要用于肯定句中，但比 too 所表达的语意更优秀。

-- You looked nice yesterday and you look beautiful as well today.

Still, I'm glad the bell is working again.'

still 用于句首，用逗号分隔开来，表达一个转折的关系：虽然如此，但是

‘That's the trouble, vicar,’ answered Bill.

'It's working all right, but I'm afraid that at one o'clock it will strike thirteen times and there's nothing I can do about it."

There is nothing I can do about it = I am at a lose what to do（at a loss adv.困惑）

‘We'll get used to that, Bill,’ said the vicar.

"Thirteen is not as good as one, but it's better than nothing. Now let's go downstairs and have a cup of tea.'

get used to / be used to / be accustomed to / get accustomed to 都表示习惯于

get 强调渐近的过程，be 强调习惯了的状态

Special difficulties 难点

in

1>与表达惊奇、恐惧、失望或生气等感情色彩的名词搭配连用，在句中起状语作用。

in surprise惊奇地 / in astonishment惊愕的

in alarm恐吓的 / in embarrassment窘迫的

in amazement极为惊讶 / in despair绝望的

in dismay沮丧的 / in anger恼火的 / in disappointment失望的

2>表示以、用。用于语言，书写材料，色彩或声音等方面。

in English / in pencil / in ink / in oil 用颜料 / in red用红色 / in code用代码

in such a high voice 用这么高的声音 / in a few words 用几句话

3>表示状态、情况或处境

in trouble / in difficulty 在困境中 / in bed 在床上 / in a hurry 匆忙的

in debt负债 / in love with sb爱上某人 / in tears流着泪
in good order 有条不紊，整齐，情况正常 / in good repair 维修良好
in good health 身体好 / in poor health 身体坏
in the bad mood 情绪坏 / in the good mood 情绪好
in haste匆忙的 / in a favor of excitement 欣喜若狂
in poverty 在贫穷中 / in luxury奢侈的
Exercise：
very quickly = in a hurry
eventually = in the end （eventually adv.最后，终于）
be seen = in sight
with a pen = in ink / with a pencil = in pencil
which they share = in common （share v.共享）
crying = in tears

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1... D
in order adv.整齐，状况良好，适宜
out of order adv.次序颠倒，不整齐，状态不好 （= was damaged）
2... B
3... C
为…表示感谢：be grateful for… / be thankful for…
不辞辛劳地做某事：take the trouble to do sth.
4... B in the past 是过去时态的标志；always 用在实意动词之前
5... D stroke n.击，敲，报时的钟声
强调句式结构：It was not until...that... 一直到…才…
-- It was not until midnight that snow stopped. 一直到半夜，雪才停了。
6... B 宾语从句的语序是陈述句语序
7... C Mend vt.修理，修补
突出结果或者对现在的影响，用现在完成时。
8... A get used to doing 表示习惯于 （to 是介词）
9... B
fund 基金； cash 现金； scholarship 奖学金； investment 投资
10... A run a shop 经营商店
11... A night after night = every night
12... C
still 1>adv.仍，仍然，还
-- He came yesterday and he is still here. 他昨天来的，现仍在此。
still 2>adv.(连接副词) 尽管如此，依旧，仍然（表达一种坚持的态度）
相当于 in spite of that, even though, just the same）
-- It's raining；Still, I must go out.
-- This picture is not too valuable；Still, I like it.
Yet conj.但是，然而（表示一种转折的关系）
-- I have failed, yet I shall try again.

Lesson 03 An unknown goddess 无名女神

New words and expression 生词和短语

goddess(tile) n.女神
archaeologist n.考古学家
Aegean adj.爱琴海的

Explore v.考察，勘探
-- The archaeologists are exploring the cave.
exploration n.探险 / explorer n.探险家

promontory n.海角

prosperous adj.（经济上）繁荣的，昌盛的
-- our finance is prosperous 我们的经济非常的繁荣。（Finance n.财政，金融）
thriving adj.昌盛的，兴旺的 -- thriving business
booming adj.蓬勃的，景气的 -- a booming market繁荣的市场
flourishing adj.繁茂的，健康的
-- Those plants are flourishing. 那些植物长得茂盛。

civilization n. 文明 / civilize vt.使开化，使文明
-- high level of civilization 高度文明

storey n.楼层 （story 的变体）
drainage n.排水

worship n.v.崇拜 / respect vt.尊敬，尊重 / admire v.赞美，钦佩，羡慕
-- Who do you worship in the world?
Warship n.军舰，战船

Sacred adj.宗教的，神圣的
-- sacred music 圣乐 / sacred promise 神圣的诺言
Holy adj. 神圣的，圣洁的
-- a holy person. 圣洁的人 / a holy place. 神圣的地方
Solemn adj. 庄严的，庄重的
-- a solemn face 严肃的面孔 / a solemn ceremony 隆重的仪式

Fragment n.碎片
Remains n.遗物，遗迹，废墟

Classical adj.（希腊和罗马）古文化的（即传统的）；文科的，人文科学的
-- classical music 古典音乐 / classical education 人文科学教育

Classic adj. 第一流的，标准的，著名的，典型的
-- This is the classic example of love at the first sight.
Classic n.杰作，经典之作
-- That joke's a classic; it really is funny. "这个笑话确属一流,真是妙趣横生。"

Reconstruct v.修复 （Re --重新，再次）
Construct vt.构造，建造，组织（通过装配或组合部件而构成）
-- construct a sentence / construct a broken statuary（n.雕象）
-- build a house 造建筑物 / put up a tent
construction n.建设，建造
constructive adj.有教育意义的
constructor n.建造者，建设者
erect vt.盖，使竖立，使直立（build high buildings）
-- erect a monument 建造纪念碑 / erect a clock tower 建造钟楼
setup / establish / found 建立
-- setup students' union 学生会 （union n.联盟，协会）
-- establish a school / establish a rule 设立一条规则
-- found a country 建立一个国家

Rest v.倚放，放置

Hip n.屁股，臀部
Hip n. [口]在服用兴奋剂、宗教信仰方面赶时髦的人；消息灵通人士；
adj.通晓的，见闻广的
-- Mary is a real hip. 玛丽是个爱赶时髦的人。
-- The guy isn't a hip. 这家伙什么都不懂。
Joined at the hip 表示交情极厚的
-- These two are joined at the hip.
shoot from the hip 信口开河
-- Sorry, I said that I shouldn't have shot from the hip.

full-length adj.（裙衣）拖地长的，全长的，全身的
-- a full-length dress 拽地长裙
full-grown adj.生长完全的，发育完全的
full time n.专职，全部时间

graceful adj.优雅的
-- a graceful lady
elegant adj.优雅的（举止）
-- an elegant gentleman. 举止文雅的绅士

identity n. 身份

ancient adj.远古的，旧的

decorate vt.装饰；点缀
clay n.粘土，泥土
Roman adj.罗马的，罗马人的 n.罗马人
Rome n.罗马(意大利首都)
Indeed adv.真正地, (加强语气)确实

Text 课文

How did the archaeologists know that the statue was a goddess?

Some time ago, an interesting discovery was made by archaeologists on the Aegean island of Kea.

some time 1>经过若干时间 2>在未来的某时
sometime adv.在某一时候，曾经，有一天
sometimes adv.不时，有时
中文习惯用主动语态。
英文习惯用被动语态。以**事件、结果、影响、效果**为主语，强调对客观事实的陈述。

An American team explored a temple which stands in an ancient city on the promontory of Ayia Irini.

which 引导定语从句，修饰限定 temple。（which = that）
stand(不及物) = lie(不及物) 位于
= situate(及物) 使位于，使处于
= locate(及物) 使...坐落于，位于
which stands in... = which lies in… = which is located in… = which is situated in...
Stand 1 >身高 2>表示高高坐落于，矗立于
-- She stands 1.75m. 她身高 1.75 米
-- A great tree stands on the mount. 一棵大树竖立在山上。

The city at one time must have been prosperous, for it enjoyed a high level of civilization.

for 引导原因状语从句：对主句的附加说明和解释，提供更多的信息。
because 引导原因状语从句：强调原因。
-- The day broke for the birds were singing.
at one time 表达曾经，一度（过去时态的标志, = once）
must have been 对过去事实肯定的推测
enjoyed a high level of civilization 享有高度文明

Houses -- often three storeys high -- were built of stone. They had large rooms with beautifully decorated walls.

With… 具有…
-- a young man with broad shoulders / an old lady with black hair
beautifully decorated 过去分词做定语
-- a beautifully dressed lady 衣着漂亮的女士
-- a deserted car park 废弃的停车场
-- a white painted door 被刷成白色的门

现在分词做定语，被修饰词与修饰词之间为逻辑主动关系
-- a boy climbing the tree 正在爬树的男孩
-- the students reading in the room 正在房间里读书的学生

The city was equipped with a drainage system, for a great many clay pipes were found beneath the narrow streets.
be equipped with 配备，装备 （equip vt.装备，配备）
air conditioning 空气调节装置 / air conditioner 空气调节机，空调设备
-- The car was equipped with air conditioning.
for 引导原因状语从句
在正下方：Beneath = under
-- beneath the narrow streets = under the narrow streets
-- He is standing under/beneath the umbrella.
在进行中：只能用 under
-- under control 控制之中 / under discussion 讨论之中 / under repairs 修理之中
below 在下方（强调在斜下方）
-- She is sitting below the window

The temple which the archaeologists explored was used as a place of worship from the fifteenth century B.C. until Roman times.
be used as / be used to be 把…用作为
-- The box was used as a desk in the small village school.
-- The wooden box was used as a bookcase.
be used to do 被用来做…
-- The wooden box is used to contain books

In the most sacred room of temple, clay fragments of fifteen statues were found. Each of these represented a goddess and had, at one time, been painted.
represent vt.代表
-- I represent all the classmates.

The body of one statue was found among remains dating from the fifteenth century B.C.
dating 现在分词，修饰remains
date from = date back to （开始于…，起始于…）
-- The custom dating from 1990. （custom n.习惯，风俗）
-- The tradition dates from the time when his grandfather was young.
-- The castle dates from the 14th century. = The castle dates back to the 14th century.
城堡建造于 14 世纪

Its missing head happened to be among remains of the fifth century B.C.
happen to 偶然，碰巧（强调事情的偶然发生）
-- I happen to have driven that kind of car. 我恰巧开过那种车。
-- He happened to find the ticket in his pocket.
It happens that +从句

-- It happened that I met her on my way to work.
= I happened to meet her on my way work.
happen on 碰巧碰上
-- I happened on this old picture in the back of the drawer.
我偶然的在抽屉的背面发现了这张旧照片。
-- Guess, who did I happen on while I was in London last month?

This head must have been found in Classical times and carefully preserved.
It was very old and precious even then.
When the archaeologists reconstructed the fragments, they were amazed to find that the goddess turned out to be a very modern-looking woman.

Reconstruct = put together, piece together, restore（vt.恢复，使回复）
Amazed = very much surprised
surprised > astonished > amazed > astounded 感到惊讶（语气递增）
to find... / to discover... / to realize... / to see…
-- I'm not surprised to see you here

1> turn out…（表示结果）结果是，原来是 （= prove，都表示系动词）
turn out (to be)+ n./adj.
-- The concert turned out to be a failure.
-- Our party turned out (to be) a success. 我们的聚会非常的成功。
2> It turned out + that 从句 （it 作形式主语）
It turned out +其它名词从句
-- It turned out that the diamonds had been in the bank all the time.
原来钻石一直都在银行里保存着。
-- It turned out that his statement was false. 原来他的话是假的。
3> as it turns out… 后来人们发现…
-- As it turned out, there was no need to worry. 后来人们发现，没有必要担心。
-- As it turned out, the report was mistaken. 后来人们发现，报告被弄错了

She stood three feet high and her hands rested on her hips.

rest on v.被搁在，停留在，信赖
= depend on（依靠，依赖）/ lean on（靠着）
-- His hand rested lightly on my shoulder

She was wearing a full-length skirt which swept the ground.

which swept the ground 近一步说明拖地的，拽地的

Despite her great age, she was very graceful indeed, but, so far, the archaeologists have been unable to discover her identity.

But, so far, the archaeologists have been unable to discover her identity.
= It is still a problem for the archaeologists up to now.
Despite = in spite of （两者都是介词），后面+ 名词/动名词
so far, up to now 完成时的标志
discover her identity = find out her identity

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1... D

'Its missing head happened to be among remains of the fifth century B.C.'

2... D be employed in 被应用在...方面

this is confirmed by the fact that 引导同位语从句，补充说明 fact 的内容

3... A in doing sth 在...方面

4... D prosperity n.繁荣（不可数）

know 1>知道，认识

2>（文学用语）经历过，曾经有过（= experience，比 experience 更加正式）

-- He knew poverty in his early days. 他早年有过痛苦的经历

5... B since：自从 （主干的时态为现在完成时）

6... C

to one's surprise 使某人感到惊讶的是

在句中可做独立的状语，句子的主语不必是某个人

-- To my great disappointment the train had already left

with surprise 惊讶地 （With satisfaction/delight/dismay）

必须与行为动词连用，句子的主语必须是某个人

-- He smoked his last cigarette with satisfaction.

-- He went home with dismay.

-- To our dismay the party proved to be a failure.

7... B despite = in spite of (可以和名词、代词、动名词搭配)

8… B so far：现在完成时的标志

如果用 possible/impossible，就要采用形势主语 it

-- So far, it has been impossible for the archaeologists to discover her identity.

9... A Holy adj. 神圣的，圣洁的

religious 宗教的 / frightening 令人害怕的 / colourful 丰富多彩的

10... D in good condition 情况良好 = in good state

well done 侧重强调做得好

conserve vt.保存，保藏 （= keep from being wasted, damaged, lost, destroyed）

“不用尽或耗尽某物，保留”

-- Conserve your energy you needed. （energy n.精力，精神）

你该养精蓄锐，你回用得上的。

-- We must conserve our forest.

maintain vt.维持，维修 -- 通过修缮保养，不使...破损（强调动作的过程）

11... B turn out = prove，都表示系动词

resolve vt,vi 决定 vt.(使)分解，溶解

-- He resolved on going out. 他决定出去。

12... B

so far = until now, up till now

beforehand (adv.预先) = in advance (adv.预先)

at this distance of/in time 时隔已久

-- I can hardly remember him at this distance of time. 时隔这么久，我几乎想不起来他了。

Lesson 04 The double life of Alfred Bloggs 阿尔弗雷德.布洛格斯的双重生活

New words and expression 生词和短语

Double adj.两倍的，双重的
manual adj.体力的 （= physical adj.身体的，物质的）
manual work 体力工作
mental work 脑力工作
collar n.衣领
white-collar adj.白领阶层的，脑力劳动者（those who do mental work）
blue-collar adj 蓝领阶级的，工人阶级的（those who do manual work）
get hot under the collar 怒气冲天
-- He got hot under the collar when he knew that they laughed at him.
sacrifice vt.牺牲，献出 （to give up for good purpose）
-- sacrifice one's life for the country
-- sacrifice time
sacrifice n.牺牲 （-- make many sacrifices）
privilege n.好处 （= advantage n.优势，有利条件，利益）
-- sacrifice one's advantage/privilege 牺牲掉某人的好处
privilege n.特权，特别待遇（= special right）
-- give sb the privilege of doing sth 特许某人做某事
privileged a.荣幸的
-- We are privileged tonight to have our headmaster as our speaker.
dustman n.清洁工
corporation n.公司
overalls n.工作服
shower n.淋浴
secret n.秘密 adj.秘密的，隐秘的
Confidential adj.机密的
keep secret 保密
-- It's between you and me. 此事只介于你我之间。
-- I'll keep it to myself. 我会保守秘密的。
in secret 私下里（= secretly, in private, privately）
-- I was told about it in secret.
in the secret 知道内情
-- He was in the secret from the beginning
status n.地位（= social position）
statue n.雕像，塑像
rise n.发生，出现
loss n.损失
fellow n.伙伴，朋友，同事 adj.同伴的，同事的，同道的

Text 课文

Why did Alf want a white-collar job?

These days, people who do manual work often receive far more money than people who work in offices.

people who do manual work = blue-collar workers

people who do mental work = white-collar workers = people who work in offices

for more money（far 副词用来加强语气= much）

People who work in offices are frequently referred to as "white-collar workers' for the simple reason that they usually wear a collar and tie to go to work.

refer to...as = regard...as 把...看作为

-- I always refer to him as bookworm（n.书呆子）

for the simple reason = for 引导的原因状语从句

for the reason that 多用于正式文体，because 多用于口语中。

-- He is refer to as a book worm for the simple reason that he spare no efforts reading.

-- He was send to prison for he could not pay his debts.

Such is human nature, that a great many people are often willing to sacrifice higher pay for the privilege of becoming white-collar workers.

human nature 人性

such...that... （that 引导同位语从句，进一步补充说明 such 的基本内涵）

-- His kindness was such that we will never forget him.

= Such was his kindness that… （such 在句首要倒装）

= He was so kind that we will never forget him.

-- Such is human nature that we want to get a lot of things free.

介词 for 表示一种目的

be willing to do sth = be ready to do sth 心甘情愿做

This can give rise to curious situations, as it did in the case of Alfred Bloggs who worked as a dustman for the Ellesmere Corporation.

give rise to =（lead to v.导致，通向）（cause vt.引起，惹起）（result in v.导致）

-- Such conduct might give rise to misunderstandings. 这种行为会引起误解。

-- The bad conditions have given rise to a lot of crimes. 不良的环境引起了犯罪。

in the case of 就...来说，关于，就...而言 （= concerning prep.关于，涉及，就...说）

-- Stealing is no shame in the case of him. 偷窃对他来说不是一件可耻的事。

in case of（副词）万一，以防 → （in case conj.万一）

-- You should ensure your house in case of fire. （ensure vt.保证；担保，保险）

-- Take umbrella in case of rain 带上雨伞以防下雨。

who 引导定语从句

When he got married, Alf was too embarrassed to say anything to his wife about his job.

too embarrassed to say 太尴尬而没有说明
be ashamed of 感到羞愧，惭愧
-- Alf was ashamed of his job as a dustman.
marry 强调动作 （-- He married the girl. 他娶了这个女孩。）
get married 强调过程（-- Last year they got married.）
be married to sb 强调状态（-- The old man has been married to his wife for 50 years.）

He simply told her that he worked for the Corporation.
Simply 副词--用来修饰限定动词 told

Every morning, he left home dressed in a smart black suit.
dressed in a smart black suit --形容词短语表示一种状态 打方框代表有问题
-- He go to work **dressed** in a beautiful coat.
-- He left home **wearing** a smart black suit.

He then changed into overalls and spent the next eight hours as a dustman.
changed into 换上 / change back into 换回

Before returning home at night. He took a shower and changed back into his suit.
Before returning home = Before he returned home
Before 和动名词搭配，相当于 Before 引导的时间状语从句。
如果运用动名词形式，动名词的逻辑主语必须是主句的主语
-- After getting home, he had a good rest.
-- Before having dinner, he finished all his homework.
Alf did this for over two years and his fellow dustmen kept his secret.
Alf's wife has never discovered that she married a dustman and she never will, for Alf has just found another job. He will soon be working in an office.
she never will = she will never discover the secret
在省略句式中, never 要放在助动词之前
-- “will you go to see her?”
-- “I will never to to see her" = "No, I never will."
He will be earning only half as much as he used to, but he feels that his rise in status is well worth the loss of money.
half as much as
half / a quarter / twice / three times + as...as... 表示倍数
-- I won't marry a man who is twice as old as me.
-- We got three times as many people as we expected.
-- This room is about three times as large as that one.
是...的几倍：...as +形容词或副词原形+ as...
比...多几倍：...times +形容词或副词比较级+ than…
-- This road is **four** times longer than that one. = This road is **five** times as long as that one.
What he obtained is well worth the loss of time. 他的所得是值得花时间的。
well 副词用来加强语气，修饰形容词 worth
From now on, he will wear a suit all day and others will call him 'Mr. Bloggs', not 'Alf'.

Special difficulties 难点

impossibility n.不可能之事，不可能
grant vt.同意，准予

A. 两类词汇：
1>tell, give 等动词可以和双宾语搭配（指物的直接宾语，指人的间接宾语）
-- He told a story to me. = He told me a story .
2>explain, say 等动词只能代一个(直接)宾语，在间接宾语前要用介词 to
-- He explain the difficult to me. / He said nothing to me.
-- She speaks English to her husband and Swedish to her children.
-- He admitted his guilt to the police.（guilt n.罪行，内疚）
-- Did you suggest this idea to him?
当直接宾语比较长或者是个从句时，通常放在间接宾语之后（但 say 除外）
-- I explained to him the impossibility of granting his request.
= I explained the impossibility of granting his request to him.
-- He confessed to me that he had fallen asleep during the meeting.
= He confessed that he had fallen asleep during the meeting to me.
confide vt., vi.
1> 倾诉（与 in 连用）
-- Jone felt she could only confide in her mother. 琼觉得她只有向她妈妈倾吐心中的秘密。
2> 吐露 (心事、秘密等)，与 to 连用
-- One evening he came and confided to me that he had spent five years in prison.
有一天晚上他到我家来向我吐露他曾坐过五年牢。

B. “Worth"后面只能跟名词或动名词
-- His suggestion is worth considering.
-- His rise in status is worth the loss of money.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1... A illustrate vt.阐明，阐述
“...a great many people are often willing to sacrifice higher pay for the privilege of becoming white-collar worker"
2... C double life
3... D "...he feels that his rise in status is well worth the loss of money"
previous adj.在前的，早先的
respect n.某方面 vt.尊敬，尊重
4... B to go 可以省略
They usually go to work wearing a collar and tie.
5... D
"Alfred was too embarrassed to say anything to his wife about his job."
too...to…（不定式 to 表示否定）
so...that…（在 that 引导的结果状语从句中，如果采用否定式，可以和 too...to 互换）

-- The water is too hot for us to drink. = The water is so hot that we can't drink.

6... C "He simply told her that he worker of the Corporation"

simply 副词（仅仅是，再没有别的了= only, just）

无论是 simply, only 还是 just，往往用在所修饰的主体词之前。

-- I did it simply/only for the money

-- I don't like driving. I do it simply/only because I have to go to work each day.

and no more（放句尾）

in a simple way 简单地，简朴地

-- She was always dressed in a simple way.

7... B

Before 是介词和动名词形式搭配。 -- Before returning home...

Before 是连接词，引导时间状语从句。 -- Before he returned home...

before 引导的从句，常用一般现在时或一般过去时，不用进行时。

8... C "half as much as it used to be"

the amount 要用定语从句进行限定

当主句的谓语动词是**行为动词**时，used to 之后的动词必须省略掉

当主句的谓语动词是**系动词**时，used to 之后必须带有系动词 be.

-- I feel the summers are hotter than they used to be.

-- I feel you are much fatter than you used to be.

9... D

gain：获利，赢得（表示通过努力）

-- gain time, gain reputation, gain speed, gain height

fee：（为专业服务支付的）费用

-- doctor's fees 医疗费 / the lawyer's fees 律师费

-- pay for my university fees 支付我的大学学费

payment：（商业、信贷）支付的款项（非常正式）

wages：（体力劳动者的）工资

salary：（白领的）薪水

10... B companion n.同伴，共事者 comrade n.朋友，同志，伙伴

11... C "well worth the loss of money"

pay back 偿还，报复

reward 酬劳

value 价值

compensate v.偿还，补偿

compensate for赔偿 = make up for弥补

-- His intelligence more than compensate for his lack of experience.

12... A call = addressed as 被称为

name 命名 / cry out 喊叫 / shout v.呼喊，呼叫

Lesson 05 The facts 确切数字

New words and expression 生词和短语

Editor n.编辑
Edit vt.编辑
-- edit magazine, edit newspaper
Edition n.编辑
Editorial adj.编辑的，主编的 n.社论，评论
extreme n.极端
go to extreme(s) to do… 做某事走极端
-- He went to extreme to say that the play was the best one.
-- He went to extremes to say that his girlfriend was the most beautiful in the world.
go from one extreme to the other 从一个极端走向另一个极端
statistics n.统计数字
journalist n.新闻记者
reporter n.(电视台)记者
correspondent n.(电台)记者，通讯员
president n.总统
palace n.王宫；宏伟的住宅
publish v.出版 = print(vt.), go to press(vi.)
-- The book has already been published. = The book has already been printed.
-- The book has gone to press.
-- They have already published the magazine.
Fax n.传真 （-- send a fax）
impatient adj.不耐烦的
patience（n.耐性） patient（adj.有耐心的） patiently（adv.有耐心地）
impatience（n.不耐烦） impatient（adj.不耐烦的） impatiently（adv.不耐烦地）
fire v.解雇（口语）
-- He was fired from his job
dismiss vt.解雇（正式）
-- The manage dismissed him from his company.
Sack vt.解雇，辞退（俚语，口语）
-- If you do it wrong again you will be sacked.
Originally adv.起初，原先，从前 / original adj.最初的，原始的

Text 课文

What was the consequence of the editor's insistence on facts and statistics?
Consequence n.结果
Insistence n.坚持，坚决主张

Editors of newspapers and magazines often go to extremes to provide their reader with unimportant facts and statistics.

go to extremes 走极端

provide = supply 给...提供（通常与介词搭配连用）

provide sb with sth / provide sth for sb

-- He provided them with a bed for the night.

= He provided a bed for them for the night

Last year a journalist had been instructed by a well-known magazine to write an article on the president's palace in a new African republic.

本句= A well-known magazine instructed a journalist to write an article on the president's palace in a new African republic.

African n.非洲人 adj.非洲的

Republic n.共和国，共和政体

Instruct vt.教，教导，命令，指示，通知

instruct sb to do sth.= tell sb formally to do sth 正式告诉某人做某事

-- The teacher instructed him to take the examination.

On = about 侧重强调课题专一

-- a book on radio

When the article arrived, the editor read the first sentence and then refuse to publish it.

When the article arrived = When the editor received the article

refuse vt.拒绝（态度严厉）

-- I invited him to dinner, but he refused me.

decline vt.婉言谢绝

repudiate vt.断然拒绝

The article began: 'Hundreds of steps lead to the high wall which surrounds the president's palace'.

which 指代 the high wall

The editor at once sent the journalist a fax instructing him find out the exact number of steps and the height of the wall.

Instructing(现在分词)进一步补充说明 fax 的情况

-- he send me a letter instructing me to come back immediately

The journalist immediately set out to obtain these important facts, but he took a long time to send them.

set out to do = decide and try to do 决定，打算，着手做...

= set about doing 决定，打算，着手做...

-- He set out to make his first 1,000,000 in 5 years.

take sb a long time to do sth 某事花了某人很久的时间

-- It took me five days to write the article.

Meanwhile, the editor was getting impatient, for the magazine would soon go to press.

He sent the journalist two more faxes, but received no reply.

two more faxes = another two faxes

He sent yet another fax informing the journalist that if he did not reply soon he would be fired.

When the journalist again failed to reply, the editor reluctantly published the article as it had originally been written.

reluctantly = unwilling 勉勉强强地，不情愿地

as it bad originally been written = in its original way

A week later, the editor at last received a fax from the journalist.

Not only had the poor man been arrested, but he had been sent to prison as well.

Not only 位于句首，必须采用倒装形式。

本句 = The poor man had not only been arrested, but had been sent to prison as well.

倒装：（部分倒装）

1>否定副词位于句首，要倒装。

never, seldom, rarely, little, hardly, scarcely, nowhere, no sooner

scarcely adv.几乎不，简直没有

nowhere adv.无处，到处都无

-- Never have I read such stories. 我从来也没读过这样的小说。

-- Nowhere can he find the book he wants. 无论在哪他也找不到他要的书。

-- Hardly did I think it possible. 我并不认为这是可能的。

2>含有 only 的状语位于句首，句子要倒装。

-- Only then did he realize that he had made a mistake.

-- Only when a great deal more information has been obtained will it be possible to plan a trip.

3>含有 not 的副词短语位于句首，句子要倒装。

not for a second 决不，毫不 / not in the least 绝不，一点也不

not for an instant, not until

-- Not in the least is he interested in English literature. 他对英国文学一点都不感兴趣。

-- Not for an instant did I believe he had lied. 我根本不认为他说了慌。

4>含有 no 的短语位于句首，句子要倒装。

at on time, in no way , in no sense, by no means, in no case, on no account, on no condition, under no circumstances （都表示‘绝不’）

circumstance n.环境，详情，境况

-- Under no circumstances can we accept the check. 我们无论如何也不能接受这笔钱。

-- On no account must you leave the baby in the house. 你无论如何也不能把留在房间里。

5> so such 位于句首，句子要倒装。

However, he had at last been allowed to send a fax in which he informed the editor that the he had been arrested while counting the 1,084 steps leading to the fifteen-foot wall which surrounded the president's palace.

he had at last been allowed = he had at last been permitted = he had asked for permission

请求被允许做某事：be allowed to do, be permitted to do, asked for permission to do sth

permit v.许可,允许,准许 permission n.许可，允许

in which -- which 指代 fax

while 和现在分词搭配，做时间状语，表示“正在做某事的过程中”。

-- 可以用 while 引导的时间状语从句去替换。

-- While counting… = while he was counting…

现在分词做定语：

-- the steps leading to the president's palace 通向王宫的台阶。

-- the road leading to the forest 通向森林的路。

fifteen-foot 做前置定语，这里的名词必须上单数形式。

which 引导的定语从句修饰 wall, which 指代 wall。

-- wall which surrounded… （= wall surrounding…）

-- 为了避免和前面的现在分词句式结构(leading)相同所以没有用 surrounding.

Special difficulties 难点 here

倒装的用法

1.Not only has he made this mistake before but he will make it again.

2.Only then did I realize what was happening

3.Never will I trust him again.

4.Seldom do you find traffic wardens who are kind and helpful.

traffic warden n. 交通管理员 （warden n.监护人；看守人）

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1… C

excuse n.理由，借口

beyond prep.除…以外

satisfy vt.满足，使满意

dissatisfy vt.使感觉不满，不满足

factual adj.事实的，实际的

content n.内容

2… B

3... A activity n.行动，行为 / suspicious adj.可疑的，怀疑的

4… B 课文中的 and then 强调动作的先后。

-- Having seen the movie, they went for a walk.

6... D a reply 表示“任意”的一个答复

7... B unless = if not 一般过去时

8… C inform sb of/about sth

9… C public n.公众, (特定的)人群

audience n.听众，观众

lecture n.演讲

10… B print = publish

press n.压，按 go to press 交付印刷

pressing adj.紧迫的；迫切的

impress vt.盖印，留下印象

11... D

innocent adj.清白的，无罪的，天真的，无知的

unfortunate adj.不幸的

12... D

请求允许做某事：ask for permission to do sth

允许某人做某事：be given permission to do sth

admit + 名词/动名词/that 从句

Lesson 06 Smash-and-grab 砸橱窗抢劫

New words and expression 生词和短语

smash-and-grab n.砸橱窗抢劫
smash vt.打碎，粉碎（= break sth into pieces violently）violently adv.猛烈地
-- Smash the car.
Smash vi.打碎，粉碎（-- The dishes smashed on the floor.）
smash into 撞击到某处 （-- The bus smashed into a tree.）

grab v.抢夺，掠夺，夺取（= seize suddenly）
-- He grabbed me by the arm.
-- He grabbed the coin and ran off. 他抓起硬币就跑了。
snatch vt.抢，夺取（= catch sth/sb suddenly and violently）
-- The big bird snatches the hen from the ground.
Seize v.抓住，逮住，夺取（强调抓住、抓到的结果）
-- Fear seized her. 她突然感觉很恐惧。
catch vt.捕获，赶上(车船等) （= get hold of sth/sb moving）
-- catch mouse / catch bus / catch a thief
Grasp 强调“掌握”
-- We have already grasped six thousand words.
Hold 强调抓牢、抓紧（catch hold of 抓住）
-- He is holding an umbrella.

arcade n.有拱廊的街道（两旁常设商店）
Piccadilly n.皮卡迪利大街
Jewellery n.珠宝（总称）
Necklace n.项链
Ring n.戒指

Background n.背景 （on the background of sth.）
-- background information 背景资料
-- a man of excellent background 有很好的背景的人

velvet n.天鹅绒，丝绒
headlight n.（汽车等）前灯
blare v.发嘟嗜声，吼叫
staff n.全体工作人员
raid n.偷袭 / **raid** vt., vi.袭击，突击

scramble v.爬行（= creep quickly）
-- The two thieves scrambled into their car.
Climb vt.爬上（-- climb up the tree）

Mount vt.登上（-- mount the hill）
Fantastic adj. 非常大的
1> = very great / very large 非常大的
-- a fantastic sum of money = a very large sum of money
2> = strange adj.奇怪的，奇异的
-- a strange dream = a fantastic dream
3> = wonderful adj.极好的，美好的，极妙的
-- a fantastic play.

ashtray n.烟灰缸

owner n.所有者，业主
admire vt. 以赞赏的眼光看着
busily adv.忙碌地
arrange v.安排，排列，协商
horn n.(牛、羊等的)角，喇叭
roar vi.吼叫，怒号
jeweler n.珠宝商，宝石匠,钟表匠
wheel n.（汽车的）方向盘
iron n.铁 adj.铁的
furniture n.家具
diamond n.钻石，菱形

Text 课文

How did Mr. Taylor try to stop the thieves?
The expensive shops in a famous arcade near Piccadilly were just "opening.
介词短语修饰 shops
-- The shoe shop in my neighborhood was just opening.
在我家附近的鞋店刚刚开门营业

At this time of the morning, the arcade was almost empty.

Mr. Taylor, the owner of a jewellery shop was admiring a new window display.
BeiJing, our capital, is developing enormously.
-- enormously adv.非常地，巨大地（= at fantastic speed）

Two of his assistants had been working busily since eight o'clock and had only just finished. Diamond necklaces and rings had been beautifully arranged on a background of black velvet.

After gazing at the display for several minutes, Mr. Taylor went back into his shop.
After **gazing** at… = After he **gazed** at…
After **having gazed** at… = After he **had gazed** at…

The silence was suddenly broken when a large car, with its headlights on and its horn blaring, roared down the arcade.

with 的符合结构：（独立主格结构）

1>如果宾语和宾语补足语在逻辑上有主谓关系，应该采用**现在分词**形式作宾补。

-- She sat staring into the distance with tears streaming down her cheeks.

她坐着凝视着远方泪流满面。 （Cheek n.脸颊，面颊）

-- She stood there with her hands resting on her hips

2>如果宾语和宾语补足语在逻辑上是动宾关系，应该采用**过去分词**形式作宾补。

-- He ran into the room with his face covered with tears.

-- With his homework finished, he felt happy.

3>如果表达某事将要发生，要用动词**不定式** to；

-- With a lot of work to do, he can't go to the cinema.

4>如果是说明当时的情况，常用形容词、副词、介词短语表明宾语的状态；

-- He used to sleep with all the windows open.（open adj.开着的）

-- He went out with his hat on.（on 是副词）

-- With the meeting over, we went home.（over adv.结束）

-- He came in with a knife in his hand.（in his hand --介词短语）

-- Tow others with black stockings over their faces jumped out.（over their faces --介词短语）

另外两个脸上蒙着黑色袜子的人跳了出来。

5>总结：

with 用于句首或句尾，常表示状语、行为方式、原因、伴随状况等。

with 如果跟在名词之后，是用来修饰限定该名词。

-- a thief with stocking over his face.

-- a teacher with a book under his arm.

-- a room with the windows open.

It came to a stop outside the jeweller's.

come to 后面常接名词，表示达到

-- come to a stop 停下来 / come to an end 结束 / come to a decision 做出决定

-- come to an agreement 达成协议 / come to an understanding 互相理解

-- come to success 获得成功, come to fame 成名

停车 stop = draw up = pull up

at the barber's 在理发店 / at the butcher's 在肉店 / at the baker's 在面包店

at the greengrocer's 在蔬菜水果店 / at the grocer's 在杂货店 / at the stationer's 在文具店

at the tobacconist's 在烟草店 / at the chemist's 在药店

barber n.理发员，理发师

butcher n.屠夫，肉商

baker n.面包师，面包工人 n.<美>(便携式)烘炉

greengrocer n.蔬菜水果商人 n.蔬菜水果商店

grocer n.食品商人 n.杂货店

stationer n.文具商人 n.文具店

tobacconist n.烟草商人 n.烟店

chemist n.化学家，药剂师

One man stayed at the wheel while two others with black stocking over their faces jumped out and smashed the window of the shop with iron bars.

While this was going on, Mr. Taylor was upstairs.

He and his staff began throwing furniture out of the window.

Chairs and tables went flying into the arcade.

One of the thieves was struck by a heavy statue, but he was too busy helping himself to diamonds to notice any pain.

help oneself to 自便

-- My roommate helped herself to my clothes without asking me.

The raid was all over in three minutes, for the men scrambled back into the car and it moved off at a fantastic speed.

at a fantastic speed / at a tremendous speed / at a high speed / at a full speed

with great speed

Just as it was leaving, Mr. Taylor rushed out and ran after it throwing ashtrays and vases, but it was impossible to stop the thieves.

They had got away with thousands of pounds worth of diamonds.

hundreds of thousands of dollars worth of jewel

Special difficulties 难点

前缀构词法：

1> dis

加在形容词前

-- agreeable（adj.使人愉快的） → disagreeable（adj.不愉快的）

-- content（adj.满意的 vt.使满足） → discontent（adj.不满的 vt.令人不满 n.不满）

-- graceful（adj.优美的） → disgraceful（adj.使失体面的，耻辱的）

-- honest（adj.诚实的，正直的） → dishonest（adj.不诚实的）

-- satisfactory（adj.满意的） → dissatisfactory（adj.不满意的）

加在名词前

-- agreement（n.同意） → disagreement（n.意见不同）

-- honesty（n.诚实，正直） → dishonesty（n.不诚实，不老实）

-- ability（n.能力，才干） → disability（n.无力，无能）

-- grace（n.优美，雅致） → disgrace（n.耻辱）

-- comfort（n.舒适 vt.安慰） → discomfort（n.不舒适 vt.使不舒适）

可以加在动词前

-- agree（v.同意） → disagree（v.不同意）

-- appear（vi.出现） → disappear（vi.消失，不见）

-- believe（相信，信任） → disbelieve（v.不信，怀疑）

在名词前加 dis 得到动词，表示除去、解除。

-- courage（n.勇气，精神） → discourage（vt.使气馁）
-- root（n.根，根部） → disroot / unroot（vt.连根拔除）
-- mask（n.面具，掩饰 v.戴面具，掩饰） → unmask / dismask（vt.揭露，暴露）
-- burden（n.担子，负担 v.负担） → disburden（v.解除负担）

2>il -- 加在以 i 开头的形容词之前
-- legal（adj.法律的，法定的） → illegal（adj.违法的）
-- logical（adj.合乎逻辑的） → illogical（adj.不合逻辑的）
-- literate（adj.有文化的 n.学者） → illiterate（adj.没受教育的 n.文盲）

3>im -- 加在以 b, m, p 开头的形容词之前
-- possible（adj.可能的） → impossible（adj.不可能的）
-- mortal（adj.必死的，人类的） → immortal（adj.不朽的）
-- moral（adj.道德的） → immoral（adj.不道德的）
-- balanced（adj.平衡的） → imbalanced（adj.不平衡的）
-- balance （n.平衡） → imbalance（n.不平衡）

4>ir -- 加在以 r 开头的形容词之前
-- regular（adj.规则的） → irregular（adj.不规则的）
-- rational（adj.理性的） → irrational（adj.无理性的）
-- resistible（adj.可抵抗的） → irresistlble（adj.不可抵抗的）

5>in --主要用于其它字母开头的词之前
-- human（adj.人性的） → inhuman（adj.野蛮的）
-- correct（adj.正确的） → incorrect（adj.不正确的）
-- justice（n.正义，公平） → injustice（n.不正义，不公平）
-- sincere（adj.真诚的） → insincere（adj.虚假的，不真诚的）

6>un --只能用于形容词和动词之前
不
-- happy（adj.快乐的） → unhappy（adj.不幸的，不快乐的）
-- friendly（adj.友好的） → unfriendly（adj.不友好的）
-- lucky（adj.幸运的） → unlucky（adj.不幸的）
无
-- conditional（adj.有条件的） → unconditional（adj.无条件的）
-- limited（adj.有限的） → unlimited（adj.无限的）
非
-- official（adj.官方的，正式的） → unofficial（adj.非官方的，非正式的）
-- just（adj.正义的，公正的） → unjust（adj.不公平的）
未（主要用于过去分词之前）
-- undecided（adj.未定的） → unfinished（adj.未完成的）
-- unexpected（adj.未预料到） → unhurt（adj.没有受伤的）
用于动词之前表示做相反的动作
-- lock（v.锁，锁上） → unlock（vt.开...锁）
-- tie（vt.系，打结） → untie（vi.松开，解开）
-- cover（vt.覆盖） → uncover（vt.揭开，揭露）
-- pack（vt.包装） → unpack（v.打开包裹）
-- dress（v.穿衣） → undress（vt.使脱衣服）
-- load（v.装载） → unload（v.卸货）

Exercise：

1> polite（adj.有礼貌的） → impolite（adj.无礼的，粗鲁的）

2> agree → disagree

3> legible（adj.清晰的，易读的） → illegible（adj.难辨认的，字迹模糊的）

4> accurate（adj.正确的，精确的） → inaccurate（adj.错误的，不准确的）

5> locked → unlocked

6> regular → irregular

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1.B 正确 on one's way to do

-- He is on the/his way to become a lawyer.

2.A 正确 warn somebody out of one's way 警告某人别挡住去路

in one's way 挡住某人的去路

-- You are in my way. 挡住了我的去路。

3.C 正确 4. C 正确

形容词和名词共同修饰名词时，形容词在前，名词在后。（adj + n +被修的名词）

-- an old village school

-- an empty beer glass

5.B 正确 做句子结构题时要和原文加以对比

6. A 正确 made of 可以看出原材料

7. A 正确 began doing something = began to do something 8.D 正确 9. A 正确

accelerate v.加速，促进

-- The driver accelerated to pass the other car.

speed v.加快（加快动作和工作的进程，常和up连用）

-- We'd better speed up, if we want to get there in time.

-- The car sped along the road.

Reverse vt.倒车，颠倒，倒转

-- The car reversed through the gate.

10. A 正确

Overdressed v.(使)穿得太讲究

-- I fell rather overdressed in this smart suit.

Overlooked vt.俯瞰，远眺

11. B 正确

for the time being = temporarily（adv.临时）

meanwhile = at the same time

As it happened 随着这类事情的发生

for a while = for a moment

12. C 正确

fly → flew → flown （fly 是不及物动词，不能用于被动语态。）

-- go flying

-- send sth flying （send sth doing） （direction n.方向）

-- A gust of wind sent the paper flying in all directions 一阵风刮得纸片到处乱飞。

hurl vt.用力投掷

project v.发射 （= send up 发出，射出，长出）

Lesson 07 Mutilated ladies 残钞鉴别组

New words and expression 生词和短语

Mutilate v.使残缺不全 / mutilation n.切断，毁损
及物动词（经常用于被动语态）
1> 毁伤、残害
-- He was mutilated in the accident, and now has only one leg.
-- a mutilated note 一张残缺不全的钞票
2> 把...搞砸了
-- You've already mutilated the novel by making such changes.
Dollar = dad president 美元
chew v.咀嚼
-- A lot of people love chewing gums.（chewing gums 口香糖）（gum n.树脂，橡胶）
-- Don't bite off more than one can chew. 不要贪多嚼不烂。 Bite（n.咬）
chew the fat 聊天，闲谈
chewed up 着急的、担心的 嚼碎，毁坏，消耗
-- Don't get worried about your examination.
-- Don't get chewed up about your examination.
Microwave n.微波，微波炉
Microswitch 微型开关
Microfilm 缩影胶片
Microscope 显微镜
Microsecond 一百万分之一秒，微秒
Microphone 扩音器，麦克风
Microbiology 微生物学
micro adj.极小的，微小的 / macro adj.巨大的
oven n.炉灶
safekeeping n.妥善保管
keep something safe
-- Please keep your ID card safe. 妥善保管你的身份证。
干坏事： do evil (动词) / evil doing (名词)
惹麻烦： make trouble (动词) / trouble making (名词)
Newcastle n.纽卡斯尔（英国港市）
Identify v.鉴定，识别（= prove identity of sb or sth）
-- He can't identify the person
identity n.身份
-- So far the archeologists have been unable to discover her identity.
= So far the archeologists have been unable to identify her.
identification n.辨认，鉴定，证明
spokeswoman n.女发言人
trousers n.裤子，长裤 Britain n.英国 despair n.绝望，失望 vi.绝望
concern vt.涉及，关系到 dismay n.沮丧，惊慌 note n.纸币 ash n.灰，灰烬

Text 课文

Why did Jane cook John's wallet?

Has it ever happened to you? Have you ever put your trousers in the washing machine and then remembered there was a large bank note in your back pocket?

断首或断尾运用疑问句：

断首--主要引起读者的兴趣和注意力。

断尾--进一步巩固、加深与本段所涉及的内容，并引起读者的沉思。

When you rescued your trousers, did note in your back pocket?

Rescued vt.援救，营救

-- Hundreds of people went to rescue the plane crash.

Rescue 是一个大词（大词小用可以加强语气）

When you rescued your trousers, did you find the note was whiter than white?

whiter than white = damaged, mutilated

People who live in Britain needn't despair when they made mistakes like this (and a lot of people do)!

needn't despair(v.) = needn't feel despaired(adj.)

Fortunately for them, the Bank of England has a team called Mutilated Ladies which deals with claims from people who fed their money to a machine or to their dog.

Fortunately for them = luckily for them = happily for them

Team n.队，组（= Organization n.组织，机构，团体）

called Mutilated Ladies = that called Mutilated Ladies

-- 这里采用分词 called 是为了不和后面 which 引导的定语从句从复

deal with v.处理 （deal vi.处理，应付）

Claim n.(根据权利提出)要求，索赔

-- make a claim for 对（赔偿等）提出要求...

feed vt.vi.(fed , fed, feeding) 给吃，喂

-- feed sth to… 把某物喂给…

Dogs, it seems, love to chew up money!

it seems 似乎

本句= It seems that dogs love to chew up money!

A recent case concerns Jane Butlin whose fiancé, John, runs a successful furniture business.

第二段充分的说明了约翰是怎么样把钱从银行里拿回来

concern vt.涉及到 （= is about）

run a factory 开一家工厂 / run a company 开一家公司

John had a very good day and put his wallet containing $3,000 into the microwave oven for safekeeping.

I have a very good day.　我今天过得很好。
I have a good time.　我玩得很高兴。
Fro safekeeping = to keep it safe
Wallet containing… = wallet which contained…

Then he and Jane went horse-riding.
go horse-riding　/　go fishing　/　go hunting　/　go shopping

When they got home, Jane cooked their dinner in the microwave oven and without realizing it, cooked her fiancé's wallet as well.

Imagine their dismay when they found a beautifully-cooked wallet and notes turned to ash!
beautifully-cooked wallet 用一种讽刺的口吻，一种幽默
turn to = turned into = become

John went to see his bank manager who sent the remains of wallet and the money to the special department of the Bank of England in Newcastle: the Mutilate Ladies!
Who = bank manager

They examined the remain and John got all his money back.

'So long as there's something to identify, we will give people their money back,' said a spokes woman for the Bank. 'Last year, we paid $1.5m on 21,000 claims.
so long as = as long as = on condition that　只要…（表假设）
pay money for…　为...付多少钱
-- We paid 80 dollars for the dictionary.
pay off 还清(债务等)付清
-- The couples have already paid their debts off
pay back
1> 把钱归还回去　pay money back
2> 报复、报仇　pay somebody back　-- Don't say that again or I will pay you back.

Special difficulties 难点

Interval　n.间隔，距离，幕间休息
如何运用后缀（名词+后缀→动词）
1> less（表示：否定概念）
-- care（n.v.注意，关心）→　careless（adj.粗心的）
2> ful（表示：有，充满了）
-- success（n.成功）→　successful（adj.成功的）
-- hopeful（adj.怀有希望的）　/　careful（adj.小心的，仔细的）
3> ly（形容词+ ly → 副词），（名词+ ly → 形容词）
-- daily（adj.adv.每日的）/　weekly（adj.adv.每星期的）
-- yearly（adj.adv.每年的）/　hourly（adj.每小时的）
4> ic / pic

-- energetic（adj.精力充沛的，积极的）

-- athlete（n.运动员，运动选手）→ athletic（adj.运动的，体育的，身体健壮的）

5> ish

-- fool（n.愚人）→ foolish（adj.愚蠢的）

-- childish（adj.孩子气的）/ womanish（adj.像女人的）

Exercise：

1> painless（adj.无痛的，不痛的）

2> beautiful

3> daily

4> childish（--ish的形容词具有贬义色彩）

5> athletic（adj.运动的，体育的，身体健壮的）

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1.B 正确 involve vt.包括，使陷入

2.D 正确

-- identify → identifiable（adj.可以确认的）

-- return → returnable（adj.可退回的）

-- eat → eatable（adj.可以吃的）

3.B 正确 unless = if not

4.A 正确 c) any large bank notes（any +复数）

5.C 正确 真实的条件句

6.B 正确

一般来说，如果表示某人的东西就用 's.

如果采用介词 of 表示所属关系，被修饰名词前要出现定冠词。

-- Mary’s book = the book of Mary

7.C 正确 简单句，选用一般过去式

8.A正确 safety n.安全，保险

9.A 正确

-- in charge of 某人负责某物

-- in the charge of 某物由某人负责

10.D 正确 -- become ash = turn to ash = turn into ash

11.B 正确

send = dispatch（vt.送，派遣，发出）= deliver（vt.递送，交付）

convey（vt.运输，运送） fetch（vt.去取回来）

12.B 正确

provided（conj.倘若）= providing（conj.倘若）

-- Provided that you reduce the price, I'll take all the goods.

假如你减价，我会买下所有的货物。

c) supposed 的形式不对, suppose 和 supposing 都可以。

-- Suppose（conj.假使...结果会怎样）= supposing（conj.万一，假使）

Lesson 08 A famous monastery 著名的修道院

New words and expression 生词和短语

Monastery n.寺院，修道院
Abbot n.男修道院院长
Convent n.女修道会，女修道院
Nun n.修女
abbess n.女修道院院长
St. Bernard 圣伯纳德
Pass n.关隘
Watchdog n.看门狗
Rashly adv.莽撞地，冒失地
Boldly adv.大胆地，显眼地
Enclosure n.围场，圈地
Monk n.和尚
Privacy n.清静，隐居
Skier n.滑雪者
Ski n.滑雪橇 vi.滑雪（-- go skiing）
Easter n.复活节
-- at Easter 在复活节 / at Christmas 在圣诞节 / at Thanksgiving 在感恩节
connect （v.连接，联合，关连）
Switzerland （n.瑞士，欧洲中部国家）
Italy （n.意大利，欧洲南部国家）
Metre = Meter （n.米，公尺）
Lie, Lay, Lain, Lying （vi.位于，躺，平放）
Lie, Lied, Lied, Lying（vi.说谎）
Lay, Laid, Laid, Lying（vt.放置，产卵）
Europe （n.欧洲） Asia （n.亚洲）
Tunnel （n.隧道，地道） Attempt （vt.尝试，企图）
Freedom （n.自由，自主） Wander （vi.漫步，徘徊）
Regular （adj.规则的，有秩序的，经常的）
Party （n.团体，一伙人）
Peace （n. 静寂，安宁，和平，和睦）
Minus adj.负的，减的 prep.减去 n.负数
Minus adj.负的负的或在负值区间的
-- a minus value 一个负值 / minus five degrees 零下五度
Degree n.度数，度，程度

Text 课文

What are the St. Bernard dogs used for?
The Great St. Bernard Pass connects Switzerland to Italy.
St. = saint（n.圣人，圣徒 adj.神圣）

Bernard n.伯纳德(男子名)

Pass n.关口

把...与…连接在一起 connect…to… / join….to… / link…with…

connect...with 把...与某事联系在一起

-- I can't connect the picture with my friend, Mary.

be connected with 与...有联系

-- Are you connected with the government?

At 2,473 metres, it is the highest mountain pass in Europe.

At 2,473 metres（介词短语修饰全句用于句首表示原因、条件或状态）

-- In red, she looks much more beautiful.

-- At the age of 25, he is able. 在十五岁的时候，他很能干。

-- At one point 65 metres, he is a little short.

The famous monastery of St. Bernard, witch was founded in the eleventh century, lies about a mile away.

Found（v.建立，创立）= set up（设立，竖立）= establish（vt.成立，建立）

限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句最大的区别：

1> 非限制性定语从句只是对主句或主句中所出现的某个名词的补充、说明和解释，去掉对主句影响不大。

2> 限制性定语从句是主句当中不可缺少的一部分。

1>who 引导的非限制性定语从句主要指人做主语

-- Mr. Smith was a famous person in American history.

-- Mr. Smith, who died on July 17th at 84, was a famous person in American history.

-- There were very few passengers, who escaped without serious injury.（n.伤害）
旅客很少，他们都逃出来了，没有受到重伤。

-- There were very few passengers who escaped without serious injury.
没有受重伤而逃出来的旅客很少。

-- The taxi drivers, who knew about the traffic jam, took another road.
所有司机都知道堵车的事，都走了别的路。

-- The taxi drivers who knew about the traffic jam took another road, and others who didn't know about the traffic jam still took this heavy road.
得知堵车的司机走了别的路，不知道堵车事件的司机仍然走这条路。

2>指代事物在非限制性定语从句当中只能使用 which，不用 that。

-- He lent me a thousand dollars, which was exactly the sum I needed.

3>指代时间 when、地点 where

-- He was left on the desert island, where he stayed for as long as three weeks.
他被留在了荒岛上，在那里他呆了长达三周之久。

For hundreds of years, St. Bernard dogs have saved the lives of travellers crossing the dangerous Pass.

Life（n.生命，生活）→ lives（life 的复数）

These friendly dogs, which were first brought from Asia, were used as watchdogs even in Roman times.

which 指代 friendly dogs

-- The panda, which was brought from China, was used as a symbol of friendship

symbol（n.象征）

Now that a tunnel ahs been built through the mountains, the Pass is less dangerous, but each year, the dogs are still sent out into the snow whenever a traveller is in difficulty.

Now that 既然

1> 用做时间连接词，后面通常跟完成式

-- Now that you have left university, you have to find a job.

2> 用做原因连接词时，后面时态不限

-- Now that you won't help me, I must do the job myself.

whoever, whatever, whenever, wherever, whichever, however

= no matter who/what/when/where/which/how

-- You can telephone me whenever you like. 无论什么时候你想打电话给我都行。

-- Whichever day you come, we'll be pleased to see you.

-- Wherever you go, I'll follow you.

-- However busy you are, you must spare some time to study English.

Despite the new tunnel, there are still a few people who rashly attempt to cross the Pass on foot.

Despite(介词) = in spite of (of 是介词)

attempt to do something = try to do something 企图做某事

There be 结构：

-- There are still a few students studying English in the classroom.

= There are still a few students who are studying English in the classroom.

依旧有些学生在教室学习英语。

During the summer months, the monastery is very busy, for it is visited by thousands of people who cross the Pass in cars.

in cars = by car

As there are so many people about, the dogs have to be kept in a special enclosure.

About（adv.到处，周围）

-- Don't litter waste paper about. 不要到处扔废纸。 Litter（vt.乱丢，铺草，弄乱）

-- look about 到处看 / go about 到处走 / run about 到处跑 / wander about 到处闲逛

keep 经常和介词短语、形容词、分词搭配使用，表示使某人或某物处于某种状态。

-- Keep him out. / Keep him in.（介词）

-- Do keep the cat in the room. （介词）

-- I'm sorry to keep you waiting.（现在分词）

-- The lamb was kept tight to a tree. = I kept the lamb tight to a tree.

lamb（n.小羊，羔羊） / tight（adj.紧的，绷紧的）

In winter, however, life at the monastery is quite different.

quite the opposite 恰恰相反

The temperature drops to -30° and very few people attempt to cross the Pass.

The monks prefer winter to summer of they have more privacy.

prefer A to B 宁愿 A 也不愿 B

-- I prefer reading to doing nothing. 我宁愿看书，也不愿什么都不做。

-- The boy prefers apples to bananas.

prefer to do sth than do sth

-- He prefers to read than do nothing.　我宁愿看书，也不愿什么都不做。

The dogs have greater freedom, too, for they are allowed to wander outside their enclosure.

The only regular visitors to the monastery in winter are parties of skiers who go there at Christmas and Easter.

The regular visitors to BeiJing.

These young people, who love the peace of mountains, always receive a warm welcome at St. Bernard's monastery.

Mike, who loves chess very much, enter for the game.

Chess（n.国际象棋）

Special difficulties 难点

1> what

2> when　　engaged（adj.忙碌的，使用中的）

3> who

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1... C　　be best known for = be famous for…　众所周知，因...而著名

attraction（n.吸引，吸引力）　　trap（vt.使受限制，设陷）

2... C　　the main advantage（n.好处，优势，有利条件）

endanger（vt.危及）

Swiss（n.瑞士人 adj.瑞士的，瑞士人的）

Italian（n.意大利人，意大利语 adj.意大利的，意大利语的，意大利文化的）

3... D　　differ（vi.不一致，不同）

occupation（n.工作，职业）　　undisturbed（adj.不受打扰的）

pursue（vt.从事，继续，追赶）　　relatively（adv.相对地，比较地）

4... D　　名词作表语（原句中为 at 介词短语作状语）

5... A　　形容词或副词和 enough to do 搭配

b）选项错在 so rash as to　（-- You are so kind as to help me.）

6... A　　with 的复合结构形式

-- A large car, with its headlights on and its horn blaring, roared down the arcade.

-- With so many people around me, I fell happy.

7... C　　让某人做某事：let sb do

8... C　　泛泛的概念采取一般现在时

9... B　　强调两者之间

10... A　　whenever = if ever　无论什么时候，只要情况是如此

-- Whenever/if ever you pour oil on water, it floats.（vi.飘浮）

in case（conj.万一）　主要是讨论预防措施

-- You should insure your house in case there is a fire.

11... D　　voyage（n.vi.航海，航行）

12... C　　wander = roam（v.漫游，闲逛，徜徉）

graze（v.放牧，吃草）drift（n.v.漂流）= float（n.v.浮动，飘浮）　wonder（vt.想知道，感到奇怪）

Lesson 09 Flying cats 飞猫

New words and expression 生词和短语

Fascinate v.迷住，吸引住
Fascination（n.魔力，入迷，魅力）
Fascinating（adj.令人着迷的）
-- Sweet music is fascinating.
Fascinated（adj.感到着迷的）
Be fascinated with… 迷上了…
-- He is fascinated with music.
-- He is fascinated with chess. / Are you fascinated with English?
Be crazy about… 着迷于…
-- He is crazy about music.
Be mad about… 着迷于…
-- He is mad about music.
Like, Love, Be fond of 喜欢
-- The boy is fond of football.

Affectionate adj.充满深情，柔情的
-- Cats are affectionate animals.
Affectionately（adv.充满深情的，有感情的，慈爱的）
-- The lady is looking that man affectionately
affection（n.友爱，爱情，影响，疾病，倾向）
affect（vt.影响，感动）

Mysterious adj.神秘的，难以理解的
-- a mysterious plan / a mysterious explanation
mystery（n.谜面，神秘感）
-- His death is a mystery.

Submissive adj.服从的，顺从的
be submissive to sb
-- Dogs and horses are submissive, but cats are never submissive to us.
Obedient（adj.服从的，孝顺的）
-- Are you obedient?
Submit（v.服从，顺从）
-- submit oneself to sb/sth
Submission（n.屈服，降服，服从）

Feline adj.猫的

Independence n.独立，独立性 dependence（n.依靠，依赖，信任，信赖）

Independent（adj.独立自主的，不受约束的） dependent（adj.依靠的，依赖的）
-- You have already grown up, you must be independent.
Depend（vi.依靠，依赖） independ 没有此词
-- You must depend on yourself.

high-rise adj.高层的
windowsill n.窗槛
paratrooper n.伞兵
squirrel n.松鼠
air-resistance n.空气阻力
impact n.冲击力

height（n.高度，海拔，高地[常用复数]）
protect（vt.保护）
remain（vi.保持）
suspicious（adj.可疑的，怀疑的）
apparently（adj.显然的，外观上的）
ability（n.能力，才干）
fall（vi.倒下，落下）--（fell, fallen, falling）
medical（adj.医学的，内科的）
period（n.时期，学时）
shock（n.打击，震动）
injury（n.伤害，侮辱） injure（vt.损害，伤害）
ideal（n.理想 adj.理想的，完美的）
sill（n.窗台，门槛）
storey（n.层 = [美]story）
behave（vi.举动，举止，运转）
suffer（vt.遭受，经历，忍受 vi.受痛苦，受损害）
stretch（v.伸展，伸长）
increase（n.增加 vt.增加，加大 vi.增加，繁殖）
resistance（n. 阻力，电阻，抵抗力，反抗，抵抗）
reduce（vt.减少，缩小）

Text 课文

How do cats try to protect themselves when falling from great heights?
Cats never fail to fascinate human beings.
never fail to 双重否定意味肯定（运用双重否定结构加深句子肯定的语气）
-- If you ask for help in the polite way, you never fail to succeed.
-- If you receive requests like this, you'll never fail to accept.
双重否定结构：（起加深句子肯定的语气的作用）
1>否定词+fail to
-- never fail to / can't fail to / don't fail to
2>否定的形容词之前加以否定

-- What he said is not unreasonable.（adj.不讲道理的，不合理的）

-- It is quite common for us to make mistakes.

= It is not uncommon for us to make mistakes.

3> not + without

-- You can't obtain English without working hard. Obtain（vt.获得，得到）

-- He doesn't have any meal without meats.

4> no + not

-- There is no cat that doesn't like fish.

-- There is nothing that he can't do. 没有什么他不能做的。

-- There is no rule that has no exception. 没有无例外的法规。Exception（n.除外，例外）

They can be friendly and affectionate towards humans, but they lead mysterious lives of their own as well.

as well 也，又，同样

They never become submissive like dogs and horses.

As a result, humans have learned to respect feline independence.

as a result adv.结果

have learned to 学会了，习惯了

-- People have learned to expect(盼望) that trains are punctual.（adj.准时的）

-- Children have learned to expect(认为) that their parents are very able.（adj.能干的）

Most cats remain suspicious of humans all their lives.

be suspicious of… 对…表示怀疑，存有戒心

One of the things that fascinates us most about cats is the popular belief that they have nine lives.

that 引导同位语从句

-- One of the things that fascinates us most about planes is the popular fact that they are safe and fast.

Apparently, there is a good deal of truth in this idea. herehere

a good deal of +不可数名词

apparently（adv.显然地），语气不是非常确定（= It seems that...）

A cat's ability to survive falls is based on fact.

Survive（v.幸免于，幸存，生还）

Fall（n.堕落，落下，下降）

-- a cat's ability to survive falls is based on fact

be based on 基于事实基础之上

base sth on … 把某事建立在…基础之上

-- We base the theory on the fact. 我们把这理论建立在事实的基础之上。

-- The theory is based on fact. 这理论是建立在事实基础上的。

Recently the New York Animal Medical Center made a study of 132 cats over a period of five months.

make a study of sth 对什么作出研究

over a period of five months

All these cats had one experience in common: they had fallen off high buildings, yet only eight of them died from shock or injuries.

in common = the same

fall off 坠落，掉落

die of + illness, disease, hunger, thirst

die from + shock, injures, wound

Of course, New York is the ideal place for such an interesting study, because there is no shortage of tall buildings.

Shortage（n.不足，缺乏）= lack（n.缺乏，短缺），两个词都和 of 搭配

-- Shortage of money led to the failure of the experiments.

资金缺乏导致实验的失败。

There are plenty of high-rise windowsills to fall from! One cat, Sabrina, fell 32 storeys, yet only suffered from a broken tooth.

32 storeys

suffer from 遭受什么痛苦

-- A lot of people in the world are suffering from terrible disease.

'Cats behave like well-trained paratroopers.' a doctor said.

behave like = act like

well-trained 训练很好的，well-decorated 装饰漂亮的

It seems that the further cats fall, the less they are likely to injure themselves.

the more...the more...（用定冠词 the +形容词或副词的比较级）

-- The harder you study English, the better you can learn it.

-- The more you eat, the fatter you will be.

be likely to do 有可能如何（强调可能性）

-- In cold winter, we are likely to catch a cold.

In a long drop, they reach speeds of 60 miles an hour and more.

and more 甚至更多（= more than 60 miles an hour）

At high speeds, falling cats have time to relax. They stretch out their legs like flying squirrels.

at high speeds

stretch out 充分伸展

This increases their air-resistance and reduces the shock of impact when they hit the ground.

Special difficulties 难点

so, such, such a, such an

1> so

2> such （fun 是不可数名词）

3> such an （exhibition n.展览会）

4> so （twin n.双胞胎中一人）

5> such a

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1... A endlessly fascinating 无穷的吸引人的

Endlessly（adv.不断地，无穷尽地）

2... D

3... A

unlikely（adj.未必的，不太可能的）
exceed（vt.超越，胜过）
4... C
for 对于人们来讲
with 对于人们来讲（强调对比概念）
-- With some children, their pocket money goes a long way.（暗含：对于其他的孩子来说…）
Unfailing（adj.经久不衰的,无穷尽的）
Endless（adj.无止境的，无穷的）
5... B
as...as... 象…一样
in the way that... 以…方式
-- I love you in the way that you love me.
-- We like modern art in the same way that we like pretty curtain material.
6... D popularly（adv.一般地，流行地，通俗地，大众地）
It is said that... 据说…
It is announced that... 据宣布…
It is reported that... 据报道…
7... B there **is** plenty of 改为 there **are** plenty of 就对了
8... A
9... A
throughout（prep.遍及，贯穿）
-- throughout one's life 毕生，整个一生中
during 在…期间（时间较短）
-- during our holiday / during the week
through 侧重强调从空间穿过
-- through the crowd 穿过人群 / through the door
-- Monday through Friday
10... C It would seem (that)... = apparently
event n.结果，事件，事变 （in the event adv.结果，如果）
Surprisingly（adv.令人惊讶地）
11... C
explain（v.解释，说明）
test（v.测试，试验，检验）
bear vt.vi.（bore, borne/born, bearing）v.负担，忍受
support（vt.支撑，扶持，支持）
-- The theory is supported by the fact.
-- The theory is based on the fact.
12... A
even so（conj.虽然如此） 注意：要有上下文
-- He is very tired, even so he keeps studying English hard.
Although（conj.虽然，尽管）引导让步状语从句
in spite of（虽然，尽管）只用了连接名词、动名词或代词
moreover（adv.而且；此外）表示递近关系
-- I don't like skating; moreover, the ice is too thin. 我不喜欢溜冰，而且冰也太薄。

Lesson 10 The loss of the Titanic“泰坦尼克”号的沉没

New words and expression 生词和短语

Southampton n.南安普敦（英国港市）

Colossal adj.庞大的（= large in size）
-- A ship Titanic was colossal.
-- A colossal monument / A colossal statue
big
-- You give me a big surprise.
-- He is a big person.（重要）
-- The box is big.（large and heavy）
large（体积大 、数量大）
-- an empty large box（体积大） / a large number of people（数量大）
great （伟大）
vast （辽阔、广阔） -- vast desert
immense（adj.极广大的，无边的）
-- immense = immeasurable 不可测量的 （measurable adj.可测量的）
-- an immense stadium / an immense iceberg
enormous（重点突出数量、程度、体积）---强调程度时比 big 语气，且更正式。
-- We had an enormous lunch.
-- He made a big success. / He made an enormous success.
Giant（n.巨人，大力士 adj.庞大的，巨大的）= **gigantic**（adj.巨人般的，巨大的）
-- a giant person
tremendous （= big、fast、powerful）
-- The plane is travelling at tremendous speed.
Titanic（用于修饰人和物、体积大、力量大）
-- The ship is titanic.
Huge
-- 强调体积大 a huge stone / 数量巨大 a huge sum of money

watertight adj.不漏水的 （-- a watertight ship）
watertight（引申为无限可击的、毫无破绽的）
-- watertight arguments 无懈可击的论点 / watertight excuse 毫无破绽的借口
water proof（adj.防水的） proof（adj.不能透入的）
-- waterproof watch 防水手表 / waterproof coat 防水雨衣

compartment n.（轮船的）密封舱

flood v.充满水（= be filled with water）
-- The ship is flooded.
-- The room was flooded with moonlight.
-- Our classroom is flooded with sunshine.

Flood n.洪水（-- in flood 洪水泛滥）
-- During the rains, the river is in flood
引申表示连续不断的、滔滔不绝的（-- in a flood of words ）
-- She blamed her husband in a flood of words on seeing him.

Float v.漂浮，飘浮 = **drift**（vi,vt 漂浮，漂荡，漂流 n.漂流物，漂流）

tragic adj.悲惨的（= unfortunate）-- a tragic accident
miserable（adj.痛苦的，悲惨的）
bitter adj.痛苦的
tragedy n.悲剧，惨案（-- in tragedy 以悲剧形式）
-- The holiday ended in tragedy.
Comedy n.喜剧
comic adj.喜剧的，滑稽的
comical adj.古怪的，可笑的（含有贬义）

liner n.班船

voyage n.航行（海上航行）/ flight 飞行 / journey 长途行程
-- The voyage is more than the old lady can bear.
navigation 航海，航行学，航海[航空]术
-- navigation light 夜航灯光，导航灯

Iceberg n.冰山
lookout n.了望员

collision n.碰撞
collide vi 碰撞，抵触
-- The plane collided with the mountain.
crash v.坠毁
-- It is said that there is an airplane that crashed in the mountains.
conflict vi.和某事（某人）相抵触
-- My idea conflicts with yours.
clash vi.相冲突
-- His wedding clashed with my examination, so I couldn't go.

Narrowly adv.刚刚，勉强地
miss v.避开
slight adj.轻微的
tremble v.震颤（有规律的、小幅度的抖动）
-- Look, your hands are trembling. what's wrong with you?
Shiver v.强调由于寒冷、惧怕而一连串地抖动
-- I found he's shivering in a cold.
shudder vi.强调全身的颤栗

-- The boy is shuddering, why? Because he was frightened.

Faint adj.微弱的（= weak adj.弱的，虚弱的）

-- faint sound, weak sound / weak voice, faint voice

= unconscious（adj.失去知觉，无意识的）

-- He has been faint for a long time.

slight adj.轻微的，微不足道的

-- a slight headache 点轻微的头疼 / a slight book 一本微不足道的书

horror n.恐惧

abandon v.抛弃（因为某事而被迫放弃自己喜爱的事物）

-- He abandoned his research because of the war.

desert （vt.放弃，遗弃，离弃）

-- desert the army / desert the duty / desert his family

plunge v.投入，跳入（= jump or rush suddenly and wildly）

-- He got so angry that he plunge into the water.

-- When the ship Titanic sank in the ocean, a large number of people plunged into...

jump（侧重强调快速地跳）

-- The boy is jumping up and down.

Leap vt. 跳跃，跳越（-- He leapt out of the sleeping bad.）

Dive vi.潜水，跳水，下潜，俯冲

lifeboat n.救生船

passenger n.乘客，旅客

crew n.全体人员 ton n.吨，大量，许多

unsinkable adj.不会下沉的，不会沉底的

sinking n.沉没 Atlantic n.大西洋 adj.大西洋的

Alarm n.警报

Sharply adj.突然地，急剧地，强烈地，尖锐地

Direct adj.直接的，笔直的

Trembling adj.发抖的，震颤的，颤抖的 n.发抖，震颤

Text 课文

What would have happened if only two of the sixteen water-tight compartments had been flooded?

The great ship, Titanic, sailed for New York from Southampton on April 10th, 1912.

The great ship, Titanic, sailed for... 背景介绍

sail for… 航海去往某处

set out for / set off for 出发去往某处

leave for / head for / make for 出发去往某处

-- He will set out for the Atlantic.

-- The plane is making for the airport.

-- We are heading for Canada.

She was carrying 1,316 passengers and a crew of 891.

She was carrying... （carry 表示载有）

a crew of 一组人员

Even by modern standards, the 46,000 ton Titanic was a colossal ship.

modern standards 现代的标准

by = according to 表示依据
-- by regulation 依据规则 （regulation n.规则，规章）
-- by rules 依据条例（rule n.规则，惯例）
-- by our estimate 依据我们的估计（estimate n.估计，估价，评估 v.估计，估价，评估）
-- by one's looks = by one's appearance 根据某人的长相（appearance n.外貌，出现）
according to… 依据（事实、课文等客观存在的现实）
-- according to the fact 依据事实

-- according to the **Text 课文** 依据这篇课文

in accordance with = according to
in accordance with… 依据（法律等），更加正式
-- in accordance with law / in accordance with rules
in my opinion 在我看来
At the time, however, she was not only the largest ship that had ever been built, but was regarded as unsinkable, for she had sixteen watertight compartments.
At that time 在当时
not only... but(also)... 不仅…而且…
be regarded as = be considered to be = be thought of as 把...看作为
口语中：regard sb./sth. As + (n./porn./adj./doing/done)
-- I regard his idea as totally unacceptable.（adj.无法接受的，不受欢迎的）
-- We can't regard the matter as settled.（adj.定下的，决定的）
for 表示原因
Even if two of these were flooded, she would still be able to float.
be able to 强调有能力
The tragic sinking of this great liner will always be remembered, for she went down on her first voyage with heavy loss of life.
be remembered 被永远记住 （always adv.永远，始终，总是）
go down = sink
on her first voyage 处女航，首航
with heavy loss of life 损失惨重，造成大批人员的死亡
Four days after setting out, while the Titanic was sailing across the icy water of the North Atlantic, huge iceberg was suddenly spotted by a lookout.
four days after setting out... = four days after setting off...
spotted = discovered
icy（adj.冰冷的，冷淡的，盖着冰的） waters（n.水域，海域）
After the alarm had been given, the great ship turned sharply to avoid a direct collision.
the alarm had been given 发出警报
to avoid... 不定式表目的
The Titanic turned just in time, narrowly missing the immense wall of ice which rose over 100 feet out of the water beside her.
Just in time 很及时
Missing… 现在分词做状语，对主句的补充说明
which 指代 the immense wall of ice
Suddenly, there was a slight trembling sound from below, and the captain went down to see

what had happened.

from below 从下方 / from above 从上方

The noise had been so faint that no one though that the ship had been damaged.

So faint that no one thought that...（so...that…）

Below, the captain realized to his horror that the Titanic was sinking rapidly, for five of her sixteen watertight compartments had already been flooded!

to one's horror 使某人感到惊恐

to one's surprise 使某人感到惊讶

The order to abandon ship was given and hundreds of people plunged into the icy water.

The order was given 命令被下达 / to abandon ship 弃船（不定式做定语）

-- be able to do sth 能够做某事 / the ability to do sth 做某事的能力

-- order sb to do sth 命令某人做某事 / the order to do sth 做某事的命令

-- be capable of doing sth 有能力做某事 / capability of doing sth 做某事的能力

ability（n.能力，才干）

capable（adj.有能力的，能干的，有可能的）

capability（n.能力，才能，才干）

As there were not enough lifeboats for everybody, 1,500 lives were lost.

As = because

Special difficulties 难点

1>动词后加-er

如果是以不发音的 e 结尾的，只加 r（表示行为的主动者，做某事的人）。

work → worker / teach→teacher / write→writer / read→reader

murder（vt.谋杀，凶杀）→ murderer（n.杀人犯，凶手）

2>动词、名词后加-ist （表示某种主义信仰者，从事某种职业、研究的人。）

Copy → copyist（n.抄写员，模仿者）

type → typist（n.打字员）

novel（n.小说，长篇故事）→ novelist（n.小说作家）

drug（n.药）→ druggist（n.药商，药剂师）

tobacco（n.烟草，烟草制品）→ tobacconist（n.烟草商，烟店）

3 >形容词后加-ness（抽象名词，表示一种性质、情况、状态）

kind → kindness（n.仁慈，亲切，好意，善意）

bitter → bitterness（n.苦味，辛酸，苦难）

happy → happiness（n.幸福，快乐）--- 以结尾要变 y 为 i 加 ness.

willing（adj.乐意的，自愿的）→ willingness（n.自动自发,积极肯干）

4>某些动词后加-ion,构成名词。

Suggest → suggestion

possess（vt.占有，拥有，持有）→ possession（n.拥有，占有）

collect → collection（n.收藏，搜集品）

以-te 结尾的动词，把不发音的-e 去掉，在加-ion.

Translate（vt.翻译，解释，转化） → translation（n.翻译，译文，转化）

complete → completion（n.完成）

graduate（v.(使)(大学)毕业）→ graduation（n.毕业，毕业典礼）

某些以-aim/-ain 结尾的动词、把-i 去掉，在加-ation.

Explain（v.解释，说明）→ explanation（n.解释，解说，说明）
Exclaim（v.呼喊，惊叫，大声叫）→ exclamation（n.惊叫，喊叫）
5>（以-able/-ible 结尾的）**形容词之后加-ity 变成**（以-ability/-ibility 结尾的）**抽象名词**（表示性质、状态）
able → ability
probable（adj.很可能的，大概的）→ probability（n.可能性，或然性，概率）
possible（adj.可能的）→ possibility（n.可能性，可能发生的事物）
mobile（adj.可移动的，机动的）→ mobility（n.活动性，灵活性，机动性）
Exercise：
Violin（n.小提琴）→ violinist（n.小提琴演奏者，小提琴家）
Responsible（adj.有责任的，可靠的）→ responsibility（n.责任，职责）
Careless（adj.粗心的，疏忽的） → carelessness
1> physics（n.物理学）→ physicist（n.物理学者，唯物论者）
2> mine（n.矿 v.开采，开矿）→ miner（n.矿工）
3> human（n.人类 adj.人类的）→ humanity（n.人性，人类）
4> impress（vt.留下印象）→ impression（n.印象，感想）
-- make a good impression
5> original（adj.最初的，原始的）→ originality（n.创意，创造性）

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1... D maiden（n.少女，处女 adj.未婚的，纯洁的，处女的）
-- on her first = maiden voyage 首航，处女航
2…C course（n.过程，路线，课程）-- steep（adj.陡峭的，险峻的）→ steeply（adv.险峻地）
3... A
4... B on board her（her 指代的是 the great ship）
-- on board the plane 在飞机上 -- on board the train 在火车上-- on board the ship 在轮船上
5... D 表示下沉的可能性
6… D 有了“段时间”four days，所以用过去完成进行时。
7... B so 位于句首，句子必须倒装。8... D
9... A veer（vi.转向 vt.使转向）= turn
10... C just in time = with no time to spare 躲得很及时
in next to no time = at once = immediately
on a sudden impulse 凭一时的冲动（impulse n.冲动，推动，刺激）
11... B 重点在于下去调查
investigate（v.调查，研究） examine（v.检查，调查）
12... A room（n.空间）
volume（n.容量，容积）
area（n.范围，区域,地区）
place（n.地方，地点）

Lesson 11 Not guilty 无罪

New words and expression 生词和短语

Guilty adj.犯罪的，违法的
-- He felt guilty when he did what he shouldn't have done.
-- He said that with a guilty smile.
Guilt (n.罪行，内疚) guiltily (adv.有罪地，有罪似地)
反义词：innocent (adj.清白的，无罪的) innocence (n.清白)

tolerant adj.宽容的 → Tolerantly (adv.)
-- A tolerant person must be easy going. 一个宽容的人一定是很好相处的。
Tolerance (n.宽容，忍受，容忍) Tolerate (vt.忍受，容忍)
Tolerable (adj.可忍受的) hardship (n.困苦，艰难，辛苦)
-- The hardship is tolerable. 这种困苦还是可以忍受的。

declare v.申报

hardened adj.有经验的（侧重于老练的）
-- a hardened player / a hardened thief
experienced adj.富有经验的 (侧重于有经验的)
-- an experienced teacher

professional adj.职业的，专业的
-- a professional player 一个职业的选手

smuggler n.走私者

officious adj.爱管闲事的 / Officiousness (n.)
-- A lot of old ladies are officious.
Officious adj.多管闲事的，非官方的，非正式的，专横的
-- civil（adj.全民的，市民的，公民的，国民的）
-- servant（n.仆人）
-- civil servant n.文职人员,公务员,公仆,(联合国等机构的行政人员)
-- officious civil servant 爱管闲事的的公务员
-- an officious police officer 专横的的警官
Officiously（adv.多管闲事的，非正式的，非官方的）
official adj.官方的，官员的，正式的
-- An official inquiry will be made into this matter.（inquiry n.质询，调查）
此事将进行一次官方调查。

Confidently adv.自信地（= with confidence 充满信心的）
-- He went to do the work confidently.

Confident (adj.自信的，确信的)
Confidence (n.信心)
-- have confidence 有信心 / gain confidence 获得信心
in confidence (悄悄的,秘密的) = secretly
take sb into one's confidence 以某人为心腹
-- The boss takes his secretary into his confidence.

dreadful adj.可怕的，一团糟的 （= frightful adj.糟糕的，讨厌的）
dreadful（侧重于可怕的，乱七八糟的）
-- The room is dreadful / a frightful day
fearful（表示胆怯的，恐惧的）
-- she felt fearful particularly when she went out at night.（adv.独特地，显著地）

pounce v.猛抓，扑住

perfume n.香水（人造的）
fragrance （抽象名词）n.芬芳，芳香，香气，香味

sarcastically adv.讽刺地
exempt adj.被免除的

duty n.税
-- Customs Duty 关税 / duty free 免税的
-- Stamp Duty 印花税 （stamp n.邮票，印花，图章，标志）
同义词：tax n.税，税款，税金
-- income tax 所得税

gel n.凝胶

mixture n.混合物
mix（v.使混和，混淆，混合） -- mix sth With
-- Oil does not mix with water. 油不能和水融合在一起

unscrew v.拧开
nostril n.鼻孔
chalk n.粉笔

baggage n.行李
同义词：luggage（n.行李，皮箱）

trouble vt.(使)烦恼，麻烦，打扰
hide vt.vi.（hid, hidden, hiding）隐藏
eh int.(表示惊奇、疑问等) 啊，嗯
particular（adj.特殊的，特别的，独特的）

particularly（adv.异常地,显著地,特别地,格外,尤其）
import　n.进口，进口货(常用复数)，输入
encouraging（adj.鼓励的）　　encouragingly（adv.鼓励的）
greet　vt.问候，向...致意，映入眼帘
convince　vt.使确信，使信服

Text 课文

What was the Customs Officer looking for?

Customs Officers are quite tolerant these days, but they can still stop you when you are going through the Green Channel and have nothing to declare.

the Green Channel = the Custom Office
我们在运用形容词、动词时，往往需要用副词来强调。
Really（表示“真正的”）
-- a really officious person
particularly（强调“特别，尤其是”）
absolutely（强调“绝对的”）
completely = entirely = fully = thoroughly（强调“完全的，彻底的”）
extremely（强调“特别，特别是”）
fairly　adv.相当地，还算（语气一般）
-- a fairly gook book. 一本还算可以的书。
very（语气程度强烈“非常”）
-- a very good book. 一本非常好的书。
rather 语意程度接近 fairly，注意不冠词的位置。
-- a fairly good book.
-- a rather good book = rather a good book (更常用)
quite right / quit wrong / quite mistaken / quite sure
even **really** honest people...
a **particularly** officious young Customs officer...

Even really honest people are often made to feel guilty.

are made to feel guilty
make, have, let 及感官性动词 see, hear, notice, feel 用于主动语态，符合宾语不定式的符号 to 应省略。但这种结构改成被动式时，不定式符号 to 必须还原。
-- We heard someone come up the stairs.
-- Someone was heard to come up the stairs.

The hardened professional smuggler, on the other hand, is never troubled by such feelings, even if he has five hundred gold watches hidden in his suitcase.

even if he has five hundred gold watches hidden in his suitcase.
= Even if/though he has five hundred golden watches that are hidden in his suitcase.
hidden in his suitcase（过去分词短语作定语，修饰 watches）
On the one hand..., on the other hand…。
-- On the one hand we could stay and help you, but on the other hand it might be better if you

went to help him instead.

When I returned form abroad recently, a particularly officious young Customs Officer clearly regarded me as a smuggler.

'Have you anything to declare?' he asked, looking me in the eye.

looking me in the eye 两眼直盯盯的注视着我

= look sb in the face = stare sb in the eyes = look directly at sb

-- Not one of the men dared look him in the eye. 没有人敢正眼看他。

'No', I answered confidently.

'Would you mind unlocking this suitcase please?' **'Not at all,' I answered.**

Would you mind unlocking this suitcase, please?

注意：mind 后面的动名词形式

The Officer went through the case with great care.

The Officer went through the case with great care.

= The Officer examined the case carefully

with great care 强调相当的仔细

All the thing I had packed so carefully were soon in a dreadful mess.

in a mess 乱作一团

介词 in 和名词搭配，表示一种状态

-- in good order 秩序井然 / -- in good health 身体健康

-- in a good mood 心情好 / -- in a good temper 脾气好

I felt sure I would never be able to close the case again.

Suddenly, I saw the Officer's face light up.

light up 喜气洋洋，容光焕发

-- Marsha’s face lit up when she saw her old friend.

-- His face lighted up at the small triumph.（n.胜利，成功）

-- Tom really lighted up when he saw the new bicycle.

Light 的过去式与过去分词即可以是 lit，也可以是 lighted.

-- 但是如果运用过去分词作定语，表示被点燃的，要用 lighted。

-- a lighted cigar 一支被点燃的雪茄

-- a lighted stick 点燃的火炬

He had spotted a tiny bottle at the bottom of my case and he pounced on it with delight.

with delight 欣喜若狂地 （with 和抽象名词搭配，表示内心充满了一种感情）

-- with confidence 自信地 / -- with care 细心地

-- with pride 骄傲地 / -- with delight 欣喜若狂地

pounce on 向...猛扑过去，对...大做文章

-- The policeman pounced on the thief. 警察向小偷猛扑过去。

-- Don't pounce on my mistake. 不要对我的错误大做文章。

'Perfume, eh?' he asked sarcastically. 'You should have declared that. Perfume is not exempt from import duty.'

should have 和过去分词搭配（表示本应该做某事却没有做，具有谴责性的味道）

-- You should have arrived here five minutes earlier.

-- You should have told me about it.

shouldn't have done 本不应该做某事

exempt v.免除 adj.被免除的（be exempt from）

-- Drinks are not exempt from import duty. Perfume is not exempt from import duty either.

'But it isn't perfume,' I said. 'It's hair gel.' Then I added with a smile, 'It's a strange mixture I make myself.'

As I expected, he did not believe me.

As：关系代词（引导非限制性定语从句，它所指代的内容就是主句的整个句子的含义）

-- As we know, the earth is round. 众所周知，地球是圆的。

-- As I mentioned 正如我所提及的

-- As I soon learned, he was English himself. 正如我很快得知的,他也是英国人。

关系代词 as 和 which 的区别：

as 所引导的非限制性定语从句，可用在主句之前。

which 引导的非限制性定语从句，只能用在主句之后。

'Try it!' I said encouragingly.

Encouragingly 副词形式

The officer unscrewed the cap and put the bottle to his nostrils.

He was greeted by an unpleasant smell which convinced him that I was telling the truth.

Greet

1> vt.问候，向...致意

2> vt.觉察到，呈现在...眼前，在...耳边

-- I woke up and was greeted by a bird's song. 当我醒来时，耳边是鸟鸣声。

-- Inside the room a dreadful mess greeted us. 当我进入房间，眼前是一堆乱七八糟的东西。

-- When he went into the kitchen, a smell greeted him.

A few minutes later, I was able to hurry away with precious chalk marks on my baggage.

Precious adj.宝贵的，贵重的

Special difficulties 难点

Canada n.加拿大

Canadian adj.加拿大的 n.加拿大人

Expectation n.期待，预料

France n.法国，法兰西

French n.法国人，法语 adj.法国的，法国人的，法语的
Germany n.德国
German n.德国人，德语 adj.德国的，德国人的，德语的
Danish n.丹麦语 adj.丹麦的
Denmark n.丹麦（北欧国家,首都哥本哈根）
Copenhagen n.哥本哈根
Tivoli n.提沃利（意大利中部一城市）

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1.C potential（adj.潜在的，可能的）

2.C what 提问 → 名词回答 idea（n.想法，念头）

3.A smuggle（n.走私，偷带 v.走私）

4.D

5.C look him in the eyes/face = look directly at him

6.B would you kindly do sth please? （一种有礼貌的请求）

7.A should = ought to

8.A Having finished his homework, he went to bed.

9.C easy-going（adj.好相处的，随和的）
tolerable（adj.可容忍的 能忍耐的）placid（adj.平静的）negligent（adj.疏忽的，粗心大意的）

10 A feel ashamed of… 为…感到羞愧
unashamed（adj.不害羞的，不知耻的）
guiltless（adj.无罪的，无辜的）

11.D
incomprehensible（= unable to be understood）adj.不能理解的
technical（adj.专业性的，技术的，技术上的）
-- The article is full of incomprehensible technical expressions.
Incredible（= unbelievable）adj.难以置信的，不可思议的
-- What you said is incredible. Incredulous（adj.怀疑的，不轻信的）
-- He is an incredulous person. Skeptical（unwilling to believe）adj.好怀疑的，怀疑的

12. baggage（n.行李, <军队的>行装）= luggage（n.行李，皮箱）
casement（n.门式窗）
equipment（n.装备，设备，器材，装置）

Lesson 12 Life on a desert island

New words and expression 生词和短语

desert island 荒岛
desert n.沙漠 vt.背弃,遗弃
dessert n.甜点

unrealistic adj.不真实

paradise n.天堂，乐士
-- A lot of people imagine the USA as their paradise.
Heaven n.天堂，天国（也指死亡 -- go to heaven）

wretched adj.可怜的，艰苦的
= miserable adj.痛苦的，悲惨的，可怜
-- lead a wretched/miserable/terrible/dog's life. 过着悲惨的生活。

starve v.挨饿（-- starve to death 饿死）
-- During the war, a large of people starved to death.
-- hungry to death 我饿得要死（即：我非常饿）

element n.成分

opportunity n.机会
golden opportunity 绝好的机会
-- Don't miss any golden opportunities.
-- opportunity knocks only once 千载难逢的机会
chance 表机会时可以与 opportunity 互换（后面+of doing，或 to do）
-- I had the chance of visiting Paris. = I had the opportunity of visiting Paris.
-- He had no opportunity to see her.
chance 表可能性时(= possibility)，则不可 opportunity 互换。
-- There is a chance that I will see him. 我有可能见到她。
-- The chances are that he will be elected the president. 他有可能当选总统。
-- The chances are that he will pass his examination next week.

coral n.珊瑚
Virgin Islands 维尔京群岛
Miami n.迈阿密（美国最南的城市）
Dinghy n.救生筏，小船
Caribbean n.加勒比海
spear gun 捕鱼枪
lobster n.龙虾

tanker n.油轮
genuinely adv.由衷地
-- He is genuinely thankful to me. 他由衷地地感谢我。
Genuine adj.真实的，真正的，诚恳的
Genuineness（n.）

Robinson Crusoe 鲁滨孙.克鲁索（小说《鲁滨孙漂流记》主人公）

Exceptional adj.例外的，异常的
Ripe adj.熟的，成熟的
Fruit n.水果，果实，果类，成果
Opposite adj.相对的，相反的，对等的 n.相反的事物
Sink vi.沉下，(使)下沉
Prove vt.证明，证实
Spear n.矛，枪

Text 课文

What was exceptional about the two men's stay on the desert island?
Most of us have formed an unrealistic picture of life on a desert island.
form an unrealistic picture of sth 对…抱有不切实际的幻想
-- A large number of people have formed an unrealistic picture of the job.
Form（v.形成，构成）= develop（vt.逐渐形成）
-- develop a habit = form a habit 养成一种习惯

We sometimes imagine a desert island to be a sort of paradise where the sun always shines.
imagine sth to be = imagine sth as
-- Some people imagine flying to be more dangerous than traveling by train.
-- A large number people imagine the USA as their paradise.

Life there is simple and good. Ripe fruit falls from the trees and you never have to work.
You never have to work = you needn't work = you don't need to work

The other side of the picture is quite the opposite. **Life on a desert island is wretched.**
quite the opposite 恰恰相反 / quite different

You either starve to death or live like Robinson Crusoe, Waiting for a boat which never comes.
Either you or I am going to the party. （谓语动词和最接近的主语保持一致）
Either come in or go out, don't stand on the doorway.（门口，门道）

Perhaps there is an element of truth in both these pictures, but few us have had the opportunity to find out.
an element of truth = a bit of truth

Optimistic（adj.乐观的） Pessimistic（adj.悲观的，消极的）

Two men who recently spent five days on a coral island wished they had stayed there longer.

谓语动词 wish 之后的宾语从句中要使用虚拟语气

1>如果表达与现在情况相反, that 从句中的动词要用过去时（be 动词要用 were）。

-- I wish you could drive a car. = I am sorry you can't drive a car.

所表达的意思是：你要是能开车就好了。（表达一种遗憾的心情）

2>如果表达与过去情况相反, that 从句中的动词要用过去完成时。

-- I wish I hadn't spent so much money. = I am sorry I spend so much money.

-- I wish that you had written to him. = I am sorry you didn't write to him.

3>如果表达与将来事实相反的情况或将来不可能实现的心愿, that 从句中要使用 would, could 等情态动词的过去时形式。

-- I wish that I could go abroad tomorrow.

-- I wish that you could come here tomorrow.

4>if only 要比 wish 更富有戏剧性和感情色彩

-- If only the weather would change. = I wish the weather would change.

要是天气转晴该有多好啊！

-- We wish that we knew where to look for him. = If only we knew where to look for him.

要是我们知道到哪去找他该有多好啊！

-- If only we could have gone to the party. 要是我们昨天能参加那个聚会该有多好啊！

-- If only you hadn't said that. 你要是不说那句话多好啊！

-- If only you would come here tomorrow. 你明天要是能来该有多好啊！

They were taking a badly damaged boat from the Virgin Islands to Miami to have it repaired During the journey, their boat began to sink.

have it repaired （have sth done）

They quickly loaded a small rubber dinghy with food, matches, and cans of beer and rowed for a few miles across the Caribbean until they arrived at a tiny coral island.

load…with sth 把某物装载到…上

-- The workers are loading the truck with goods.

Unload（vi.卸货，退子弹 vt.倾销，卸）

There were hardly any trees on the island and there was no water, but this did not prove to be a problem.

hardly any = very little/few （hardly adv.刚刚，几乎不）

-- Hardly anybody likes him because he is so rude. 几乎没人喜欢他，因为他非常粗鲁。

-- You hardly eat anything, what's wrong? 你几乎什么都没吃，怎么了？

prove to be = turn out to be

The men collected rainwater in the rubber dinghy.

As they had brought a spear gun with them, they had plenty to eat.

They caught lobster and fish every day, and, as one of them put it 'ate like kings'.

Put = express

When a passing tanker rescued them five days later, both men were genuinely sorry that they had to leave.

Both men were genuinely sorry that they had to leave.

= If only we could have stayed on the desert island a little bit longer.

Special difficulties 难点

wish, if only

1> had bought it（显然说明的是过去的情况）

-- silly adj.愚蠢的，无聊的

2> couldn't/wouldn't make such noise.

3> were here （强调：他在这儿，该有多好）

说明与现在情况相反的概念，无论什么人称, be 动词应该使用 were.

4> could play the piano as well...

5> had studied hard then.

6> hadn't mentioned it to him.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1... C 要么是过度乐观，要么是过度的悲观

unreal adj.不真实的，虚幻的 present vt.介绍，赠送，呈现

wretchedness n.可怜，悲惨 idleness n.闲散，懒惰，赋闲无事

unduly adv.不适当地，过度地，不正当地

optimistic adj.乐观的 pessimistic adj.悲观的，厌世的

2... D essential（adj.必需的，基本的）= very necessary equipment n.装备，设备

3... A fend for oneself 独立的照料某人

4... B think of sb/sth as… 把某人、某事看作为...

5... D few of us 我们当中没有几个人

6... C after(介词)其后要和名词、动名词搭配

-- after(连词)引导时间状语从句，表示动作在前。（A 答案变为 they had rowed 就对了）

7... B Refrigerators are useful.= A refrigerator is useful.

Scarce adj.缺乏的，不足的，稀有的，不充足的

8... C 为做过的事情后悔：regret + doing be sorry that 是否可以表示后悔去做某事？

9... B

inhabited（adj.有人居住的） uninhabited（adj.无人居住的）

unpopular adj.不流行的，不受欢迎的

barren adj.不生育的，不孕的，贫瘠的 n.荒地

10... D 完全不同的 entirely different

naturally adv.自然地，天然地

11... D

觉得、发现某人或某事怎么样：find sb/sth to be

-- They found the trip to be very exciting. 某人或某事被发现怎么样，常用被动语态。

-- The car is found to be beautiful.

Demonstrate v.论证,表明,举行,示威

12... A put it = express

Lesson 13 "It's only me' “是我，别害怕”

New words and expression 生词和短语

Costume n.化装服
-- costume ball 化妆舞会 / costume party
-- fancy (dress) party 化妆舞会
suit（n.西装，西服） dress（n.裙子）

consist v.由…组成
1> consist of... 由...组成（表示被动概念）
2> be made up of… 由...组成
3> comprise v.包含，由...组成（整体由部分所构成）
-- Our class consists of 100 students.
= Our class is made up of more than 100 students.
-- The United Kingdom consists of G.B and Northern Ireland.
= The United Kingdom comprises G.B and Northern Ireland.
-- The house consists of six rooms.
4> be composed of… 由...组成（强调有什么成分所组成）
-- Water is composed of oxygen and hydrogen.（compose v.组成，写作）
-- oxygen（n.氧，氧气） hydrogen（n.氢）
5> constitute vt.组成，构成（部分构成整体）
-- G.B and Northern Ireland constitute The United Kingdom.（Ireland n.爱尔兰）
-- The committee consists of 10 members. （committee n.委员会）
= Ten members constitute the committee.

Sheet n.被单

Effective adj.有明显效果的，有作用的
-- The costume is quite effective.
-- His words was effective.
Influential adj.有影响的，有势力的（有潜移默化影响力的）
-- What our parents do is influential to children.
Efficacious adj.(医药)有效的，灵验的
-- The drug is efficacious
Fruitful adj.有成效的，产生结果的
-- Their experiment is fruitful.

Comfortable adj.舒适的 （反义词：uncomfortable）
Comfort（n.舒适 v.安慰）
Discomfort（n.不舒适 vt.使不舒适，使不便）
-- In spite of discomforts he is determined to stay here.

Storeroom n.储藏室
Electricity n.电
Metre n.电表 （ammeter n.电表）
Pace n.一步

Flee v. (fled, fled)逃走
Flee vt.vi.(总称)泛泛强调逃离危险的禁地
Panic（n.惊慌，恐慌） bull（n.公牛）
-- The people fled in panic when the bull got loose. 当牛挣脱绳子时人们惊慌的四散而逃。
Escape（vi.逃出监狱，逃出牢笼 vt.逃掉，逃出）
-- He was able to escape from the house.
-- I am sorry your name escaped me. 很抱歉，我忘记你的名字了。
-- They tried to escape death.

Slam v.砰地关上（同义词：bang v.发巨响，重击）
-- slam the door 砰地关上门
-- He left the room slam/bang the door behind him. 他离开了房间在身后砰地把门关上。

Stair n.楼梯，阶梯
Fancy n.幻想，爱好，迷恋，想象力 adj.奇特的，异样的
Dine vi.吃饭，进餐 Dining n.吃饭，进餐
Baker n.面包师
Hide vt.vi.(hid, hidden, hiding)隐藏
Hall n.走廊，门厅
Board n.(政府机关或商业)部门

Text 课文

What did the man expect to find under the stairs?
After her husband had gone to work, Mrs. Richards sent her children to school and went upstairs to her bedroom.

She was too excited to do any housework that morning, for in the evening she would be going to a fancy-dress part with her husband.
fancy-dress party = costume party
1> too ... to… 太...而不能… （不定式 to 在大部分情况下表示否定概念）
2> not/never too ... to… 并不太...所以能够…
-- One is never too old to learn 活到老，学到老。
-- The question is not too difficult for me to answer. 这个问题并不太难，所以我能够答得出。
3>如果在副词 too 前发现修饰语 all, but, only, 不定式 to 的概念也是肯定的。
-- They are all too satisfied to work with you.
-- I am only too glad to have someone to speak to. 我太高兴了，想找个人说话。
-- He was but too eager to get home.

She intended to dress up as a ghost and as she had made her costume the night before, she was impatient to try it on.

intended to 打算做什么 = mean to do 意图做什么

dress up as… 化妆成为…

the night before 前一个晚上（以过去的某一个时间为基准点）

last night 昨天晚上（以现在为基准点）

-- She went to New York on business three days ago, the night before she got everything ready.

be impatient to do sth 急于要做某事，迫不及待做某事

impatient 可以换为 eager, anxious, hungry, thirsty, desperate, can't wait(口语)

desperate（adj.不顾一切的，拚死的）

-- she was impatient to try it on.（try on 试穿）

Though the costume consisted only of a sheet, it was very effective.

After putting it on, Mrs. Richards went downstairs.

After putting it on 穿上以后

She wanted to find out whether it would be comfortable to wear.

= It would be comfortable (for her) to wear

动词不定式 to wear，用来修饰说明 comfortable，作它的状语。

-- It is easy for me to read.

-- The book is difficult to read.

-- The dress is easy to wash.

-- Your handwriting is easy to recognize.

主动形式表达被动概念：

1> The music is sweet to hear.

2> The machine needs repairing. （用 need, want 和动名词形式直接搭配）

3> The dictionary is worth buying.

-- The book is worth reading.

4>The house is under construction.（介词 under 表达被动的意味）

-- The puma is under control.

-- The problem is under discussion.（n.讨论）

-- The thief is under arrest.（n.逮捕，拘留）

5> The airport came into use again.（came into 不及物动词短语）

-- Our time has already gone to waste.（go to waste 浪费掉，付诸东流）

6> able 形容词后缀，跟在动词后表达 " 能够被...的 "

-- She is a respectable person.（respectable adj.可敬的，值得被尊敬的）

-- This is a returnable bottle. 这是一个能被退回的瓶子。（returnable adj.可被退回的）

7> consist of, comprise 本身表达被动概念，结构形式为主动

Just as Mrs. Richards was entering the dinning room, there was a knock on the front door. She knew that it must be the baker.

She had told him to come straight in if ever she failed to open the door and to leave the

bread on the kitchen table.

straight adv.直接地，径直地

if even（ever 用于条件句。表示任何时候，任何场合）= when ever

-- If ever you see George give him my best regards.（n.问候）

-- When ever he is in trouble I'll be on the spot.

Not wanting to frighten the poor man, Mrs. Richards quickly hid in the small storeroom under the stairs.

Not wanting （分词的否定结构形式，做原因状语。）

多用于句首，也可插入句中，主谓之间。

Not wanting to make her nervous, the doctor didn't fully explain the seriousness of condition.

= The doctor, not wanting to make her nervous, didn't fully explain the seriousness of her condition.

She heard the front door open and heavy footsteps in the hall. Suddenly the door of the storeroom was opened and a man entered.

Mrs. Richards realized that it must be the man from the Electricity Board who had come to read the metre.

read the metre 查电表

She tried to explain the situation, saying 'It's only me', but it was too late.

saying（现在分词做伴随状语）

The man let out cry and jumped back several paces.

let out a cry 大叫了一声（= utter a cry /give a cry）

utter vt.发出，做声，发表，发射

jump back several paces 后退了好几步

When Mrs. Richards walked towards him, he fled, slamming the door behind him.

Slamming（现在分词作方式状语或伴随状语，说明 fled 的情况）

Special difficulties 难点

形容词+动词不定式：

-- He was delighted to learn that...

-- I was glad to hear that...

-- He was anxious to leave...

1>感情形容词后的不定式通常是表示原因，在句中做原因状语。

happy, relieved, astonished, amazed, surprised, horrified, disappointed, sad, embarrassed, shocked

relieved（adj.放心的） horrified（adj.惊骇的）

-- He was frightened when he saw the snake. → He was frightened to see the snake.

-- I was sorry when I learnt that he had had a accident.

→ I was sorry to learn that he had had a accident.

2>不定式也可以放在表语之后，主语是不定式的实际宾语。

-- The car is hard to park.

-- Some questions are awkward to answer. Awkward（adj.尴尬的，不方便的）

3>在少数几个动词后，不定式可用作结果。

learn, find, see, hear, be told

-- He lived to see his inventions come to success. 他活着看见他的发明成功了。

-- He woke up to find everyone gone. 他醒来发现大家都走了。

-- He went to his house only to find him out.

4>在不定式前加 only，表示意想不到的，出乎意料的结果。

-- He hurried to the post office only to find it was shut(closed)

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1.D She wanted to know whether that costume was comfortable to wear.

2.C take sb in 使某人信以为真，让某人上当 disguise n.伪装 v.假装，伪装，掩饰

3.C 4...C and 前后连接时态要呼应，表示并列关系。

5...B how 修饰限定形容词 At that moment, she hadn't put on the costume.

6...B anxious 形容词短语做原因状语

动词不定式的否定形式是在动词不定式符号之前直接加否定词 not, never

7...B 强调过去的一个动作

8...C see sb do sth 看见某人做某事（做宾语补足语时，不定式符号 to 被省略）

9...A at the very moment 就在此刻 as long as / so long as 用来引导条件句，表示只要

-- You can go out as long as you promise to be back before 11 o'clock.

Only when... 只有当…（引导时间状语从句）

10...D

miss+动名词：表示错过做什么事情

-- I don't want to miss seeing that film on television tonight.

forgot to do sth 表示忘记去做某事

-- Yesterday, I forgot to lock the door.

succeed in doing sth 表示成功做了某事 if…happen to... 表示某事偶然发生

brown n.褐色 adj.褐色的，棕色的 loaf n.一条面包 brown loaf 黑面包

-- If you happen to pass the baker's, pick me up a brown loaf, would you?

-- If you happen to finish the work early give me a ring.

11...A

reading 表示仪表或者仪器上的指数、读数

-- What are the temperature readings for the week?

-- take a metre-reading 读电表上的数字

measurement 测量尺寸、大小调节稳定

-- What's your waist measurement? 你的腰围是多少？

Regulation n.调节（regulation of body heat 体温调节）

Heat n.热，热度

12...B

let out 发出（= give） shout vt.高呼，高喊（有喊叫的 对象）

-- shout to sb 对某人高声喊

-- shout at sb 对某人大喊大叫

-- Don't shout at the elders.

Lesson 14 A noble gangster 贵族歹徒

New words and expression 生词和短语

Gangster n.歹徒，强盗
-- a band of gangsters 一伙强盗
robber n.抢劫犯，抢劫者
bandit n.强盗，土匪
brigand n.强盗，土匪，盗贼，草寇（书面用语）
hooligan n.流氓，不良分子
hoodlum n.罪犯，恶汉（口语）
rascal n.淘气，捣蛋鬼（口语）

hand n.帮，团伙
-- a band of robbers 一伙强盗
mob n. 一群（表示贬义色彩的团伙、帮派）
-- a mob of hooligans 一伙流氓
gang n.一伙 （-- a gang of thieves）
nest n.窝 （-- a nest of bandits）
pack n.团伙、帮派（-- a pack of hoodlums）

Chicago n.芝加哥(美国城市)

Protection n.保护 （-- protection money 保护费）
protect vt.保护（protect…from…）
-- We must protect our eyes from the sunshine.
Protector（n.保护者） Protective（adj.保护的）
Protege n.被保护者

Promptly adv.准时地
-- I give him a ring and he call me back promptly.
-- He was so sleepy that he went to sleep promptly.
on time 准时 / in time 及时
punctual（adj.严守时刻的，准时的） punctually adv.守时地

destroy v.毁掉;消灭
destroy n.强调毁灭，消灭，完全的摧毁
-- The earthquake destroyed the city. / You destroyed his dream.
Damage n.v.强调受损程度不很严重，可以被修复
-- The big clock was damaged.
Break v.n.强调弄坏，弄断
-- Two of the strings were broken.
spoil v.强调把事情搅和了
-- spoil the party / spoil the holiday

remarkable adj.不寻常的（同意词：unusual, uncommon, extraordinary）
-- a remarkable event , an extraordinary event 不同寻常的事件
outstanding（adj.突出的，杰出的，卓越的）
-- Our headmaster is an outstanding youth.（n.年轻人，青少年）
Distinguished（adj. 杰出的，卓越的，不同非凡的）
Eminent（adj. 显赫的，杰出的，有名的，优良的）
Distinguished 和 eminent 是同义词（都是用来修饰严肃领域的人）
-- a distinguished physicist（n.物理学家）, an eminent surgeon（n.外科医生）
-- an eminent judge（n.法官）, a distinguished lawyer（n.律师）
well-known adj.众所周知的（ 强调众所周知的）
-- She is well-known in the musical world. / This is well-known fact.
famous adj.著名的（因卓越的贡献和成绩而流芳百世的）
-- He is a famous movie star. / Luxun is famous for his articles.
Notorious adj. 臭明昭著的，臭名远扬的（= be famous for bad things）
-- Hitler is notorious.（Hitler n.希特勒）
infamous adj.身名狼藉的（= Notorious）
renowned adj.某人或某事以其独特的品质、个性而闻名
-- Hangzhou is renowned for its beautiful scenery.（n.风景，景色）

Florence n.佛罗伦萨(意大利城市)
city-state n.(古代)城邦

hire v.租出，雇给
hire out 出租
-- Does this firm hire out cars?
Rent v.租，租借，出租 n.租金
rent out 租给，雇给（主要强调出租房屋）
-- He rent out his house to a tourist.
Let 出租（let his house 出租房屋）
-- Please let your house to me. 请把房屋租给我吧？
hire from, rent from 租进来
-- He hired a car from us. / I rent a room from Mrs. Johnson.
hire 指短期雇佣体力劳动者
-- He hired two helpers
employ 指长期雇佣或聘用脑力劳动者
-- We employed her as our advisor.（n.顾问）
-- The factory employed 500 workers.

Prince n.君主，诸侯 n.王子
Florentine n.佛罗伦萨人
Funeral n.葬礼

Dedicate v.奉献，题献给（dedicate to）
dedicate sth to sb

-- He dedicated his first book to his mother
dedicate 献身，奉献（比 devote 更为正式而庄重）
dedicate…to sth
-- I devote my time to helping my students.
-- He dedicates his life to his motherland.
-- He dedicated his life to science.

Memory n.纪念
Memory n.记忆，记忆力，存储器，内存
-- You have a good memory.
-- If my memory serves me well, you're Tom. 如果我没有记错的话。
in memory of… = to the memory of… 为了纪念…
-- in memory of him = to the memory of him 为了纪念他
in sb's honor = in honor of sb 为纪念某人，为庆祝某人
-- we held a party in his honor. = we held a party in honor of him.

Valiant adj.英勇的（强调非常勇敢）
-- During war, soldiers are valiant.
Brave adj.勇敢的
-- The boy is brave.
Fearless adj.大无畏的，无所畏惧的
-- We are fearless in time of danger.
courageous adj.有胆量的，有勇气的

noble adj.高尚的，贵族的，高贵的 n.贵族
obtain vt.获得，得到
crime n.犯罪，犯罪行为，罪行
settle vt.安放，使定居 vi.安家，定居
demand v.要求，需要 n.要求，需求(量)，需要
march vi.进军，前进
Italian n.意大利人，意大利语 adj.意大利的，意大利语的，意大利文化的
Offer vt., vi.提供，提出
Notable adj. 著名的，显著的,值得注意的
Signor n.阁下，君

Text 课文

How did Haywood make in times of peace?
There was a tine when the owners of shops and businesses in Chicago that to pay large sums of money to gangsters in return for 'protection.'
pay large sums of money to sb 向某人付大笔大笔的费用
in return for… 目的是为了换取…，作为对…的回报
-- He gave me some books in return for my help.
when 引导状语从句修饰 time

-- There was a time when mini skirt was in fashion.（Mini n.迷你型，袖珍型）

If the money was not paid promptly, the gangsters would quickly put a man out of business by destroying his shop.

Promptly = immediately

put a man out of business 使某人失业

put sb/sth out of... 使某人失去…

-- You are putting me out of patience. 你使我失去耐心了。

-- You have already put everything out of order.

-- Put it out of your mind. 忘记这件事情吧。

by destroying his shop 通过…手段

-- You are putting me out of patience by disturbing me.

Obtaining 'protection money' is not a modern crime.

Obtaining = getting

As long ago as the fourteenth century, an Englishman, Sir John Hawkwood, made the remarkable discovery that people would rather pay large sums of money than have their life work destroyed by gangsters.

as long ago as 追溯回到（= dating back to = date from）

-- I knew Jane as long ago as the year 1980.

make the remarkable discovery 做出不同寻常的发现

would rather do... than do... 宁愿…而不…

-- He would rather die than surrender.（vi.投降，自首）

-- I would rather play tennis than swim.

would prefer to do ... than do...

would prefer doing ... to doing...

-- He would prefer to die than surrender.

-- He would prefer dying to surrendering.

would rather(sooner) + that 宾语从句（过去式）-- 虚拟语气

-- I would rather that you were not here. 我宁愿你不在这。（暗含：实际你在这）

-- I would rather that I didn't see you.

-- He would rather that he didn't hear the news.

life work 毕生的事业 / have sth done

Six hundred years ago, Sir Johan Hawkwood arrived in Italy with a band of soldiers and settled near Florence.

settled near Florence 定居在 Florence 附近

He soon made a name for himself and came to be known to the Italians as Giovanni Acuto.

made a name for himself = become famous

-- They soon made quite a name for themselves as pop singers.

come to = get to 渐渐的

come to be known 渐渐被人所熟知

-- I come to be known to my students.
-- I got to know him.

Whenever the Italian city-states were at war with each other, Hawkwood used to hire his soldiers to princes who were willing to pay the high price he demanded.
Whenever 无论什么时候
at war 交战 / at war with… 于…交战
hire 表示出租
who 指代 prince
he demanded = Hawkwood demanded

In times of peace, when business was bad, Hawkwood and his men would march into a city-state and, after burning down a few farms, would offer to go away if protection money was paid to them.
in time of peace 在和平期间
march into 大踏步行军
burn down 烧毁 / burn up 烧光 / burn out 烧空
-- The house was burned out only walls left. 房子被了只剩下墙壁。
would offer to go away = would promise to go away

Hawkwood made large sums of money in this way. In spite of this, the Italians regarded him as a sort of hero.
in spite of this 尽管如此
People in different countries have different opinions.
The Italians regarded him as a sort of hero.

When he died at the age of eighty, the Florentines gave him a state funeral and had a pictured which was dedicated to the memory of 'the most valiant soldier and most notable leader, Signor Giovanni Haukodue.'
give sb a state funeral 给某人举行国葬
have sth done
Signor n.先生（意大利语）
which 指代 picture
be dedicated to the memory of sb
the most valiant 比较级的最高级形式

Special difficulties 难点

would rather / would sooner
would rather do… than do…
would rather that… (that 宾语从句中要出现动词的过去时)
1...go
2...left（rather 省略了 that）
3...did not speak

4...not speak（would rather do…的否定形式结构：would rather not do… 宁愿不做...）
5...settled
6...didn't tell

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1... B
premise n.房产，房屋(及其附属建筑，地基等)
unharmed adj.未受伤害的，太太平平的
destruction n.破坏，毁灭
criminal n.罪犯，犯罪者 adj.犯罪的，犯法的，罪恶的

2... B 他获取自己的名字是依据自己的所作所为
practice n.实行，实践
sharp adj.苛刻的
recognition n.承认，认可

3... A in that = because "因为",表示一种原因
boldness n.大胆，冒失，勇敢
bravery n.勇敢，大胆，无畏
can not help 不得不，情不自禁

4... A 段时间：for a long time（现在完成式）

5... C prefer doing… to doing…

6... B hire sth from sb 从某人租得某物

7... A if not (如果不) = unless
Provided… 条件是...

8... C 介词 on 和名词 death 相搭配（表示：去世的状态）
介词 on 和动名词搭配（表示：一...就...）
-- On seeing him, I ran away.

9... B passed（动词的过去分词）
depart vi.离去，离开，出发
-- When does the next train depart? 下一次列车什么时候开？

10... D
prepared adj.心甘情愿的，准备好的（= willing）
-- be willing to do = be prepared to do
agreeable adj.使人愉快的，惬意的，适合的，宜人的
desirable adj.值得要的，合意的，令人想要的（= attractive adj.吸引人的）

Lesson 15 Fifty pence worth of trouble 五十便士的麻烦

New words and expression 生词和短语

Appreciate v.欣赏，感激
-- The poem is too difficult for me to appreciate.
-- I appreciate your help. = be thankful/grateful to sb.
-- thankful = grateful（adj.感激的，感谢的）

pocket money 零用钱
-- beer money 留给丈夫的零花钱
-- mad money 女子留作应急之用的私房钱
-- green money 美金（美圆是绿色的）
-- soft/folding money 纸币，钞票（folding adj.可折叠的）
-- hard money 硬币（hard adj.硬的，坚固的）

thrifty adj.节约的
economical adj.节约的，经济的
frugal adj.节俭的，朴素的

nephew n.侄子，外甥

bounce v.弹起，跳起
-- The coin was bounced.
同义词：jump(v.跳跃), leap(v.跃), hop(单足跳),
spring(v.弹跳 n.弹簧), skip(v.跳跃，略过)

pavement n.人行道

stick (stuck, stuck) v.卡住，夹住，不能再动
-- His arm was stuck. 他的胳膊被卡住了。
Stick v.坚持，粘贴
-- You must stick to your idea. 你必需要坚持你的看法。
-- Stick the stamp on the envelop.
stick with… 忠实于...（= be faithful to 对...忠实）-- faithful adj.守信的，忠实的

Brigade n.旅,（消防）队
fire brigade（消防队）= fire department = fire station

grease n.润滑油

uncle n.伯父，叔父，姨丈
aunt n.姑妈，伯母，舅妈，阿姨
extra adj.额外的
price n.代价，价格，价钱
drain n.排水沟
roll vt,vi 卷；滚动,转动,打滚
sleeve n.袖子，衣袖
rub v.擦，摩擦
free vt. 使自由，释放
upset adj.心烦意乱的,不适的,不舒服的 vt,vi 打翻,弄翻,推翻；使烦乱
reward vt.酬谢,酬劳,报答 n.报酬，奖金

Text 课文

Did George get anything for his fifty pence? What?

Children always appreciate small gifts of money.

= Children always appreciate pocket money as small gifts.孩子们总是喜欢得到些零花钱

-- Husbands always appreciate small gifts of beer money.

Mum or dad, of course, provide a regular supply of pocket money, but uncles and aunts are always a source of extra income.

provide a regular supply of... 定期地提供…

provide sth for sb / provide sb with sth 为某人提供某物

-- The villagers provided a regular supply of food for the soldiers.

= The villagers provided the soldiers with a regular supply of food

small gifts of money, pocket money, extra income 都表示零花钱。

作者在两段话里三处用了零花钱，是为了让读者能够抓住主题。

写作时要避免使用相同的词汇。

With some children, small sums go a long way.

此句暗含：with other children, small sums can't go a long way.

go a long way 维持很久

-- The money we have will go a long way.

go a long way towards 对...大有帮助

-- This will go a long way towards overcoming the difficulty.（overcome vt.战胜，克服）

介词 with 和 for 的区别：

For(介词)：关于，对于...来说，考虑到...的事实

-- The weather is quite warm for November.

-- For him, this will be an entirely new hobby.

With(介词)：在某一方面 (多用于二者的比较)

-- With some people, pleasure is more important than work.

-- Some people may accept that excuse, but it won't work with me.

If fifty pence pieces are not exchanged for sweets, they rattle for months inside money boxes.

Pence 便士（penny, pennies 都是 pence 的复数：）
a fifty pence 一个五十便士的硬币
fifty pennies 五十一便士的硬币
exchange for 换取，以...来交换
-- The little boy exchanged his pen for candy.（candy n.糖果，冰糖）
rattle vt.(拟声词) 叮当作响 = tinkle（vi, vt (使)发玎玲声, (使)发出玎当声）
roar 呼啸（重点突出老虎、狮子等大动物的吼叫声）
-- The car roar by me. / Listen, a lion is roaring.
shout at 大喊大叫 = bark at
grunt vi.(猪等)作呼噜声 vt.咕哝着说出
-- He is grunting.（adj.咕咙的，哼哼唧唧的）
slam v.砰地关上，砰地放下

Only very thrifty children manage to fill up a money box.
fill up 装满
1>up：表示方向
up to（表示到达目的地） -- She ran up to him. 她跑到他面前。
Towards（表示朝某个方向） -- She ran towards him. 她向他跑去。
2> 表示沿着，走向更远的地方（侧重强调距离更远了）
-- They walked up the street. 他们沿着街道走远了。
-- They children run up the garden path to greet their father.
3> 系动词+up（表示消费、摧毁、彻底、光、用完）
-- Drink up your whisky. / Eat up your vegetable.
-- Finish it up. 完成它 / burn up 烧光 / use up 用光
4> 表示积存，从少到多，积小成多
-- We must lay up some boiled food for the winter.
Lay up 贮存 = store up 储藏, hold up, gather up 收集起
5> 表示从河的下游到上游，河流入口处以上到源头的某一点
-- They are sailing up the Thames. 他们正沿着泰晤士河而上。
-- The house is up the river. 这个房子在河的上游。
6> 动词+up（表示包起来、封住、盖住）
-- button up 扣上纽扣（-- button your coat up 把外衣的纽扣扣上）
-- wrap up 包裹起来（wrap up the shoes with newspaper 用报纸把鞋子包起来）
-- lock up 锁起来（lock the house up 用锁把房子锁起来）
-- fasten up 拴紧，钉牢，锁牢 / save up 储蓄，贮存
-- wash up 洗涤餐具，洗手洗脸，把…冲上岸 / do up 重新整修，包好

For most of them, fifty pence is a small price to pay for a nice big bar of chocolate.
fifty pence is small price to pay = fifty pence is not much to pay
a small price = not much money 并不是很多
-- For him two thousand dollars is small price to pay for it.
-- For me five hundred Yuan is not a small price to pay for a bicycle.

My nephew, George, has a money box but it is always empty.

Very few of the fifty pence pieces and pound coins I have given him have found their way there.

pound coin　n.1 英镑硬币

find their way there = reach　抵达，到达，找到自己的去处

find one's way into/to…

-- Rivers find their way to the sea.

-- How did such a foolish statement find its way into print? 这样愚蠢的话怎么会被印出来了？

-- All my books have already found their way there.

I gave him fifty pence yesterday and advised him to save it.

advise sb to do sth 说服某人做某事（结果是失败的）

persuade sb to do sth 说服某人做某事（结果是成功的）

Instead he bought himself fifty pence worth of trouble.

instead（adv.代替）相反的是…

fifty pence worth of trouble 五十便士的麻烦

On his way to the sweet shop, he dropped his fifty pence and it bounced along the pavement and then disappeared down a drain.

George took off his jacket, rolled up his sleeves and pushed is right arm through the drain cover.

系列的动词构成平行结构：take off, rolled up, push

roll　vi.滚动 vt.滚动

-- The pencil rolled(vi.) under the table.

-- He rolled(vt.) the ball towards the puppy.（puppy n.(常指未满一岁的)小狗，小动物）

roll up 卷起，挽起

-- We will need to roll up the carpet.

He could not find his fifty pence piece anywhere, and what is more, he could no get his arm out.

what 引导的插入语

What is more important. 更重要的是 /　What is worse. 更糟糕的是

What is more. 更有甚者 /　What is rare. 更罕见的是

-- He went to the meeting, and what is worse, insisted on speaking.

-- He is an interesting speaker, and what is more important, he knows his subject thoroughly.
　他是一个有风趣的演说者，更重要的是他对他的话题了如指掌

A crowd of people gathered round him and a lady rubbed his arm with soap and butter, but George was firmly stuck.

gather round…　聚在…周围

rubbed his arm with…　用...涂抹在胳膊上

firmly　adv.稳固的，坚定的（加强语气）

The fire brigade was called and two fire fighter freed George using a special type of grease.

Using… 现在分词做状语（强调一种方式）

fire fighter n.救火队员

George was not too upset by his experience because the lady who owns the sweet shop heard about his troubles and rewarded him with large box of chocolates.

Rewarded sb with… 用...来奖赏某人

Special difficulties 难点

1.save / 2.sail（steamboat n.汽船，轮船）

3.buttoned / 4.Eat / 5.went / 6.wrapped

7.wind （v.上发条，绕，缠）

8.do （shoelace n.鞋带）

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1.C 2.D 3.A have sth done / get sth out of

4.B plenty 仅用于肯定句中, much 用于肯定句、否定句、疑问句。

5.B advise sb to do sth advise sb that...

-- that 引导的宾语从句必须要出现 should+动词原形（虚拟语气）

-- I advise my students that they should read English for more than an hour.

6.D doing sth…when

如果句中的 when 表达的概念是：就在这时、恰恰这时、正当此时，那么其的主句结构往往采用进行时态

7.A neither/nor：也不（用于句首句子必须倒装）

8.C put sth.+ prep.（-- put the book in the bookcase / put the book on the desk）

9.A durable（adj.耐用的，持久的）

-- durable clothing 耐穿的衣服 / durable goods 耐用品

10.C

tour n.旅行，旅游 v.旅行

in turn 轮流地 （-- I think we should clean our classroom in return.）

cycle n.周期，循环，自行车

circle n.圆圈，环状物

-- draw a circle 画一个圆圈 / the cycle of the seasons 四季的循环

11.B strictly adv.严格地，确实地 well and truly = completely

-- Tom was well and truly drunk. 汤姆烂醉如泥。

-- drunk adj.喝醉了的（drink 的过去分词）

by no means (无论如何)决不

= in no way（adv.决不）= on no account（adv.决不）= in no sense（adv.决不）

12.B move vt.移动，感动 embarrass vt.使窘迫；使为难

-- They look at each other embarrassed.

Distress v.使悲痛，使穷困，使忧伤

-- Please don't distress yourself.

-- He was most distressed to hear the sad news.

Lesson 16 Mary had a little lamb 玛丽有一头羔羊

New words and expression 生词和短语

Prize adj.珍贵的，宝贵的
-- Mary has got a prize lamb. / The cat is prize to the old lady.
= Valuable（adj.有价值的，贵重的）
= Precious（adj.珍贵的，宝贵的）
= Cherishable adj.珍贵的（cherish vt.抚育，爱护，珍爱）
= Dear（adj.昂贵的，亲爱的）

Tie v.拴，系
tie sth to…
-- I tied the dog to a tree.（拴在某处）
-- He is tied to his family.（于…有联系）
Tie n.领带，关系（强调血缘关系）
-- ties of blood 血缘关系 / the ties of friendship 朋友关系

theft n.偷盗行为，偷盗案
-- He reports the theft to the police.

Accuse v.指控
accuse sb of doing sth
-- He accused his neighbor of stealing his bicycle.
accuse 比 charge 语义弱：accuse 强调 " 严厉的指责 "，charge 强调 " 控告 "
charge sb with doing sth

deny v.否认
deny doing sth
-- He denied stealing the lamb. / He denied the truth.
deny sb nothing 百依百顺（deny v.拒绝）
-- He denies his wife nothing. 他对他的妻子有求必应。
deny oneself 克制自己
-- On some occasions we must deny ourselves. 在某些场合我们必须克制自己

Ashamed adj.感到羞耻，惭愧
be ashamed of… 为...感到羞耻
-- He is ashamed of being a dustman.
Shameful adj.可耻的（-- The theft is shameful.）
Shameless adj.无耻的（-- The thief is a shameless person.）

Apologize v.道歉 （apology n.道歉）
apologize to sb (for sth) (因为某事)向某人道歉

dye v.染（-- Dye the cloth black 把这布染成黑色。）

Southern adj.南方的，南部的
Greece n.希腊（腊欧洲东南部国家）
Rope n.绳，索，绳索
Steal（stole, stolen, stealing）
Acquire vt.获得，学到
Backyard n.后院，后庭
Rashly adv.轻率地（rash adj.轻率的，匆忙的）
Wool n.羊毛，毛织品，毛线
Neighbour n.邻居(美作：neighbor)
Neighbourhood n.邻居关系(美作：neighborhood)

Text 课文

Was Dimitri right to apologize to his neighbour? Why not?

Mary and her husband Dimitri lived in the tiny village of Perachora in southern Greece.

in the tiny village of...
-- in the big city of Beijing. / in the beautiful city of Paris.
in southern Greece = in the south of Greece

One of Mary's prize possessions was a little white lamb which her husband had given her.

Possession n.所有物
-- What I possess is valuable.= My possessions are valuable.
Belonging n.随身携带物，附属品，附件

She kept it tied to a tree in a field during the day and went to fetch it every evening.

Keep+宾语+宾补 使…处于某种状态
keep 后的宾语补足语可以是形容词、介词短语、分词。
--keep 和过去分词搭配，过去分词和宾语之间是逻辑上的动宾关系。
--keep 和现在分词搭配，宾语和现在分词之间是逻辑上的主谓关系。
-- I keep my windows closed in winter. / I keep the dog locked in the kitchen.
-- I kept the boy standing outside.

One evening, however, the lamb was missing. The rope had been cut, so it was obvious that the lamb had been stolen.

It is obvious that... 显而易见…

When Dimitri came in from the fields, his wife told him what had happened. Dimitri at once set out to find the thief.

set out to do sth 开始着手做某事 （set about doing…）

He knew it would not prove difficult in such a small village.

After telling several of his friends about the theft, Dimitri found out that his neighbour, Aleko, had suddenly acquired a new lamb.

tell sb about sth 告诉某人关于某事

-- He told the police about the theft.

Dimitri immediately went to Aleko's house and angrily accused him of stealing the lamb.

He told him he had better return it or he would call the police.

He can't be ill or he wouldn't have come. 他不可能生病了要不他就不会来了。

or else… 否则…

-- Your room is so dirty. Clear it promptly, or else....。

Aleko denied taking it and led Dimitri into his backyard.

Lead vt.vi.（led, led, leading）引导；指引

-- He led us to his home. 他把我们带到他家。

It was true that he had just bought a lamb, he explained, but his lamb was black.

It is true that…but... 诚然…但是…

-- It is true that the work is hard, but we'll finish it ahead.（adj.adv.提前,向前,在前面）

Ashamed of having acted so rashly, Dimitri apologized to Aleko for having accused him.

Ashamed 前省略了 be 动词。

Ashamed of…是现在分词结构(形容词结构)做原因状语（放主句前后均可）

-- Angry at everybody here, he left suddenly.

-- Anxious for a quick decision, he called his friends.

-- Nervous, the man opened the letter.

While they were talking it began to rain and Dimitri stayed in Aleko's house until the rain stopped. When he went outside half an hour later, he was astonished to find the little blacklamb was almost white. Its wool, which had been dyed black, had been washed clean by the rain!

Special difficulties 难点

had better do / had better not do

1.We had better have lunch. （Advisable adj.适当的；明智的；可取的）

2.She had better renew her passport （Renew vt.更换，更新）

3.You'd better not ask so many questions.

4.We'd better not stay any longer.

5.The children had better get an early night. （Consult v.商量，商议，请教）

6.I had better consult my solicitor.（Solicitor n.律师，法律顾问）

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1. C untie vt.解开 vi.松开，解开

2. B community （n.社区，公社，团体，社会）= village

3. B truthful（adj.诚实的，说实话的） admit（v.容许，承认）

4. D

5. D 正确
present（adj.现在的，出席的） 反义词：absent（adj.不在的，缺席的）
present （vt.赠送，给）
-- When Mr. Brown left firm, the director presented a gold watch to him.
-- The gold watch was present from the director.
a present from somebody 某人所送的礼物

6. C

7. D so small a size

8. B

9. A
valued adj.尊贵的，尊重的，宝贵的
-- valued advice 宝贵的忠告 / valued friend 尊贵的朋友
worthwhile adj.值得做的（-- working hard is worthwhile 努力学习是值得做的）
worthy adj.值得的，配得上的（be worthy of）
-- The chain is worthy of the watch.（chain n.链子）
-- His deeds are worthy of our praise. 他的确行为陪得上我们的表扬

10. B
tell somebody about something
report something to somebody

11 C 正确 chat v.聊天 n.聊天
argument n.争论，辩论

12 A 正确
out of doors = outdoors = outside（n.adj.adv.prep.）
-- outdoors n.户外 adv.在户外，在野外
adj.在户外 = outdoor（adj.室外的，户外的）
-- outdoors 的反义词：indoors（adv.在户内）
in the open air 在户外，露天
inside out 里外反穿
-- He put his socks on inside out. 他把袜子穿反了。

Lesson 17 The longest suspension bridge in the world 世界上最长的吊桥

New words and expression 生词和短语

Suspension n.悬，吊
suspension bridge 吊桥
suspend vt.吊，悬挂
-- The light is suspended from the ceiling.
suspend vt.暂停，暂缓
-- The train was suspended because of the heavy rain.
Suspense n.担心、挂念、悬念（in suspense）
-- The wonderful film gave me a good expression because of its suspense. (悬念)
-- He didn't tell me the truth. It kept me in suspense all day.
suspender n.吊袜带,（裤子或裙子的）背带

agreeable adj.宜人的（-- Today is agreeable.）
agreeable situation 宜人的地方
-- His house is in a agreeable situation.

situation n.地点，地方（= location = position）
situate vt.使位于，使处于

locate v.位于
-- Beijing is located in the North of China.
-- Japan is located to the east of China.

immortal adj.永生的，流芳百世的
Brooklyn n.布鲁克林（纽约一区名）
Staten n.斯塔顿（岛）
Span n.跨度
Cable n.缆索
Concrete n.混凝土
Suspend v.悬挂
Length n.根，段

Estimate v.估计
-- Underestimate 低估 / Overestimate 高估
-- At a rough estimate, the car is worth 500 thousand RMB. 粗略的估计以下…
Estimation n.判断（= judgement = judgment n.审判，判决）
-- in my estimation = in my view = in my opinion 在我看来

capacity n.承受量（容量，生产量，接受力）
-- Are you clear about the capacity of the cinema?

Capacity n.做某事的能力
have a capacity for doing something / have a capacity to do ability
-- we have a capacity to study English well.
Ability n.能力，才干（已经做到了）
-- We have ability to finish the work in two days. = we manage to finish…
Capability n.潜在的能力
have capability to do / have capability of doing
-- Every child has capability to study a foreign language.
Faculty n.先天的智能或能力
Competence n.胜任工作的能力、资格
-- I have competence for this job.

immensity n.巨大

elegant adj.优美别致的
Elegant 还表示人的举止很得体、大方
-- The lady is elegant. / elegant behavior
Graceful adj.优美的（强调一个人的体型优美）
Delicate adj.精巧的，精致的

faintly adv.微细地

within prep.在...之内，不越出 n.内部，里头
adj.里面的，内部的 adv.在内部，在内心里
midst n.中间 prep.在...中间
flow vi.流动 n.流动
shape n.外形，形状，形态
account n.计算，说明，帐目
designer n. 设计家，制图师，阴谋家
tower n.塔，城堡
underwater adj.在水下的,在水中的 adv.在水下 n.(海洋等)水面下的水
platform n.平台, (车站)月台,讲台，讲坛
depth n.深，深度
surface n.表面，外表，水面 adj.面的，肤浅的
wire n.金属丝，电线
pack vt.塞满，挤进，挤满
strength n.强度，力量
fulfill vt.履行，实现，完成(计划等)
fulfil vt.完成，达到
draw vt.vi.（drew, drawn, drawing）拉，曳，牵，画，绘制
create vt.创造，创作，引起，造成

Text 课文

How is the bridge supported?

Verrazano, an Italian about whom little is known, sailed into New York Harbour in 1524 and named it Angouleme.

sailed into... 是句子的主干

about whom（whom 指代 Italian）

He described it as 'a very agreeable situation located within two small hills in the midst of which flowed a great river.'

describe something as… 把某物描述成…

-- I should describe the attempt as a failure. 我把这次尝试描述成失败。

后面可以加 as 的动词：see, view, look upon, recognize, regard, treat, accept

-- His mother regards him as genius. （genius n.天才，天赋）

-- I accepted his words as truth. 我对他的话信以为真。

Located 过去分词做定语修饰 situation

-- I like the village located within two small hills.

= I like the village which is located within two small hills.

in the midst of which...

-- A great river flowed in the middle of the two hills.

In the midst of = in the middle of

In the middle of 不仅可以表示方位上的中间，还可以表示时间上的中间。

-- in the middle of the river / in the middle of the night / in the middle of the winter

介词短语在 which 前, which 引导的从句要倒装。

-- We arrived at a farmhouse in front of which was a mountain.

Though Verrazano is by no means considered to be a great explorer, his name will probably remain immortal, for on November 21st, 1964, the longest suspension bridge in the world was named after him.

Though / although / even though 引导让步状语从句

用了 though, although 不能使用 but

但可以用 yet 来强调转折关系

-- Though they manage to take photographs, yet they got into trouble soon.

by no means（= not by any means = not at all）

-- It is by no means pleasant to take a crowded bus.

乘坐一辆拥挤的公共汽车绝对不是一件让人高兴的事。

-- He isn't satisfied with a job at all. = He isn't satisfied with a job by any means.

in no way, in no case, in no sense, in no circumstances（circumstance n.环境,详情,境况）

on no account, at no time 都表示’决不’

be named after…, be named for…, take one's name from… 都表示用…来命名

The Verrazano Bridge, which was designed by Othmar Ammann, joins Brooklyn to Staten Island. It has a span of 4,260 feet.

a span of　跨度、桥长

The bridge is so long that the shape of the earth had to be taken into account by its designer.
take into account = take into consideration = take account of　考虑到
-- We have to take the date into account when we have the meeting.

Two great towers support four huge cables.
Support = hold up 举起，支撑

The towers are built on immense underwater platforms made of steel and concrete.
The platforms extend to a depth of over 100 feet under the sea.
Extend（延伸，伸展）= reach, stretch
-- a railway extends to the next city.

These alone took sixteen months to build.
= It took the workers sixteen months to build the platforms.

Above the surface of the water, the towers rise to a height of nearly 700 feet.
extend to a depth of…　伸展的深度
extend to a length of…　伸展的长度
extend to a width of…　伸展的宽度　（width　n.宽度，宽广　）
rise to a height of…　伸展的高度

They support the cables from which the bridge has been suspended.
which 指代先行词 cables

Each of the four cables contains 26,108 lengths of wire.

It has been estimated that if the bridge were packed with cars, it would still only be carrying a third of its total capacity.
It has been estimated that...（It is said that…　It is reported that…）
It has been estimated, It has been expected
were 虚拟语气（桥上不可能摆满汽车）
carry　v.承载
a third of…　…的 1/3

However, size and strength are not the only important things about this bridge.
Despite its immensity, it is both simple and elegant, fulfilling its designer's dream to create 'an enormous object drawn as faintly as possible'.
Immensity 指代 size
Despite = in spite of
Fulfill　vt.履行，实现，完成(计划等)
Fulfilling 分词做状语表示结果
-- The bus was held up by the snowstorm, causing the delay.（hold up 阻挡，拦截）

-- Her husband died in 1970, leaving her with her children.
-- At last he passed his examination, fulfilling his dream to go abroad.

Special difficulties 难点

I find him to be quite unsuitable for the job.（unsuitable adj.不适合的，不相称的）
= I find that he is quite unsuitable for the job.
类似这种用法的词有：（presume vt.假定，假设，认为）
believe, consider, declare, feel, know, suppose, think, presume, estimate, understand
-- I consider that he is the best candidate.（candidate n.候选人，投考者）
-- I consider him to be the best candidate.
-- We estimated that this picture is worth at least 500 pounds.
-- We estimated this picture to be worth at least 500 pounds.
Property n.财产，所有物
Treaty n.条约，谈判
Invalid adj.无效的 n.病人，残废者 adj.有病的，残废的
Integrity n.正直，诚实

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1. D considerable adj.值得考虑的，相当可观的
the longest suspension bridge was named after Verrazano.

2. A stretch n.一段路程，一段时间
a wide stretch of water 连续不断的水域

3. A
The bridge is so long that the shape of the earth had to be taken into account by its designer.
account for 考虑，说明，解决
take account of / take into account 考虑
curvature n.弯曲度
vehicle n.交通工具，车辆

4. A describe sth As
situated 动词过去分词接受 agreeably 的限定

5. A 陈述客观事实

6. B
thus adv.因而，从而，这样，如此
-- He sold his farm and thus he had enough money for his journey.
他卖掉了农场，这样他就有足够的钱旅行了。
-- There has been no rain — thus, the crops are drying.
天没下雨，因此庄稼要枯死了。

7. D
immense 描述性形容词用于物质名词的前面
sink vi.vt.（sank, sunk, sinking）下沉，使沉没
ferro-concrete n.[建]钢筋混凝土，钢骨水泥

8. D load n.负荷，装载量，负载
the load = the total capacity
can 不能与 be able to 搭配连用
can+动词原形（表示一般的能力）

9. A either 表示两者中的每一方的
-- He sat in the car with a policeman on either side of him.
-- on either side of the street
either adj.修饰名词的单数形式
both adj.修饰名词的复数形式
every adj.用于三者或三者以上（意思上等于 all）
-- in every direction = in all directions
side by side 肩并肩的，并排
-- The two bottles stood side by side on the table.
-- walk side by side 肩并肩的走

10. C link…with / join… to attach… to 把…牢牢的系上 （attach v.系上，贴上）
-- She attached a check to the order form. 她在定单上附了一张支票。
Relate…to/with 表示在…之间建立联系
-- I can't relate what you say happened with what I saw.
我不能把你所说的发生的事件和我所看到的联系起来。
Unify vt.统一，使成一体

11. C suspension bridge 吊桥 suspended adj.暂停的，缓期的，延期的
-- The judge gave him a suspended sentence. 法官判了他缓刑。
-- judge n.法官，审判员
Suspense n.担心，不安，悬念
-- The competitors in the beauty contest were kept in suspense waiting for the result.
-- competitor（n.竞争者） contest（n.论争，竞赛）
Suspender n.吊索，吊袜带

12. D
take vt.容纳，装载
-- The tank will take about twelve gallons.（n.加仑）
Sustain vt.支撑，承受住
-- I don't think this floor will sustain the weight of the grand piano.
Endure vt.经受，承受(痛苦、苦难)
Receive vt.收到

Lesson 18 Electric currents in modern art 现代艺术的电流

New words and expression 生词和短语

Current n.电流（趋势，电流，水流，气流）
-- the flow of electricity 电流
-- a continuous movement of water 水流
current adj.目前的，现在的（-- current affairs 时事）
currently adv.普遍地，通常地，现在，当前
currency n.流通，货币

sculpture n.雕塑
sculptural adj. 雕塑的，雕刻般的
sculptor n.雕刻家
sculpt v.雕刻，造型

mistaken adj.错误的（= incorrect, wrong, misunderstood）
-- The teacher has mistaken opinion of his pupil.
Her doesn't use simple plain language and he is often mistaken.
Mistake n.错误，过失
-- make a mistake 犯错
-- by mistake 弄错了
-- He took my umbrella by mistake. 他错拿了我的伞。
-- and no mistake 确实如此
-- He is honest and no mistake. 他这个人确实很诚实。
Mistake vt.把...误认为，弄错，误解
-- mistake sb for 把某人误认为
-- Yesterday I mistook him for my classmate.

Gallery n.美术馆

Exhibit n.展品，陈列品（= something that show in public）
Exhibition n.展览会
-- We went to an exhibition to visit exhibits.

Oddly adv.古怪的（= strangely）
odd adj.古怪的（因为少见而奇怪）
strange adj.陌生的，奇怪的（因为陌生而奇怪）
queer adj.奇特的（因为不同于其它的而奇怪）
-- Look, he is wearing a queer hat.
Fantastic adj.奇妙的

Eccentric adj.怪癖的（-- He is an eccentric person.）

Attach v.连，系
attach vt.系、拴、粘上、贴上（-- attach…to…）
-- He attached the lamb to a tree.
Attach…to sb for sth 因为某事而把…加再某人身上
-- We didn't attach blame to him for his failure. 我们没有因为他的失败而责备他。
attach importance to sth 对某事非常重视
-- We attach importance to education.
be attached to sth 喜欢，喜爱
-- I'm very attached to her.
attachment n.附属物，固定物，爱慕，友情

sphere n.球体

magnetize v.使磁化，吸引
-- The iron was magnetized.
-- His speech magnetized the listeners.

Repel v.排斥，使厌恶（= to drive back, cause feelings of dislike）
-- The different sexes attract each other and the same sexes repel on the contrary.
同性向吸，异性相斥。
-- Let me go at once, you repel me. 让我走，你真让我恶心。

Flicker v.闪烁（= shine unsteadily） unsteadily（adv.不稳定地，摇摆地）
flash vi.闪光，闪现（= shine for a moment）

emit v.放射（= give off）
emit sound / emit smell / emit light / emit heat / emit smoke

flash v.闪光

prehistoric adj.史前的，老掉牙的（historic adj.历史上著名的，有历史性的）
electronic adj.电子的

peculiar adj.奇异的（= strange and unusual）
-- The food has peculiar taste. 这食物有一种奇特的味道。
-- I'm feeling rather peculiar. = I am felling ill.

Shock v.令人震惊，刺激人
-- get shocked 受震动
-- At the news, he got shocked.
Shock n.震惊（-- get a big shock）

emotionally adv.事情上
emotional adj.易激动的，情绪的，感情脆弱的（反义词：unemotional）
-- I think you agree with me, women are often said to be more emotional than men.
emotive adj.使感动的，感情的，动感情的
-- The word home is more emotive than house.
emotion n.（抽象的）感情
-- Love, hated, and grief are emotions.（grief n.悲痛，悲伤）
feeling n.某时的内心感受
-- I can't describe my feeling now.

electric adj.电的，用电的
dangerous adj.危险的
interest n.兴趣，利息 vt.使发生兴趣
display n.陈列，展览，显示，显示器 vt.陈列，展览，显示
form n.状，形态，外形
recent adj.新近的，近来的
shaped adj.有形状的；成某种形状的
response n.回答，响应，反应
familiar adj.熟悉的，常见的
line up v.整队，排列起
against prep.相反，反对，逆着，靠着，倚着
wire n.属丝，电线
metal n.金属
attract vt.吸引
structure n.结构，构造，构造物，建筑物
colour（vt.把...涂颜色，粉饰）→ coloured（adj.有彩色的，有色的）
spark n.火花，火星，闪光
lamp n.灯 vt.照亮
electric adj.电的，导电的，用电的 adj.惊人的，令人兴奋的

Text 课文

How might some of the exhibits have been dangerous?
Modern sculpture rarely surprises us any more.
Rarely = seldom
本句= We are not surprised at modern sculpture .

The idea that modern art can only be seen in museums is mistaken.
that 引导同位语从句，修饰限定 the idea 的内容。
-- The idea that one can learn English well in English-speaking countries is mistaken.

Even people who take no interest in art cannot have failed to notice examples of modern sculpture on display in public places.
重点句式结构：

who take no interest in art 修饰说明 people
take interest in 对…感兴趣 / show interest in 显示对…的兴趣
take delight in 对…感到高兴 / take pride in 对…感到骄傲
cannot, failed to 双重否定意味着肯定（强调肯定的语气）
-- He must have passed his examination last week.
= He cannot have failed to pass his examination last week.
-- You must keep your promise. = You can't fail to keep your promise.（n.许诺）
on display / on show 展览，展出

Strange forms stand in gardens, and outside buildings and shops.
We can see sculptures everywhere

We have got quite used to them. Some so-called 'modern' pieces have been on display for nearly eighty years.
get used to… = get accustomed to… 习惯于… （accustomed adj.通常的，习惯的）
用夸张的口吻表明事实

In spite of this, some people -- including myself -- were surprise by a recent exhibition of modern sculpture.
in spite of this 尽管如此（作者表明了自己的观点）

The first thing I saw when I entered the art gallery was a notice which said: 'Do not touch the exhibits.
重点句型：The first thing...was a notice which said...
I saw 是定语从句省略了 that

Some of them are dangerous!' The objects on display were pieces of moving sculpture.
The sculpture can move.

Oddly shaped forms that are suspended form the ceiling and move in response to a gust of wind are quite familiar to everybody.
句子主干：Oddly shaped forms are familiar to everybody
that 引导的定语从句用来限定 shaped forms
that 定语从句中：in response to = in reaction to 作为对…的反应
be familiar to sb 对某人来讲很熟悉
-- The house is familiar to him.
-- I don't really remember where I have seen him before, but he looks very familiar to me.
be familiar with sth 熟悉，熟知
-- Are you familiar with the play of Shakespeare?
-- I'm familiar with that book too.

These objects, however, were different. Lined up against the wall, there were long thin wires attached to metal spheres.
lined up（过去分词做状语）与 long thin wires 为被动关系

attached to metal spheres（过去分词做定语）修饰 long thin wires.

there were long thin wires attached to metal spheres.

= there were long thin wires that were attached to metal spheres.

The spheres had been magnetized and attracted or repelled each other all the time.

In the centre of the hall, there were a number of tall structures which contained coloured lights.

the center of the hall 展厅的中央

coloured lights 彩色灯泡

These lights flickered continuously like traffic lights which have gone mad.

continuously adv.不停止的

go mad 发疯，发狂（= run mad）

-- He must have gone mad to do such a thing.

Sparks were emitted from small black boxes and red lamps flashed on and off angrily.

on and off = continually = Intermittently adv.间歇的，断断续续的

on and on = continuously adv.无间断地，连续不断地

-- It has been raining on and off since noon.

It was rather like an exhibition of prehistoric electronic equipment.

It was rather like... = It was more like...

These peculiar forms not only seemed designed to shock people emotionally, but to give them electric shocks as well!

not only...but ...as well

seem(系动词)＋名词 / 形容词 / 分词

Key structures 关键句型

1...take no interest in art...on display...

2...got used to...

3...from the ceiling...in response to...familiar to...

4...attached to...

Special difficulties 难点

以元音+ y 结尾的名词/动词，加 s 时直接加。

Day → days

Way → ways

Enjoy → enjoys

Buy → buys

以辅音+ y 结尾的名词/动词，加 s 时，去 **y 变 I 加 es**。

Lady → ladies

Berry → berries

Reply → replies

Jungle's opinion：不能有三个辅音在一起，否则不好读。（例：ladys）

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1. A 正确

2. C 正确

mobile adj.可移动的，易变的，机动的

effect n.结果，效果，作用，影响

electronic adj.电子的

activate vt.刺激，使活动，开[起] 动，触发

3. D 正确 one could not pass them unnoticed

can not pass something unnoticed 不可能路过某物而不注意到它

-- The dress is so beautiful that I can't pass it unnoticed

unnoticed adj.不引人注意的，被忽视的

untouched adj.未触及的；没有动过的

4. C 正确 eighty years ago（一般过去时）

5. C 正确 entrance + to, arrival + in/at

6. prohibit vt.阻止，禁止（重点强调法律或条例明文禁止）

prohibit somebody from doing something

-- The law prohibit children from buying alcohol.（n.酒精，酒）

forbid somebody to do something

-- The law forbid children to buy alcohol.

7. A 正确 in order that 只能引导目的状语从句

so that 可以引导目的和结果状语从句

1>引导目的状语从句时：so that + 情态动词

2>引导结果状语从句时：so that + 一般时态

8. D 正确 both...and…（both 和 and 的后面成分应该相同）

9. D 正确 at one blow 强调一次重击

all of a sudden = suddenly

with a light touch 轻轻的一碰

10 A 正确 gave off

11 B 正确 illuminate v.照明，照亮

-- illuminated by candle / illuminate the streets

enlighten vt.开导，启发

enlightened adj.开通的，开明的（-- enlightened policy 开明的政策）

alight vi.(不及物)下车，落下（alighted, alighted）（alit, alit）

-- Passengers should not alight from the train until it has stopped.

alighted adj.点着的，发亮的（= burning）

-- the fire is alighted/burning

12 C 正确 designed 表达一种意图

-- a book designed/intended mainly for English learner. 一本专门为英语学习者编写的书。

Draw vt.画（-- draw a picture）

Draw vt.支取，提取（-- draw money from bank） Create vt.创造

Lesson 19 A very dear cat 一条贵重的宝贝猫

New words and expression 生词和短语

Dear adj.亲爱的，珍贵的；昂贵的
Dear = Costly（adj.昂贵的，贵重的）= expensive
-- I can't afford the car because it's too dear.
Dear adj.珍贵的，宝贵的
-- The cat is dear to me.（adj.珍贵的）
-- The lamb is prize to Mary = The lamb is dear to Mary
cost somebody dear 花了某人很多钱（dear adv.昂贵地，价高地）
-- The cat cost the lady dear.

kidnapper n.绑架者，拐骗者
kidnap vt.诱拐(小孩)，绑架，勒赎
-- They kidnapped five hostages.（n.人质，抵押品）

considerable adj.相当大的
-- a considerable business. 大型企业。
-- He has got a considerable success.
Considerably adv.相当大地，相当多地（= much, a lot , a great deal）
-- It's considerably colder today than yesterday.
Considerate（adj.考虑周到的）= thoughtful（adj.体贴的，关切的）
be considerate to somebody 对某人很体贴
-- Are you considerate/thoughful to your wife?
Considered（adj.经慎重考虑的，经过熟思的）
-- It's my considered opinion.
all things considered 就各方面而言
-- All things considered, he finished the work well.
Considering prep.conj.adv.就…而论；照…来看；考虑到…
介词-- Considering his age, the little boy reads very well.
就他的年龄来说，这小孩读得算挺好的。
连词-- They have done it well considering (that) they have no experience.
副词-- He studies English well, considering. 就各方面而言，他英语学得很好。
= He studies English well, all things considered.

Wealthy adj.富的，有钱的
Orderly adj.有规律的
Disappearance n.失踪
Anonymous adj.匿名的

Ransom n.赎金
pay ransom to somebody
-- The old lady paid a ransom of one thousand pounds to the kidnapper.

hold somebody to ransom 绑架某人为了赎金
-- They kidnapped the boy and held him to ransom.

Cardboard n.硬纸板

Withdraw (withdrew, withdrawn) v.（从银行）取钱

punctually adv.准时地
punctual adj.严守时刻的，准时的
Punctuality n.准时

astound v.使吃惊
surprise, astonish, amaze, astound 语气一个比一个强
-- He was astounded to hear of her death.
-- They were amazed to find the lazy girl came very early.
Surprising adj.令人惊讶的
Surprised adj.感到惊讶的

Flat n.平面，平地，一层，公寓 adj.平坦的，扁平的
Word n.字，词，话
Sure adj.对....有把握，确信某事 adv.的确，当然
Amount n.数量

Text 课文

Why was Rastus 'very dear' in more ways than one?
Kidnappers are rarely interested in animals, but they recently took considerable interest in Mrs.
Rarely = seldom adv.很少地
be interest in = take interest in （一句话中用不同的表达方式，是为了避免从复）
took great interest in = take enormous/tremendous interest in

Eleanor Ramsay's cat. Mrs. Eleanor Ramsay, a very wealthy old lady, has shared a flat with her cat, Rastus, for a great many years.
share something with somebody 和某人分享某物
-- I share the room with my friend.
For a great many years = for a long time.

Rastus leads an orderly life. He usually takes a short walk in the evenings and is always home by seven o'clock.
Orderly adj.有秩序的，有顺序的
Discipline v.训练 n.纪律，学科
Disciplined n.受过训练的,遵守纪律的
Regular adj.规则的，有秩序的

takes a short walk = goes for a walk = goes for a stroll

stroll n.漫步，闲逛

One evening, however, he failed to arrive.

Mrs. Ramsay got very worried. She looked everywhere for him but could not find him.

However 的使用表明：he isn't home that evening.

look for, find

There days after Rastus' disappearance, Mrs. Ramsay received an anonymous letter.

after 可以和名词搭配

-- three days after Johnson's arrival. 约翰逊到来三天之后。

-- three days after the kidnapper's appearance.

The writer stated that Rastus was in safe hands and would be returned immediately if Mrs. Ramsay paid a ransom of $1,000.

State 非常正式的声明

Mrs. Ramsay was instructed to place the money in a cardboard box and to leave it outside her door.

Instruct = order（vt.命令） = tell formally（adv.正式地，形式上）

be instructed to do something

-- The journalist was instructed to obtain the exact statistics.

At first she decided to go to the police, but fearing that she would never see Rastus again – the letter had made that quite clear -- she changed her mind.

Fearing 现在分词做原因状语

make it clear to somebody that…（it 是形式主语）

-- The teacher has made it clear to us that we must read English aloud every day.

She withdrew $1000 from her bank and followed the kidnapper's instructions.

The next morning, the box had disappeared but Mrs. Ramsay was sure that the kidnapper would keep his word.

Keep his word = keep his promise 遵守诺言

word 表示诺言时，要采用单数形式

keep his word 遵守诺言 / break his word 失信用

give somebody one's word 向某人保证

-- I give you my word that I will return your bicycle.

as good as one's word 表示守信用（侧重点在于强调一个结果）

-- He promised to pay me the money and he was as good as his word.

他许诺把钱给我，正如他所言他遵守了他的诺言。

go back on one's word 食言，违背诺言

Sure enough, Rastus arrived punctually at seven o'clock that evening.

sure enough 强调确实如此

-- I said it would happen, and sure enough it did happen.

He looked very well though he was rather thirsty, for he drank half a bottle of milk.

half a bottle of milk 半瓶牛奶

half the money 一半的钱 / half the distance 一半的距离

The police were astounded when Mrs. Ramsay told them what she had done.

She explained that Rastus was very dear to her.

Considering the amount she paid, he was dear in more ways than one!

in more ways than one = in many ways

dear 具有双重意义（即是亲爱的，又是昂贵的）

Special difficulties 难点

逗号的用法：

1>三个或三个以上的词、短语或句子只用一个并列连接词来连接，他们之间就要用逗号，并列连接词前也要用逗号

-- He opened the letter, read it, and made a note of its contents.

2>插入语或同位语前后必须用逗号分开

-- I own over a thousand books and, to make matters wore, the room is rather small.

3>状语从句位于句首时也要用逗号和主句分隔开来，放在句尾则不需要

-- After we had visited the market, we returned home.

= We returned home after we had visited the market.

4>非限定性定语从句必须用逗号分开

-- Thanks to the English Channel, which separates Britain from Europe, the country has not been invaded since 1066.

5>语次转变词也应该用逗号将其和句子其他成分分开

-- A few cars, however, completed the race.

-- He feared the examination. He couldn't, **therefore**, continued his study at school.

= He feared the examination. **Therefore**, He couldn't continued his study at school.

6>介词短语和分词短语位于句首时，也必须加逗号加以分隔。

-- Taking off his jacket, George pushed his arm through the drain cover.

-- With some children, small money goes a long way.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1. A 正确 could and would 愿意并有能力

companion n.同伴，共事者

2. B 正确 on what conditions 在什么样的基础之上

reveal vt.展现，显示，揭示，暴露

3. A 正确　　greatly　adv.很，非常

4. B 正确　　for a great many years（用完成时）

5. D 正确

6. A 正确　　reaction　n.反应，反作用
根据语法规则：
主语是 ambition, duty, goal, hope, idea, intention, mistake, plan, policy, purpose, reaction, suggestion 等名词的时，句子的表语必须是 to 不定式短语，**该不定式短语是说明其内容的**。
-- His purpose in life was to seek truth instead of money.
-- Our plan is to make better use of this material.

7. B 正确
for fear + of/that
-- They are working hard for fear that they should fail.
　= They are working hard for fear of failure.
afraid for 侧重点表示：为...感到担心，害怕失去
-- The parents are often are afraid for their children. 父母常为孩子担心。
-- He was afraid for his job. 他害怕丢工作。
-- I am not afraid for my head. 我不怕掉脑袋。

8. D 正确　　修饰 money 用 large

9. D 正确
measured　adj.慎重的，有节奏的，标准的，整齐的，有规则的
regular　adj.强调有规则的
disciplined　n.受过训练的，遵守纪律的

10.B 正确
go for a walk = go for a stroll
go on/for a trek 进行艰苦的跋涉
-- trek　n.牛拉车旅行，艰苦跋涉
go for a trot 去散步
-- trot　n.小跑，骑马，疾走，忙碌　　lane　n.（乡间）小路，巷，里弄
-- I'm going for a trot down the lane. 我正沿着巷子小跑。

11.C 正确　　sure enough = as (was) expected
without a doubt　adv.无疑地
as a matter of fact　adv.事实上（in fact = actually 实际上，事实上）

12.A 正确　　healthy　adj.健康的，健壮的
sane（adj.神志清楚的，头脑清楚的）= sensible（明智的，有判断力的）

Lesson 20 Pioneer pilots 飞行员的先驱

New words and expression 生词和短语

Pioneer n.先驱 vi.vt.开拓，为…开路，作先驱者
Young pioneer 少先队员
A pioneer of operation 手术的开创者
Advocate n.提倡者，鼓吹者 vt.提倡，鼓吹
-- pioneer adult education 倡导成人教育

lord n.对（英国）贵族的尊称；勋爵
lordless adj.无君主的， 无丈夫的
lordship n.贵族权力，贵族身份
lordly adj.adv.高傲的，贵族般地，有气派地
duke n.公爵
marquis n.(英国等的)侯爵（亦作：marquess）
earl n.<英>伯爵
viscount n.(英国的)子爵
baron n.男爵(英国世袭的最低级的贵族爵位)，大财主（女性为： baroness）

Calais n.加来（法国港市）

Overland adj.陆上的
Overnight n.头天晚上 adj.通宵的，晚上的，前夜的 adv.在前一夜，整夜，昨晚一晚上
-- an overnight trip 一整夜的旅行 / an overnight guest 过夜的客人
overpopulated adj.人口过密的，人口过剩的
overseas adv.海外 adj.外国的，海外的
over+动词（over 表示超过）
overeat vt.使吃过量 vi.吃得过多
oversleep vt.(使)睡过头 vi.睡过头，睡得太久
overwork n.过度工作 v.(使)工作过度
overcharge v.讨价过高，使过量装填，过度充电 n.超载，过重的负担，过度充电
overestimate vt.评价过高 n.估计的过高

pilot n.飞行员，领航员，引水员
engine n.发动机，机车，火车头
Calais 加来（法国北部港市）
Latest adj.最后的，最迟的，最新的，最近的 n.最新消息，最新式样
Last vi.持续，支持，维持
Dover n.多佛（英国东南部的港口）

Text 课文

What was the name of the first plane to fly across the English Channel?

In 1908 Lord Northcliffe offered a prize of f1,000 to the first man who would fly across the English Channel.

the first man who would fly across… = the first man to fly across...

序数词和动词不定式 to 搭配连用可以代替其后的定语从句

-- the first person to greet him was a local policeman

-- She was the only one to survive the plane crash. 她是唯一幸存与飞机失事的人。

= She was the only one that survive the plane crash.

Over a year passed before the first attempt was made.

如果 before 所引导的时间状语从句之前出现段时间（则最佳翻译方法：才...）

attempt n.努力，尝试，企图 vt.尝试，企图（attempt 的语气比 try 强烈）

in one's attempt

-- She failed in her attempt to swim the English Channel. 她横度英吉利海峡的尝试失败了。

make an attempt on

-- He made an attempt on the mountain. 他试图攀登那座山。

make an attempt to do

-- She made every attempt to run away. 她想尽一切办法逃走。

make no attempt

-- She made no attempt to run away. 她没有想逃走。

On July 19th, 1909, in the early morning, Hubert Latham took off from the French coast in his plane the 'Antoinette IV.'

He had travelled only seven miles across the Channel when his engine failed and he was forced to land on sea.

When = at that moment

Failed = break down 失灵，出故障

Fail 失败、忽视

-- She failed to win the prize.

-- When I saw him, my words failed me. 当我见到他的时候，我不知道说什么好了。

be forced to do 被迫做某事

The 'Antoinette' floated on the water until Latham was picked up by a ship.

picked up = save = rescue

Two days alter, Louis Bleriot arrived near Calais with a plane called 'No. XI'. Bleriot had been making planes since 1905 and this was his lattes model.

with a plane（with 具有、带有）-- a suitcase with a handle

A week before, he had completed a successful overland flight during which he covered twenty-six miles.

= A week before, he had completed a successful overland flight and during the flight he covered twenty-six miles.

-- during which = during flight

Latham, however, did not give up easily.

He, too, arrived near Calais on the same day with a new 'Antoinette'.

It looked as if there would be an exciting race across the Channel.

It looked as if 似乎，看起来

-- It looked as if there would be a heavy storm.

Both planes were going to take off on July 25th, but Latham failed to get up early enough.

After making a short test flight at 4,15 a.m., Bleriot set off half an hour later.

make a short test flight 做段距离试飞之后

His great flight lasted thirty-seven minutes.

When he landed near Dover, the first person to greet him was a local policeman.

= When he landed near Dover, the first person who greeted him was a local policeman.

Latham made another attempt a week later and got within half a mile of Dover, but he was unlucky again.

make another attempt 做了另一次试飞

His engine failed and he landed on the sea for the second time.

for the first time / for the second time

Key structures 关键句型

介词和关系代词搭配的用法：（决定介词位置的四个因素）

1>在正式的用法和用于书面语中，当定语从句的关系代词是介词的宾语时，能够把可移位的介词提前放在关系代词的前面。

-- This is the person about whom I was telling you.

-- Is this the book for which you asked me?

2>在非正式的用法和口语当中，介词一般要放在从句的末尾。

3>有些动词＋介词，合成词组被看作是不可分隔的语言单位。这个时候介词必须紧跟动词，不可移位

-- take after, account for

4>在很多情况下，**介词和关系代词构成独立的介词短语，在从句中起着状语作用**，与从句的谓语动词毫无关系，不是谓语动词的一部分。这时介词始终位于关系代词之前。

-- He described it was a very agreeable situation located within two small hills. + In the midst of two small hills, flowed a great river. → He described it as a very agreeable situations located within tow small hills **in the midst of which** flowed a great river.

-- Mrs. Ramsay received an anonymous letter **in which** the writer stated that Rastus was in safe hands.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1. C 正确　　develop（vt.使显出，出现，产生）　　take-off（n.起飞）

2. B 正确

3. B 正确　　forced landing 迫降　　properly（adv.适当地，完全地）

4. C 正确　　序数词和不定式搭配连用

5. A 正确　　not till / not until

6. C 正确　　有 just 一般用完成时

7. D 正确　　promised　vt.预示（有可能发生好的迹象）
threaten　预示…的恶兆
-- The river of liquid rock threatened to surround him completely, but Tazieff managed to escape just in time.
这股岩浆威胁着要将他团团围住,但泰哲夫还是设法及时躲开了。

8. A 正确

9. C 正确
no further 修饰距离 （-- I can walk no further. 我再也走不动了。）
no longer 修饰时间或长度 （-- He no longer lives here. 他再也不住这了。）
no more 修饰某物 （-- I can eat no more. 我再也吃不下了。）

10.D 正确
-- The ship rode the waves. 这艘船漂浮在水面上。
hold water 论点或观点站得住脚
-- What you said doesn't hold water. 你的话站不得住脚。
Watertight　adj. 无懈可击的，不漏水的，不透水的
-- a watertight contract. 严密的合同

11.A 正确

12.D 正确
immense　adj.修饰面积大得难以测量
grand　adj.雄伟的，壮丽的，盛大的

Lesson 21 Daniel Mendoza 丹尼尔.门多萨

New words and expression 生词和短语

Boxing n.拳击

Boxer n.拳击手

Bare adj.赤裸的（= uncovered adj.无盖的）
Fisted adj.握成拳头的
bare fist = bare fisted adj.赤手空拳的 adv.赤手空拳地
bare foot = barefooted adj.光着脚的 adv.未戴帽地
barehanded（adj.赤手空拳的） barelegged（adj.露腿的 adv.光着腿的）
bare-necked（adj.露出脖子的） bareheaded（adj.不戴帽子的）
naked adj.全裸，赤裸的，裸体的
-- He's walking in bare feet. 他光着双脚走路。
-- He is naked. = he has nothing no 他什么也没穿。
Nude adj.裸体的，光秃秃的 n.裸体画，裸体，裸体雕像
-- Nudes are art. 裸体画是一种艺术。

prizefighter n.职业拳击手（尤指古时赤手拳击手）

crude adj.粗野的
be crude to somebody
-- He is crude to the girl.
Rude adj.粗鲁的，无礼的（比 crude 的语气要弱）

Marquis n.侯爵

Technically adv.严格根据法律意义地
Science n.科学

Popularity n.名望（n.普及，流行，声望）
in popularity 受欢迎的
-- Instant adj.立即的，即时的，(食品)速溶的，方便的
-- Instant foods are getting in popularity.
-- Popular songs are in popularity.
Popular adj.通俗的，流行的，受欢迎的
-- Be popular with sb 受某人喜爱
-- The famous actor is popular with young people.
Fame n.名声，名望，传说 famous adj.著名的，出名的
Reputation n.声誉，名誉，名声

adore v.崇拜，爱戴（= worship vi.敬神，拜神 vt.崇拜，尊敬）
-- More and more people adore the famous actress.

alike adv.一样地
= similarly adv.同样地，类似于
= equally adv.同样地，相等地，平等地
= as well 也，又，同样
= in the same way adv.同样地
-- He was adored by rich and poor alike.
-- The teacher is adored by boy and girl alike.

Fame n.名声

Eminent adj.著名的，杰出的
= distinguished adj.卓越的；杰出的；超群的；出众的；著名的
-- eminent scientist / eminent physicist（n.物理学家）

bitterly adv.厉害地
-- It is blowing bitterly.
Bitter adj.苦的，辛酸的，刺骨的
-- During cold winter, it is really bitter. / bitter fruit 苦果

bet v.打赌
bet on something 以…打赌
-- The public bet on Tom. 公众把赌注押在汤姆的身上。
bet somebody that 和某人打赌
-- I bet her I would win the march.
bet one's bottom dollar on… 孤注一掷在…上
-- He bet his bottom dollar on his last attempt.
bet on the wrong horse [口]判断或估计错误
I bet. 我打赌，我肯定。
You bet. [俗]当然，真的，的确（= certainly）

Academy n.专业学校

Extravagant adj.浪费的，奢移的（wasteful adj.浪费的，不经济的）
-- extravagant habit
反义词：thrifty, frugal, economical

poverty n.贫困（in poverty 在贫困中）
indigence n.贫乏，穷困
destitution n.赤贫（穷得一无所有）
penury n.拮据，贫穷，穷困

unsuccessful adj.不成功的，失败的
champion n.冠军，战士
injure vt.损害，伤害 v.伤害
injured adj.受伤的,受损害的
figure n.人物，尤其是著名人物
glove n.手套 vt.戴手套
draw vt., vi.(drew, drawn, drawing)拉，拖，绘制
swift adj.迅速的，敏捷的 adv.迅速地，敏捷地
swiftly adv.很快地，即刻
settled adj.确立的，定下的，决定的
quarrel vi.吵架，争论，挑剔
argument n.争论，辩论
finally adv.最後，最终
ring n.拳击场
later adj.更迟的,更后的 adv.稍后,随后
lose vi. 失败，受损失
debt n.债；债务

Text 课文

How many unsuccessful attempts did Mendoza make before becoming Champion of all England?
Boxing matches were very popular in England two hundred years ago.
be popular = be in popularity

In those days, boxers fought with bare fists for prize money.
fought with bare fists 赤手空拳的打斗

Because of this, they were known as 'prizefighters'.
However, boxing was very crude, for these were no rules and a prizefighter could be seriously injured or even killed during a match.

One of the most colourful figures in boxing history was Daniel Mendoza, who was born in 1764.
One of the most colourful figures = one of the most famous people

The use of gloves was not introduced until 1860, when the Marquis of Queensberry drew up the first set of rules.
Introduce（vt.传入，引进）= bring in（介绍引进）
-- Potatoes were introduced into Europe from South America.
draw up vt.制定、起草（-- draw up a plan）

Though he was technically a prizefighter, Mendoza did much to change crude prizefighting into a sport, for he brought science to the game.

In his day, Mendoza enjoyed tremendous popularity. He was adored by rich and poor alike.
In his day = in his full time = in his good day 在他的全盛时期
He was adored by rich and poor alike.
= He was not only adored by the rich but adored by the poor as well.

Mendoza rose to fame swiftly after a boxing match when he was only fourteen years old.
rise to fame = become famous

This attracted the attention of Richard Humphries who was then the most eminent boxer in England.
attract somebody's attention = attract the attention of somebody

He offered to train Mendoza and his young pupil was quick to learn.

In fact, Mendoza soon became so successful that Humphries turned against him.
turn against… 变成和...敌对

The two men quarrelled bitterly and it was clear that the argument could only be settled by a fight.
bitter（adv.非常，剧烈，厉害）= Severely（adv.严格地，激烈地）

A match was held at Stilton, where both men fought for an hour.
The public bet a great deal of money on Mendoza, but he was defeated.

Mendoza met Humphries in the ring on a later occasion and he lost for a second time.
he lost for a second time = he lost again

It was not until his third match in 1790 that he finally beat Humphries and became Champion of England.
It is/was not until
Jungle's opinion: 在英语中喜欢把 not 和 until 连在一起用
例如：He didn't leave until the rain stopped.

Meanwhile, he founded a highly successful Academy and even Lord Byron became one of his pupils.

He earned enormous sums of money and was paid as much as $100 for a single appearance.
as much as 多达

Despite this, he was so extravagant that he was always in debt.
in debt 欠债，负债

After he was defeated by a boxer called Gentleman Jackson, he was quickly forgotten.

He was sent to prison for failing to pay his debts and died in poverty in 1836.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1...D grasp vt.抓住，掌握，领会 n.抓住，掌握，领会
establish vt.建立，设立，确定，证实

2...D in favor of adv.赞同，有利于

3...C apart from 除什么之外还有
supplement vt.补足，补充

4...A 5...A 6...B

7...B owe people money = owe money to people

8...B
vivid adj.生动的，鲜明的，鲜艳的，活泼的，逼真的
personality n.个性，人格，人物，名人
character n.特性，性质，特征，人物
image n.图象，肖像，偶像
imaginative adj.想象的，虚构的 adj.富于想象的，有想象力的

9...C
exceptionally（adj.例外的，异常的） → unusually（adv.显著地，不同寻常的）
-- An exceptionally beautiful girl.
marvelously（adj.不可思议的，非凡的） = wonderfully（adv.奇妙的，奇异的）
singly adv.单独的
unequally adv.不相等地，不公平地，独一无二的

10...A rise vi.n.

11...A
jealous adj.妒忌的，猜疑的，警惕的，嫉妒的
disinterested adj.无私心的，廉洁的，公正的 adj.[美口]不关心的，不感兴趣的
revolt v.反抗，起义，反叛
revolted adj.起来反抗的，起义的，厌恶的

12...D
beat = defeat
conquer vt.征服，战胜，占领，克服
gain vt.vi.赢得，获得 win v.赢得（比赛）

Lesson 22 By heart 熟记台词

New words and expression 生词和短语

run (ran, run) v.（戏剧，电影等）连演，连映
-- The film is so successful that it runs for several weeks.

Lines n.（剧本中的）台词
Part n.剧中的角色，台词

Falter v.支吾，结巴说
-- He has practised the poem several times, so he has no cause to falter.
他练习这首诗好多次了，所以没有理由结巴。
Stammer v.口吃，结巴着说出，结结巴巴地说
Falter vi.蹒跚而行蹒跚踉跄，摇摆
= Stagger v.摇晃，蹒跚，交错，摇摇摆摆
-- He faltered home.

cast (cast, cast) v.选派…扮演角色
-- The actor was cast in the role of hero. 这个演员在剧中扮演英雄的角色。
Role n.角色，任务

Role n.角色
Aristocrat n.贵族

Imprison v.关押（= put sb in prison 关押某人）
-- He was imprisoned for 10 years.
imprisonment n.关押
-- sentence sb to life imprisonment 判名人终生监禁
prison, jail = gaol n.监狱
-- send sb to prison / put sb in prison / throw sb into prison
in prison 坐牢（不加 the）
-- He is in prison/jail/gaol.
= He is behind bars. 他在铁窗之后。

Bastille n.巴士底狱
Gaoler n.监狱长，看守
Colleague n.同事
Curtain n.（舞台上的）幕布

Reveal v.使显露，揭露，揭穿
-- The secret hasn't been revealed.
Reveal vt.把什么露出来

-- A curtain was up and revealed the beautiful scenery.（n.风景，景色）
Disclose　vt.揭发（-- disclose the truth）
Discover　vt.发现
Uncover　vt.揭开具体的盖子
-- A very tight dress reveals the beautiful figure.
Revealable　adj.可展现的
Revealer　n.探测器

cell　n.单人监房，监号
blank　adj.空白的

squint　v.眯着（眼）看，瞄
squint one's eyes 眯着眼睛
-- He squinted his eyes and looked at the letter.
pear at　眯着眼睛看

dim　adj.昏暗
-- The room is too dim so I can't read the letter.
Gloomy　adj.(天气,心情)抑郁的
-- The weather is gloomy today. /　He is in gloomy mood.
Dusky　adj.(天色)漆黑的，黑暗的
-- Towards evening it’s getting dusky.
Murky　adj.黑暗的，阴沉的
-- I can't go out at murky night.
Misty　adj.多雾的，迷蒙的
-- The building is out of sight on such a misty day.

Sire　n.（古用法）陛下

Proceed　v.继续进行 （停顿之后的继续）
proceed to/with　进行继续某事
-- Let's proceed to business.
-- You must proceed with your work.
Proceed from…　从…着手开始继续
-- They proceed from lesson one.
proceed against sb　起诉某人
-- He decided to proceed against his neighbour.

Expect　vt. <口>(料)想，认为，指望
Expect　vt.要求
Alone　adj.单独的，独一无二的 adv.独自地
Anxious　adj.担忧的，渴望的，盼望的
Fellow　adj.同伴的，同事的，同道的
Learnt　vt.记住

Line　n.台词

Text 课文

Which actor read the letter in the end, the aristocrat or the gaoler?

Some plays are so successful that they run for years on end, In many ways, this is unfortunate for the poor actors who are required to go on repeating the same lines night after night.

By heart 熟记

on end = continuously　adv.连续的（位于具体的时间之后）

-- He sat there for hours on end.

-- We had hardly anything to eat for days on end.

on end = upright　adv.竖着

-- The cat's fur stood on end.

-- I got a big shock, so my hair stood on end. 我被吓了一跳，以至于我毛骨悚然。

Who = actor 关系代词做主语，不能省略

-- The student who was required to recite the poem 100 times is really poor.

One would expect them to know their parts by heart and never have cause to falter.

learn/know by heart　把什么牢记在心

-- The sentence is so important that you must learn it by heart.

heart and soul　adv.全心全意的，全身心的

-- We sever the students heart and soul.

take heart　鼓起勇气，恢复信心

lose one’s heart　失去信心

lose one’s heart to sb = give one’s heart to sb　亲信于某人

-- The boy lost his heart to the girl.

put one's heart into sth　致力于某事

-- Nothing is difficult if you put your heart into it. 世上无难事，只怕有心人。

have one's heart in one's boots　提心吊胆

-- He had his heart in his boots when he went out along at night.

Would　v. (will 的过去式)

1> [表示过去将来时，用于第二、三人称](第一人称英国用 should，美国用 would) 将，会

-- He said he would come.　他说他要来。

2> [表示意愿]愿；偏要，肯

-- He would eat nothing.　他不肯吃东西；他什么也不愿吃。

-- I told him not to go, but he would not listen.　我叫他别去，可他偏不听。

-- He would go in spite of our warnings.　他不听我们的劝告，执意要去。

3> [表示过去的习惯动作]常常，总是

-- He would sit for hours doing nothing.　过去他常常 坐几个钟头什么事也不做。

-- He would come to see us on Sundays.　过去星期天他经常来看望我们。

4> [表示推测]大概，该是

-- I would be about ten when my brother left home.　我哥哥离开家时，我大概十岁左右。

5> [表示某种假设的意志]想要，愿意

-- I could do so if I would.　要是我愿意，我能够这样做(但我不愿意)。

-- If you would do this for me, I should be grateful indeed.

若是你愿意为我做这件事，我将万分感激 。

6> [表示虚拟，假设，虚 构，用于虚拟条件句的主句第二、第三人称，美国也用于第一人称]要，会，就会，将要

-- They would be killed if the car went over the cliff.　如果汽车翻在悬崖下，他们就会丧命。

-- They would have been killed if the car had gone over the cliff.

如果汽车当时翻到悬崖下，他们早就丧命了。

8> [表示请求或个人想法、看法，使语气更婉转]请

-- Would you kindly show me the way to the station?　劳驾，请问到车站的路怎么走?

-- I would like to speak a few words.　我想讲几句话。

-- It would seem that he was right.　看来他倒是对的。

9> [表示假想的愿望]但愿，要是...多好

-- Would [I would] that they were safe home again!　愿他们再能平安回家!

-- Would that I were young again.　我若能再年青些该多好啊!

-- We wish that he would come again.　我们但愿他会再来。

-- I would rather you came on Sunday.　希望你星期天来。

10> [表示能力](=could) 能

-- The barrel would hold 100 litres.　这桶能装一百升。

Yet this is not always the case.　= This case is not like this.

A famous actor in a highly successful play was once cast in the role of an aristocrat who had been imprisoned in the Bastille for twenty years.

In the last act, a gaoler would always come on to the stage with a letter which he would hand to the prisoner.

Which→letter

Even though the noble was expected to read the letter at each performance, he always insisted that it should be written out in full.

even though = even if = though/although

at each performance = at every performance

insist（vt.坚决要求）， suggest（vt.建议）

order（vt.命令）， demand（vt.要求）， require（vt.要求）

表示建议 / 要求 / 希望的动词加 that 宾语从句时, that 从句必须使用 should+动词原形的虚拟语气（should 可以省略）。

in full = fully = completely

One night, the gaoler decided to play a joke on his colleague to find out if, after so many performances, he had managed to learn the contents of the letter by heart.

play a joke/cheek on sb　开某人玩笑 （cheek n.脸颊，面颊）

The curtain went up on the final act of the play and revealed the aristocrat sitting alone

behind bars in his dark cell.
on the final act = in the last act
behind bars 铁窗之后

Just then, the gaoler appeared with the precious letter in his bands.
with 独立主格结构
precious 表明这信对演员很重要

He entered the cell and presented the letter to the aristocrat.
present sth to = hand to = pass to

But the copy he gave him had not been written out in full as usual.
as usual 如往常一样，照例

It was simply a blank sheet of paper. The gaoler looked on eagerly, anxious to see if his fellow actor had at last learnt his lines.
look on 旁观，观看
anxious 形容词短语做伴随状况状语

The noble stared at the blank sheet of paper for a few seconds.
stare at 凝视，盯住

Then, squinting his eyes, he said: 'The light is dim. Read the letter to me'.
ing 形式做方式状语，伴随状况状语

And he promptly handed the sheet of paper to the gaoler.
promptly = immediately

Finding that he could not remember a word of the letter either, the gaoler replied: 'The light is indeed dim, sire, I must get my glasses.'
现在分词做状语

With this, he hurried off the stage.
hurry off 匆忙离开

Much to the aristocrat's amusement, the gaoler returned a few moments later with a pair of glasses and the usual copy of the letter which he proceeded to read to the prisoner.
much 用来加强语气
which→letter
He laughs best who laughs last. 笑到最后的，才是笑的最好的。

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1...A He laughs best, who laughs last.

Proverb n.格言，谚语
Suit v.合适，适合
Gist n.要点，梗概，要旨
Silver n.银，银子
Leap v.跳，跳越，跳跃
Golden adj.贵重的，金色的，金黄色的
Hatch vt.孵，孵出 vi.孵化

2...C end with... 以...结束
plight n.情况，状态，困境 imprisonment n.关押
audience n.听众，观众 bore vt.令人厌烦

3...C improvise v.临时准备 pretend vt.假装，装扮

4.C 独立主格结构
with a letter to deliver to the prisoner. = with a letter for the prisoner.
Deliver vt.递送，陈述，释放，发表

5.A insist that + should insist on + 名词/动名词

6.C

7.C give him a copy （a 表示任意的一份, the 表示特指）

8.A neither, nor 用于句首，句子倒装

9.D trick n.恶作剧，诡计，骗局,窍门，诀窍
play a joke on 开玩笑 = play a trick on 捉弄（单方面取乐）
have a joke with sb 和某人开玩笑（强调两人共同取乐）
-- I've just had a joke with my classmate.

10.D finally adv.最后 lastly adv.顺序上的最后
in the end 强调最终失败的结果（用于句尾或句首）
-- He worked harder and harder, but in the end he failed.
Conclusive adj.结论性的，决定性的，最后的

11.B peer vt.凝视或眯眼看专心地、探求地或较为费劲地看
peer about 眯着眼睛看
-- When you enter a cinema, you often have to peer about...
search vt.搜寻，寻找（-- search for sth）
blink vt.眨眼睛，闪亮
stare vt.盯着看（-- stare at）

12.C inform 表示正式的通知 rejoin vt.使再结合，再加入，再回答

Lesson 23 One man's meat is another man's poison 各有所爱

New words and expression 生词和短语

poison (title)　n.毒药 vt.毒害，败坏，使中毒
-- He was poisoned by pesticide.（n.杀虫剂，农药，防疫药）
give poison to sb/sth　使某人或某物中毒
hate each other like poison　彼此互相狠透了
name one's poison
-- Name your poison, please. = What's your poison. 你们要喝什么酒。

illogical　adj.不合逻辑的，无章法的
octopus　n.章鱼

delicacy　n.美味，佳肴
-- He considered chicken to be a great delicacy.
delicate　adj.美味的，可口的，清淡的
delicious　adj.美味的

repulsive　adj.令人反感的，令人生厌的
disgusting　adj.令人厌恶的
-- The dish is repulsive.

stomach　n.胃
turn　v.感到恶心，翻胃

fry　v.油炸（= be cooked in hot oil）
-- fried egg 煎鸡蛋 / fried bread 油炸面包
-- frying pan 煎锅，长柄平锅
fry up 加热
-- Fry up the food, please.
fry in one's own fat 自作自受
Have other fish to fry. 另有要事要做。
-- Hello, Lucy, let's go have dinner.
-- That's a good idea, but I have other fish to fry. Thank you very much.

fat　n.（动物、植物）油
put on fat 发胖
fat　adj.胖的（形容人时不太礼貌）
形容人时一般用：large, heavy, overweight (adj.过重的，重的)

abuse　n.辱骂，责骂
-- Don't abuse your authority.
-- He greeted his wife with a stream of abuse.
snail　n.蜗牛

luxury　n.奢侈品，珍品
-- The diamond ring is a luxury to me.
Luxurious　adj.奢侈的，豪华的　（-- a luxurious hotel）

associate　v.联想到（-- connect in one's mind）
associate A with B
-- I can't associate you with your wife.
-- Can you associate snails with delicious food.
Associate…with… = connect…with… = link…with… = be bound up with

despise　v.鄙视
-- We despise him for coward.（n.懦弱的人，胆小的人）
look down upon　蔑视，瞧不起（口语）
-- Don't look down upon anyone.

appeal　v.引起兴致
appeal to sb
-- Eating snails never appeals to me.
Appeal　v.呼吁，上诉（appeal for sth）

shower　n.阵雨，淋浴

stroll　n.溜达，散步（= slow walking for pleasure in street or in garden）
go for a stroll = go for a walk,　take a stroll = take a walk
stroll　v.闲逛，漫步
-- He is strolling along the road.
Stroller　n.散步者，流浪者
Ramble　v.海岸、林中的漫步
-- The couple are rambling in the forest.（The couple 一对夫妇）
Roam　v.不安定的漂泊
-- The tramper roams every day.
Wander　vi.漫步，徘徊，流浪，彷徨，无目的地移动
-- He has nothing to do, so he is wandering along the street.

impulse　n.冲动（= a sudden wish to do sth）
on impulse　冲动的
-- He rushed out to catch up with the lady on impulse.
Be driven by impulse to do sth　情不自禁的做某事
-- I was driven by impulse to do it like this.

Impulsive adj.冲动的
Impulsively adv.冲动的，有推动力地

dozen n.12 个，一打（= a group of twelve）
by the dozen 成打的
-- We usually buy eggs by the dozen.
dozens of… 许多的…
-- Dozens of students went to the cinema.
two dozen eggs, a dozen roses（这里的 dozen 不加 s）
a dozen of the/these roses 这些玫瑰中的一打
speak nineteen to the dozen 一直说个不停
-- The old lady is speaking nineteen to the dozen.

fancy v.喜爱，喜欢
-- I don't fancy living in the cold room.
-- Fancy meeting you here. 没想到在这见到你。
-- fancy oneself 自命不凡

in particular 特别地，详细地
Mediterranean adj.地中海的，地中海民族的
n.地中海（=Mediterranean sea，位于欧，亚，非三大洲之间），地中海沿岸的居民
instance n.实例 vt.举...为例
would [表示推测]大概，该是
accepted adj.一般承认的，公认的
northern adj.北方的，北部的
certain adj.确定的
creature n.生物，尤指动物
praise n.赞扬，赞美，荣耀，称赞 vt.赞扬，歌颂，称赞
various adj.许多的，各种各样的，不同的
town n.城镇，市镇，城市，商业中心，都市（比村庄大但通常比城市小）
plant n.植物 vt.种植，栽培，培养，安置 vi.种植
equally adv.同样地，平等地，相等地
couple ［口］（少数）几个，两三个 n.夫妻，配偶，两个，一对
follow vt.跟随，追随，理解，遵循 vi.跟随
escape vi.vt（常与 from 连用）逃走

Text 课文

What was it about snails that made the writer collect them for his friend on that day in particular?
People become quite illogical when they try to decide what can be eaten and what cannot be eaten.
come to 涉及，谈及（常和 when 连用）
When it come to sth
When it come to doing sth

-- When it comes to politics I know nothing.　谈到政治，我一无所知。

-- He never complains when it comes to helping his wife with the house work.
　当谈及到帮妻子做家务活这件事的时候，他从来不抱怨。

If you lived in the Mediterranean, for instance, you would consider octopus a great delicacy.

for instance = for example　adv.例如

consider sth (to be) sth

You would not be able to understand why some people find it repulsive.

On the other hand, your stomach would turn at the idea of frying potatoes in animal Fat----the normally accepted practice in many northern countries.

On the other hand　在另一方面（转折连词）

一些 at 介词短语表示：当…就…　一…就…

at the idea of = at the thought of　一想到就…

at the sight of 一看到就…, at the mention of 一提到就…, at the news of 一听到什么的消息就

at the touch of 一碰到就…, at the sound of 一听到什么的声音就…

-- I was glad at thought of getting something to eat.

-- I always love at the mention of ghost story.

Practice　n.组织或个人的惯例性的做法、办事方式

-- It is now quite common practice for married women not to take their husband's second name.
　已婚女子不用跟丈夫姓在现在是常见的做法了。

-- the practice of closing shops on Sunday

-- My practice to studying English is to read every day.

Habit　n.个人的习惯、习性

-- Early to bed and early to rise is a good habit.　早睡早起是个好习惯。

Custom　n.社会的习惯、风俗

-- the custom of giving present at Christmas

-- Social custom vary greatly form country to country.　不同的国家有不同的社会习俗。

The sad truth is that most of us have been brought up to eat certain foods and we stick to them all our lives.

That 引导表语从句，说明 truth 的内容。

bring up　v.抚养，教育，培养（常用被动语态，表示自小到大）

-- Joe is born in England, but brought up in France.

-- She was brought up to believe that money is the most/great important thing in life.

-- I've been brought up to eat fish, just because my mother is fond of fish as well.

-- He has been brought up to eat frying potatoes just because his parents are fond of that.

-- He gave much attention to bring up his children.

Stick to = keep to = not give up

stick to the decision / stick to the idea / stick to the plan

-- We decided to stick to our previous plan.

-- I made my decision and I am going to stick to it.

Insist on doing sth. = Persist in doing sth.　坚持做某事

No creature has received more praise and abuse than the common garden snail.
= The common garden snail often receives more praise and abuse than other creature.
比较级表达最高级：
-- Nobody is more beautiful than you.
-- He is more intelligent than anyone else in my class.

Cooked in wine, snails are a great luxury in various parts of the world.
cooked 过去分词做定语，与 snail 构成被动关系。

There are countless people who, ever since their early years, have learned to associate snails with food.
Countless（adj.无数的，数不尽的）= numerous（adj.众多的，许多的，无数的）
Associate sth with sth　把某物和某物联系在一起

My friend, Robert, lives in a country where snails are despised.
People there don't consider snails to be a great delicacy

As his flat is in a large town, he has no garden of his own.
Has no garden of his own 没有自己的庭院

For years he has been asking me to collect snails from my garden and take them to him.

The idea never appealed to me very much, but one day, after a heavy shower, I happened to be walking in my garden when I noticed a huge number of snails taking a stroll on some of my prize plants.
The idea never appealed to me very much. = The idea never interested me very much.
happen to do 偶然，碰巧
-- I happened to out when he called.
-- We both happened to be traveling on the same plane.
happen / chance
-- It happened that I was out when he called. = It happened that I was out when he called.
When 表示正在这时突然（常与过去进行时、过去完成时连用，位于句中）
-- He was having a bath when the telephone suddenly rang.
-- We were about to start when it rained.
taking a stroll 现在分词做定语修饰 snail
snails taking a stroll = snails that were taking a stroll

Acting on a sudden impulse, I collected several dozen, put them in a paper bag, and took them to Robert.
on a sudden impulse 一时的冲动
-- Acting on a sudden impulse, she went shopping to buy several dresses.

Robert was delighted to see me and equally pleased with my little gift.

= Robert was not only delighted to see me but also pleased with my little gift.

Be delighted to do

Be pleased with sth

I left the bag in the hall and Robert and I went into the living room where we talked for a couple of hours.

I had forgotten all about the snails when Robert suddenly said that I must stay to dinner. Snails would, of course, be the main dish.

I did not fancy the idea and I reluctantly followed Robert out of the room.

Fancy（vt.爱好）= like

Reluctant（adj.不愿意的，勉强的）= unwillingly（adv.不愿意地，不情愿地）

To our dismay, we saw that there were snails everywhere: they had escaped from the paper bag and had taken complete possession of the hall!

Dismay　n.灰心，沮丧；惊愕

to our dismay 使我们惊愕的是

take possession of　v.占有，占领

-- The solider take possession of enemies' fort.（fort　n.堡垒，要塞）

-- terrorist（n.恐怖分子）　　embassy（n.大使馆人员，大使馆）

-- The terrorists took possession of the embassy.

I have never been able to look at a snail since then.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1> D

2> A

3> D　　propose　vt.计划，建议，向...提议 vi.打算

4> A

5> B　　kinds 和介词 of 连用 /　foods 各种各样的食物

-- certain kinds of food = certain foods

6> C　　and 和 or 的用法：

在肯定句中表示并列的关系用 and。

在否定句中，两个对等的谓语、宾语、状语或从句的连接用 or，把两个成分都否定掉。

-- He doesn't smoke or drink.

-- She couldn't remember who she was or where she left. 她不知她自己是谁以及从哪来的。

在否定句中出现了 and，表示语义的转折，相当于 but。

-- The room is not big **and** comfortable. 这房子不大但很舒服。

-- The room is not big **or** comfortable. 这房子不大也不舒服。

7>A having left…的逻辑主语是主句的主句
accompany vt.陪伴
-- She accompanied me to the doctor's. 她陪我去看了医生。

8> C saw 后面省略了 that

9> D
be sick 表示一种状态, feel sick 表示突然的一种感觉。
feel sick = sicken（vt.使患病，使恶心或昏晕 vi.得病，变厌腻）
-- He began to feel sick as soon as the ship started to move.

10> D
meal n.一餐，一顿饭
dish（n.一道菜，盘，餐盘，碟）= course（n.一道菜）

11> B
a couple of hours = tow hours or so 一两个小时的时间
round the clock 昼夜不停，连续一整天，毫不疲倦地，不松劲地

12> B
numerous（adj.众多的，许多的，无数的）= countless（adj.无数的，数不尽的）
-- There are numerous people waiting for you.
numerable adj.可数的，可计算的（= able to be counted）
numerical adj.数字的，用数表示的（多用作前置形容词）
-- in numerical order 按照数字顺序 / numerical ability 使用数字的能力
numbered adj.有限的，时日无多的 adj.已编号的（numbered card 已编号的卡）

Lesson 24 A skeleton in the cupboard “家丑”

New words and expression 生词和短语

Skeleton n.骷髅 （n.(动物之)骨架，骨骼，基干，纲要，万能钥匙）
Closet n.壁橱，衣橱，碗橱
a skeleton in the cupboard = a skeleton in the closet = a family skeleton 家丑
-- It is time to bring the family skeleton out of the cupboard. 该是公开家丑的时候。
skeleton key 万能钥匙
reduced to a skeleton 瘦得皮包骨
-- He has had nothing to eat for a couple of days so he has been reduced to a skeleton.

Seemingly adv.表面上地

Respectable adj.体面的，雅观的
-- The tie is for respectable people only. 这条领带只适合体面的人戴。
Decent adj.正派的，端庄的，有分寸的，(服装)得体的，大方的
Graceful adj.优美的，优雅的
Deserving respect 可敬的
-- deserve（vt.应受，值得） respect（n.尊敬，敬重）
Respectable adj.可敬的，有名望的，高尚的，值得尊敬的
Respectful adj.尊重人的，有礼貌的
-- A respectable person is respectful to others. 受人尊敬的人也会尊敬别人的。
Respective adj.分别的，各自的
-- All the students returned to their respective classrooms.

Conceal v.隐藏，隐瞒 （比 hide 更加正式，语气更强）
Conceal sth. from sb.
-- He concealed his disappointment from his friends.（disappointment n.失望）
-- He concealed his debts from his wife.
Hide vt.vi.（hid, hidden, hiding）隐藏，把…藏起来
-- When her mother came in the little girl hid behind the curtain.（很口语话）

Vivid adj.生动的（活泼的）
adj.鲜明的，鲜艳的（光线、色彩等）
-- a vivid color 鲜艳的颜色 / vivid blue 碧蓝色
adj.传神的，栩栩如生的
She gave the police a vivid description of the accident. 她对警察生动地描述了这次事故。
比较级 more vivid / 最高级 the most vivid

Dramatic adj.令人激动的，扣人心弦的（戏剧性的，生动的）
Vivid adj.清晰的
-- The dramatic scene is still vivid in his mind. 那扣人心弦的一幕在他脑海中仍很清晰。

Exciting adj.令人兴奋的，使人激动的（没有 dramatic 那么强烈）
Striking adj.引人注意的，显著的，惊人的

ruin v.毁坏
heroine n.女主人公

fiction n.小说（虚构，编造）---- 集合名词，小说的总称，不可数
novel n.小说，长篇故事（某一部具体的小说）
-- I prefer reading fiction to hearing about real events. 我喜欢阅读小说而不喜欢听真实的事件。

varying adj.不同的
vary vi.vt.改变，变化
-- The weather varies from day to day. 天气一天天变化。
Varying = Various（adj.不同的，各种各样的）= different kinds of
Different adj.不同的（与…不一样）
-- My idea in different from yours.

medicine n.医学
Guestroom n.（家庭中的）来客住房
Unpack vt.（从箱中）取出

Stack v.（整齐地）堆放，排放
-- Stack up the books.
-- The housewife is stacking up the clothing.
Stack n.摞，叠，大堆，堆栈
-- a stack of papers 一摞报纸 / a stack of books 一大堆书

Underclothes n.内衣
Underclothing n.内衣，贴身衣裤
Underwear n.内衣裤

Drawer n.抽屉

petrify v.使惊呆
shock vt.使…震惊 n.打击，震动
dumbfound vt.使惊愕；使惊呆；使目瞪口呆
Petrified adj.感到震惊的 / Petrifying adj.令人震惊的零
-- At the new I was petrified.

dangle v.悬挂
sway v.摇摆

unsympathetic adj.不表同情的，无动于衷的
be unsympathetic to sb. 对某人不表示同情

-- I told him about my experience but he was unsympathetic to me.

Sympathetic adj.同情的,表示同情的，感到同情的

-- The manager was sympathetic (to me), but he could do nothing (to help me).
这位经理表示同情,但他无能为力。

Unsympathetically adv.无同情心的，冷淡的

Sympathetically adv.同情地，怜悯地

Sympathy n.同情，同情心

In sympathy = sympathetically

medical adj.医学的

stranger n.陌生人 secret n.秘密

close adj.近的，紧密的，亲密的 adv.接近，紧密地（s 读 z）

closest adj.最靠近的

youth n.青春，青年时期，初期 n.少年，青年们

detective n.侦探 adj.侦探的 shirt n.衬衫，衬衣

slightly adv.轻微地，有一点，略，苗条地

dash vt., vi.突进，飞跑

once upon a time adv.从前

Text 课文

Who was Sebastian?

We often read in novels how a seemingly respectable person or family has some terrible secret which has been concealed from strangers for years.

How 引导宾语从句

has some terrible secret = has a skeleton in the cupboard = has a skeleton in the closet 家丑

which 引导的定语从句修饰 secret

seemingly adv.表面上地（= from appearance）

-- a seemingly respectable person 表面上受人尊敬的人

The English language possesses a vivid saying to describe this sort of situation.

Possess = own = have got

to describe this sort of situation 来描述这种场景（做定语用来修饰 saying）

-- The English language possesses a vivid word to describe her beauty.

The terrible secret is called ‘a skeleton in the cupboard’.

At some dramatic moment in the story, the terrible secret becomes known and a reputation is ruined.

Some 某一个（修饰单数可数名词）= a certain

Ruin vt.毁坏，毁灭（泛指概念，表示毁坏的过程不是一下完成的）

= spoil vt.搞糟，宠坏 v.扰乱

-- The rain ruined my holiday. = The rain spoiled my holiday.

Destroy　vt.破坏，毁坏 v.消灭，摧毁（完全摧毁，不可修复）
-- To tell the patient the truth is to risk destroying his hope.
-- The earthquake destroyed almost the entire city.
Damage　vt.损害，损坏，使受损失（可以被修复）
-- The car is damaged and it is be repairing now.

The reader's hair stands on end when he reads in the final pages of the novel that the heroine, a dear old lady who had always been so kind to everybody, had, in her youth, poisoned every one of her five husbands.
one's hair stands on end　某人感到毛骨悚然 = sb feel horrified （adj.带有恐怖感的，惊骇的）
-- My hair stands on end. 我感到毛骨悚然
set/make one's hair stands on end　使某人感到毛骨悚然
-- horrid　adj.恐怖的，令人讨厌的，可怕的
-- The horrid film really make my hair stands on end.
in her youth　在她年轻的时候
everyone （单独用 every 和 one 连在一起）
every one of （与 of 搭配 every 和 one 要分开）

It is all very well for such things to occur in fiction.
It is all very well…but…　好到是好，但是…
-- It is all very well for you to suggest taking a few days' rest, but how can finish our work in time?
-- It is all very well for them to ask me to do it, but I am too busy.

Occur　vi.发生，出现（某个事件出乎意料的、偶然的发生）-- 比 happen 更正式
-- When did the accident occur?
It occurred to me to do…　/　It occurred to me that…
-- It occurred to me to open the window.
Happen　vi.发生，碰巧，偶然（某个事件出乎意料的、偶然的发生）
-- When did the accident happen?
Take place　v.发生，举行（事件根据安排而发生、举行）
-- When will the wedding take place?

To varying degrees, we all have secrets which we do not want even our closest friends to learn, but few of us have skeletons in the cupboard.
To varying degrees　从不同的角度来讲…
Which 引导定语从句，修饰 secret。
Learn　得知、了解某个事实 / 学习某种知识、技能
-- She is learning computers. 她正在学习电脑。（动态动词）
Know　知道某个事实 / 具有某种知识、技能 / 了解某个人（状态动词，不能用进行时）
-- She knows about computers. 她懂电脑。

The only person I know who has a skeleton in the cupboard is George Carlton, and he is very proud of the fact. George studied medicine in his youth.

Instead of becoming a doctor, however, he became a successful writer of detective stories.

Instead of doing… 表示相反、没有、取而代之的是…

-- Instead of sleeping at home, he went shopping.

I once spent an uncomfortable weekend which I shall never forget at his house.

Which 指代 uncomfortable weekend

Shall 的用法：

1> (过去时 should)(shall 可缩写为 'll , shall not 常缩写为 shan't [FB:nt], 美国人常用 will 代替)

2> [用于主语为第一人称单复数，表示单纯将来] 将要，会

-- I shall be forty on my next birthday. 到下次生日，我就满四十岁。

-- We shall be on holiday at this time next week. 我们将于下星期这个时候度假。

-- I shall ring you up as soon as I arrive. 我一到就给你打电话。

3> [用于陈述句第二、三人称，表示说话者的意图、警告、命令、决心等，主语的行动受讲话者支配] 必须，应，可

-- He shall go. 他可以去。

-- You shall have an answer by tomorrow. 到明天你可以得到答复。

-- He shall have a bicycle for his birthday. 他可以得到一架自行车作为生日礼物。

-- She shall not enter my house again. 她不得再进我家。

4> [在问句中，征 询对方对于主语行动的意见(提供帮助，提出建议、要求给予指示和征求意见)，主要用于第一、三人称]... 好吗？要不要...?

-- Shall I carry your bag ? 我帮你拿手提包，好吗?

-- Shall he come to see you ? 要不要他来看你?

5> [用于第三人称，在条约、规定、法令等文件中表示义务或规定]应，必须

-- No reader shall remove a book from the library without consent of the librarian.
非经管理员同意，读者不准把书带出图书馆。

-- The National Party Congress shall be convened every five years .
党的全国代表大会每五年举行一次。

6> [在表示意图、要求等的从句中] 应该，要

-- I wish that you shall stay at home tonight. 我希望今晚你留在家里。

-- You say you will not do it, but I say you shall do it.
你说你不做这事，但是我说，你非做不可。

7> [用于将来时态的间接引语，与直接引语中的 shall 相应]将

-- He says that he shall [will] be glad to see you. (=He says, “I shall be glad to see you.”)
他说他将乐意来看你。

George showed me to the guestroom which, he said, was rarely used.

Show/lead sb to… 带领某人进入…

Which 指代 guestroom

was rarely used = was little used

rarely adv.很少地，罕有地

little adv.很少 n.少许 adj.很少的

He told me to unpack my things and then come down to dinner.
After I had stacked my shirts and underclothes in two empty drawers, I decided to hang one of the two suits I had brought with me in the cupboard.

I opened the cupboard door and then stood in front of it petrified.
stand in front of sth petrified　站在…前，目瞪口呆
-- We stood petrified as we felt the earthquake began.
Frighten　vt.使惊吓（在某个特定的场合受到惊吓）
-- I was frighten by a large dog.
Terrified　adj.恐惧的，受惊吓的（表示惊吓的程度非常强烈）
-- I was terrified when the tiger went towards me.
Afraid　adj.害怕，担心（表示一种状态，永久性的恐惧）
-- The girl is afraid of mouse.

A skeleton was dangling before my eyes.

The sudden movement of the door made it sway slightly and it gave me the impression that it was about to leap out at me.
gave me the impression that…　给某人以…的印象
that 引导同位语从句，进一步说明 impression 的内涵。
-- He gave me the impression that he will help me every day.
Be about to do sth　表示即将、就要（暗示动作即将发生）
-- I was about to go to bed when there was a knock at the door.
-- We were just about to leave when you telephoned.（多与 when 连用）
leap out at sb　跳出来扑向某人

Dropping my suit, I dashed downstairs to tell George.
This was worse than‘a terrible secret’; this was a real skeleton!
But George was unsympathetic.

‘Oh, that,’ he said with a smile as if he were talking about an old friend.
As if 引导虚拟语气

‘That's Sebastian. You forget that I was a medical student once upon a time.’
Sebastian　n.塞巴斯蒂安（古罗马的殉道者，一般被刻画为裸体青年）

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1>A　in what respect　在什么方面　（rarely adv.很少地，罕有地）
fact 指代柜子中真正有骷髅这件事
concerning　prep.关于，有关
-- I spoke to him concerning his behavior.　我和他谈了他的行为。

2>C　Underwear　n.内衣裤

3>A

4>A　　having 为现在分词做定语
C 选项中的 whom 应该为 who

5>C　　运用动词不定式修饰名词。（起定语从句的作用）
这样的名词前都有序数词：the first person, the only person, the last person

6>B　　something 有价值的事，有意义的事（代词：有价值或重要的人或物）
what = all 全部（范围太广）

7>A　　no sooner…than…

8>B

9>D　　owe　vt.欠(债等) vi.欠钱
has = own（vt.拥有 adj.自己的）

10>A
little　否定语义的副词
uncommonly　adv.不平常的，不平凡的，罕见地
preciously　adv.宝贵的，贵重的

11>D
item　n.项目，条款，物品
object　n.物体，目标，宾语，对象
trunk　n.树干，躯干，箱子，象鼻
belongings　n.财产，所有物　=　possession　n.（私人）财产（常用复数）

12>A
be about to do… = be on the point of…　即将、即可做某事
be concerned with　对…关心，与...有关，牵涉到，参与
think of　v.考虑，关心，想起

Lesson 25 The Cutty Sark 卡蒂萨克”号帆船

New words and expression 生词和短语

Impressive adj.给人深刻印象的
scene n.现场，场面，情景
-- This is the impressive scene. 这是给人深刻印象的一幕
impression n.印象
-- make a lasting impression to sb. 给人以不可磨灭的印象
-- have a false impression of sb. 对某人有错误的看法
-- gave sb. impression that… 给某人…的印象
impress vt.留下印象
-- What impressed me most is your diligence.（n.勤奋）
impress sb with… 用…给某人留下深刻的印象
-- you impressed me with your beautiful clothes.

Steamship n.蒸汽轮船

Vessel n.轮船，大木船（非常正式的表达方式，用于文学体中，可以代替 ship、boat）
-- a fishing vessel / a sailing vessel 帆船
Ship n.大船；舰艇
Boat n.小船，艇（比 ship 小，在非正式的场合可以替换）
-- a fishing boat

Era n.时期，时代（= a period time in history）
-- the beginning of the new era / the end of old era
Era n.时代，纪元（人类历史上很长的时期，以特别的事件为标志）
-- The Christian era starts with the birth of Christ. 公元(基督教时代)是从耶稣诞生起算。
-- Christian n.基督徒，信徒 adj.基督教的，信基督教的
-- We are now in a great new era of information. 我们现在正处于一个新的伟大的信息时代。
Time n.时代，时期（比 era 的时间短）
-- Roman time 罗马时代 / ancient time 古代
Age n.时代（特定的历史阶段，和其它词构成专有名词）
-- stone age 石器时代 / modern age 当今时代 / middle ages 中世纪

Java n.爪哇（印度尼西亚一岛）
Rudder n.舵
Roll v.颠簸，摇摆

Steer v.掌握方向（驾驶交通工具）
-- He steer the boat suddenly. 他突然改变了这艘船的方向。
Drive vt.驾驶马车、汽车、火车
Pilot vt.驾驶飞机、轮船

Temporary　adj.临时的（= lasting for a short/limited time）
-- temporary jobs　/　temporary houses
temporarily　adv.暂时的，临时的
temporariness　n.暂时
transient　adj.短暂的，瞬时的
-- transient happiness
permanent　adj.永久的，持久的
-- I have a permanent job here.　我在这里有一个永久的工作。
Contemporary　adj. 当代的，同时代的，同年龄的
-- He is a contemporary writer.

Plank　n.大块木板
Fit　v.安装
Equator　n.赤道
Delay　n.耽误

winning
Australia　n.澳洲，澳大利亚
Exactly　adv.正好，恰好，十分，确切地，精确地
Tradition　n.传统，惯例
Indian　adj.印度的，印度人的，印第安人的 n.印度人，印第安人，印第安语
tear　vt.vi.（tore, torn, tearing）
storm　n.暴风雨，暴风雪
danger　n.危险　　port　n.港，港口
win　vt.vi.（won, won, winning）

Text 课文

What piece of bad luck prevented the Cutty Sark from winning the race?
One of the most famous sailing ships of the nineteenth century, the Cutty Sark, can still be seen at Greenwich.
One of the most famous…　最著名的…之一

She stands on dry land and is visited by thousands of people each year.
Dry land　陆地
Each year = every year = per year
-- The aeroplane stands on dry land and is visited by thousands of people each year.

She serves as an impressive reminder of the great ships of the past.
Serve as = act as　担任，充当，起...作用
impressive reminder of…　给人留下深刻的印象，并使人回忆起…

Before they were replaced by steamships, sailing vessels like the Cutty Sark were used to

carry tea from China and wool from Australia.

Replace (vt.) = take place of

Steamship n.汽船，轮船

sailship = sailing ship = sailing vessel n.帆船

The Cutty Sark was one of the fastest sailing ships that has ever been built.

The only other ship to match her was the Thermopylae.

Match = be equal to 与…相匹敌，相比

Match in/for

-- No form of transport can match aeroplane for speed and comfortable.

-- Transport n.交通工具，运输系统，运输，运送

-- The hotel can't be matched for service and food. 这家旅馆服务和食物是无与伦比的。

-- No clothing can match your dress for beauty. 没有哪件衣服能和你的这条裙子相比。

To match her 做定语修饰 ship

Both these ships set out from Shanghai on June 18th, 1872 on an exciting race to England.

-- The two planes set out form New York on an unforgettable race.

Forgettable adj.容易被忘的，可忘记的

Unforgettable adj.忘不了的，令人难忘的

This race, which went on for exactly four months, was the last of its kind.

Which 指代 this race，引导非限定性定语从句。

-- The operation, which lasted two weeks, proved to be very difficult.

It marked the end of the great tradition of ships with sails and the beginning of a new era.

Ships with sails = sailing ship = sailing vessel n.帆船

Mark the end of… 标志着…的结束

The first of the two ships to reach Java after the race had begun was the Thermopylae, but on the Indian Ocean, the Cutty Sark took the lead.

= After the race had begun, the first of the two ships to reach Java was the Thermopylae,…

take the lead 处于领先地位 / lose the lead 失去领先地位

in the lead 处于领先地位（表示状态）

take over the lead 取得领先地位

It seemed certain that she would be the first ship home, but during the race she had a lot of bad luck.

It seem certain that…

She had a lot of bad luck = she was unlucky

In August, she was struck by a very heavy storm during which her rudder was torn away.

Be struck by a very heavy rain/storm 严重的遇到了雨/雪

Be caught in the rain/snow　遇到了雨/雪
During(介词)用于关系代词 which 之前
Tear away = destroyed = pull down (摧毁，推翻)

The Cutty Sark rolled from side to side and it became impossible to steer her.
It became impossible (for captain) to steer her

A temporary rudder was made on board from spare planks and it was fitted with great difficulty.
It = the temporary rudder
Fit = equip（vt.装备）

This greatly reduced the speed of the ship, for there was a danger that if she travelled too quickly, this rudder would be torn away as well.
There was a danger that + 同位语从句

Because of this, the Cutty Sark lost her lead.
Lost her lead　失去领先地位

After crossing the Equator, the captain called in at a port to have a new rudder fitted, but by now the Thermopylae was over five hundred miles ahead.
Call in at = (船)停靠, (人)拜访
-- He calls in at his friend's home every week.
To… = in order to… = so as to…　目的是…
Have sth done
Be now 到如今 = so far 到目前为止

Though the new rudder was fitted at tremendous speed, it was impossible for the Cutty Sark to win.
At tremendous speed = at fantastic speed = at enormous speed

She arrived in England a week after the Thermopylae.

Even this was remarkable, considering that she had had so many delays.
Remarkable　adj.不平常的，非凡的，值得注意的，显著的
Unusual　adj.不平常的，与众不同的，不寻常的
Uncommon　adj.不平常的，不平凡的，罕有的，难得的
Extraordinary　adj.非常的，特别的，非凡的

Considering（连接词）用来引导完整的语句
-- We should forgive him considering that he was ill badly
-- forgive　vt.原谅，饶恕
-- Considering his age, the little boy reads very well. 就他的年龄来说，这小孩读得算挺好的。

There is no doubt that if she had not lost her rudder she would have won the race easily.

There is no doubt that… = without any doubt

-- There is now doubt that he is guilty.　毫无疑问他是有罪的。

There is some doubt wh-…

-- There is some doubt whether he is guilty.　难以肯定他是否有罪。

与过去事实的相反的虚拟语气

-- If the houses of parliament had not been burned down, the Big Ben would never have been erected.（vt.使竖立，使直立，树立，建立）

与现在事实的相反的虚拟语气

-- If you talked less and ate more we would both enjoy our dinner.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1>C　　fame　n.名声，名望

rest upon = rest on　倚靠，依据，根据，把…靠在，

likeness　n.相象，相似物

a line of stones 一排石头 /　a line of argument 一连串的辩论

victory　n.胜利，战胜，

2>A

landmark　n.里程碑，划时代的事, (航海)陆标，地界标

celebrate　v.庆祝，祝贺，表扬，赞美

en route　adv.在途中

3>D

feat　n.功绩　n.技艺，武艺，壮举，技艺表演

gap　n.差距　n.缺口，裂口，间隙，缝隙, , 隔阂

make up　v.弥补

4>C　　b 中 still 的应该放在形容词 able 之前

5>B

The 和 A 的用法：

The 与单数名词连用，表示一类东西：

-- The lion is a wild animal. 狮子是一种野生动物。

-- The cow is a useful animal. 奶牛是有用的动物。

A

1>（一类事物中的）任何一个

-- Let's go to a Chinese restaurant. 我们去一家中餐餐馆。

-- We saw a good film on TV last night. 昨天晚上我们在电视中看到了一个好片子。

2> 任何

-- A square has four sides.　正方形有四条边。

-- A dog is an animal.　狗是动物。

6>D would 和 be going to 不能重复使用

7>A

8>D not 的位置不变

9>B
attract vt.吸引
-- The beautiful scenery attracts me.
appeal to 引起兴趣
-- The topic of the conversation never appeals to me.

10>A
set out 出发
set out on 出发去做某事
set out on the trip/journey/excursion 出发去旅行
depart vi.离开，起程
depart for 起程去某地

11>A
take the lead = go into the lead

12>
considering prep.鉴于，考虑到，顾及
in respect of 关于，就…来说 = with regard to 关于
according to prep.依据，按照
in view of 鉴于，考虑到（= considering）
account 应该和其它介词搭配

Lesson 26 Wanted: a large biscuit tin 购大饼干筒

New words and expression 生词和短语

Influence v.影响 （= have effect on）
-- Literature and art have great influence on people's ideology.
文学和艺术对人们的思想形态有很大的影响力。
-- ideology n.思想体系，意识形态，思想方式
-- Don't influenced by bad examples. 不要受这些坏事的影响。
Under the influence of… 受…的影响
-- We are under the influence of advertisement.
Have influence over sb. 有左右某人的能力
-- A teacher has influence over his students.
Exercise influence on sb's behalf
exercise vt.发挥，实[履]行，运用，行使
on sb.'s behalf 为了某人的利益，代表某人
behalf n.利益
-- What others think exercises great influence on most of us.
别人的想法对我们多数人产生很大的影响。
-- The boss exercises influence on employee's behalf.
Influence / affect 的区别：
influence 指"通过说服、举例等对行动、思想、性格等产生不易觉察到的,潜移默化的影响"
affect 指"产生的影响之大足以引起反应",着重"影响"的动作，有时含有"对...产生不利影响"的意思。
The bad examples will affect a lot number of students.
Influential adj.有影响的，有势力的

Pride v.骄傲 （proud adj.自豪的，得意的，骄傲的）
pride oneself on(upon)… 为…而感到骄傲
-- He prided himself on his driving skill.
take pride in… 以...为傲
be proud of… 以...为荣，以...自豪
pride n.自豪，自尊(心)，骄傲，傲慢
in the pride of 处于最佳状态，处于全盛时期
-- She is still young and in the pride of her beauty.
put one's pride in one's pocket 忍辱含垢，抑制自尊心

Taste n.鉴赏力
-- She has excellent taste in dress.
a taste of 尝一口，尝一点
-- Oh, let me have a taste of your coffee.
in good taste 得体，大方
-- The beautiful girl is in good taste.

In bad taste　粗俗，不礼貌
taste of　有什么的味道
-- The dish taste of fish.　这道菜有鱼腥味。
to one's taste　合某人的口味，称某人的心愿
-- He did what he wanted to do to his taste.
There is accounting for taste.　【谚】人各有所好。
He who has never tasted bitter knows not what is sweet.　不知黄连苦，哪知蜂蜜甜。
-- Bitter　adj.有苦味的，苦的，痛苦的
testable　adj.(= tasteable)可尝的，滋味好的
tasteful　adj.有鉴赏力的
tasteless　adj.没味道的，无鉴赏力的
taste blindness　n.味盲
taste marker　时尚的首创者

Exert　v.施加
Exert sth on sb
-- His wife exerted a lot pressure on him to change his job.
-- He likes to exert his authority on us.
Exert oneself to do sth.　努力，尽力，出力
-- He never exert himself to study hard.
exert every effect　尽一切努力
exertion　n.尽力，努力，发挥 n.行使，运用

Subtle　adj.微妙的，难以捉摸的（敏感的，敏锐的）
-- He is a subtle observer.　他是一个敏锐的观察家。
Subtly　adv.敏锐[感]的，有辨别力的，微妙的
Subtlety = Subtleness　n.微妙，明敏，聪明

Advertiser　n.做广告的人
Advertise　v.做广告，登广告
Advertisement　n.广告
Advertising　n.广告业，广告 adj.广告的

Classify　v.分类
-- The books are classified according to the subject.　这些书已经按学科分类了。
-- subject　n.题目，主题，科目，学科
classification　n.分类，分级，分类法
classified　adj.分类的 adj.机密的
classifiable　adj.可分类的
classifier　n.分类者,分类器

Magic　adj.有奇妙作用的
Sample　n.样品
Devise　v.设计，想出

Capture　v.吸引，赢得
-- His wonderful performance captured my attention.
Capture　vt.俘获，捕获，夺取
-- The police capture the two thieves.

Manufacturer　n.生产厂家，制造商
Wheelbarrow　n.独轮手推车
Boot　n.（汽车尾部的）行李箱
Ingredient　n.配料
Crane　n.起重机

Anticipate　v.预期，预料
Anticipate　vt.占先，抢先，预料到，预先做准备
-- Our attack failed because the enemy anticipated.
　我们的进攻失败了，因为敌人预先做了准备。
-- We anticipated the enemy would try to cross the river, so we decided to destroy the bridge.
　我们预料到敌人会通过这条河，所以我们决定把桥摧毁。
Anticipate（vt.期待，预期）= expect（vt.期待，预期）
-- We are expecting/anticipating a crowed of people at tonight's meeting.
Anticipate 强调以高兴或恐惧期待所想之事。
-- He is a man who is always anticipating trouble. 他是一个总是把结果想得很坏的人。
-- The students are anticipating a wonderful vacation.（n.假期，休假）

wanted　vt.征求，招聘（报刊广告等用语）
biscuit　n.饼干，小点心　　tin　n.罐，听
avoid　vt.避免，消除
Advertisement　n.广告（有两种读音）
Advertise, Advertising, Advertiser（都只有一种读音）
Ourselves
Effort　n.努力　　Product　n.产品，制品
Close　adj.谨慎的，彻底的，严格的
Weakness　n.弱点，缺点，虚弱，软弱
Enable　vt.使能够（有两种读音）
Manufacture　vt.制造，加工
Manufacturer　n.制造业者，制造商
Manufactory　n.制造厂，工厂
Manufacturable　adj.可制造的
Manufactured　adj.人造的
Bake　v.烘焙，烤
bring in　v.生产，挣得，介绍引进
barrow　n.手推车
weigh　vi.重(若干)
come along　一起来，一道走

boot n.[美]长统靴， [英](汽车的)行李箱
send vt.(sent, sent, sending)送，寄，发送
were
weigh vt.称...重量，称
close （s 发 z）
lorry n.卡车，载重汽车（美作：truck）
various adj.不同的，各种各样的

Text 课文

Who won the prize for the biggest biscuit?
No one can avoid being influenced by advertisements.
= Advertisements always exerts influence on everybody.
No, avoid 双重否定
-- No students can avoid being influenced by their teachers.

Much as we may pride ourselves on our good taste, we are no longer free to choose the things we want, for advertising exerts a subtle influence on us.
Much as we may pride ourselves on our good taste,…
= Although we may pride ourselves on our good taste very much,…
引导让步状语从句的词有：though, although, as
用 as 引导让步状语从句时，句子要采用倒装形式：（adj./adv./n./v.要用在 as 之前）
1> adj.+ as +主语+谓语
-- Rich as he is, he is not happy. 他虽然有钱，但是他不幸福。
-- Tired as I was, I tried to help them.
2> adv.+ as +从句
-- Much as I like you, I will not marry you.
-- Much as I hate do it, I must stay home and study English.
3> v.+ as +主语+阻动词
-- Try as they may, they will never success.
-- Object as my parents may, I decide to do it.

采用不同的句子结构、不同的词汇表达同一个语义：
No one can avoid being influenced by advertisements.
= Advertising exerts a subtle influence on us.

In their efforts to persuade us to buy this or that product, advertisers have made a close study of human nature and have classified all our little weaknesses.
Effort n.努力，成就（需要耗费精神或体力的事情，不可数名词）
-- It took a lot of effort to lift the box.
-- A great deal of effort has gone into this exhibition.
Effort n.努力（可数名词）
Make every effort
-- We are making every effort to study English.

In one's effort to do　为了干好某事

-- The company is selling off some of its buildings in their efforts to save money.

-- sell off　廉价卖清

-- In their effort to study English well, they spend a lot of time every day.

本句= Advertisers make every effort in order to sell their products.

Close　adj.谨慎的，彻底的，严格的

Make a close(careful) study of…　对…做了仔细的研究

Advertisers discovered years ago that all of us love to get something for nothing.

Discover = find out

Get something for nothing = get something free

-- Free　adj.adv.免费的

An advertisement which begins with the magic word FREE can rarely go wrong.

Wrong　adv.错误，不对

-- You've spelt the word wrong.　你把这个单词拼错了。

-- get it wrong　弄错（意思），误会

-- go wrong 弄错，变坏了

-- The Big Ben rarely goes wrong.

These days, advertisers not only offer free samples, but free cars, free houses, and free trips round the world as well.

these days　n.现在，目前

Not only…but…as well

They devise hundreds of competitions which will enable us to win huge sums of money.

Devise　vt.设计

-- They have devised the best way to have the party.

Enable sb to do sth　使某人能够做某事

-- Hard work will enable us to pass the examination, otherwise, no way.

Radio and television have made it possible for advertisers to capture the attention of millions of people in this way.

Make it possible for sb to do sth

-- His few material possessions make it possible for him to move form place to place with ease.

-- ease　n.容易，不费力 n.舒适，悠闲

-- The money he won made it possible for him to make a tour around the world.

Capture the attention of sb

= catch / receive / arrest / draw the attention of sb

During a radio programme, a company of biscuit manufacturers once asked listeners to bake biscuits and send them to their factory.

They offered to pay ＄10 a pound for the biggest biscuit baked by a listener.

Baked…：过去分词短语做定语

The response to this competition was tremendous.

response = reaction 反应

Before long, biscuits of all shapes and sizes began arriving at the factory.

Before long（不久以后）= soon（adv.立刻，不久）= shortly（adv.立刻，不久）

biscuits of all shapes, biscuits of all sizes

shoes of all sizes

One lady brought in a biscuit on a wheelbarrow. It weighed nearly 500 pounds.

A little later, a man came along with a biscuit which occupied the whole boot of his car.

Occupy（vt.占有，拥有，占领，占据）= take up 占据

All the biscuits that were sent were carefully weighed.

The largest was 713 pounds. It seemed certain that this would win the prize.

We (人称代词)后能加 sure，也能加 certain（we are sure that…）

It 后只能加 certain（It is certain that…）

But just before the competition closed, a lorry arrived at the factory with a truly colossal biscuit which weighed 2, 400 pounds.

Close = end

Colossal adj.巨大的，庞大的

It had been baked by a college student who had used over 1, 000 pounds of flour, 800 pounds 20 of sugar, 200 pounds of fat, and 400 pounds of various other ingredients.

It was so heavy that a crane had to be used to remove it from the lorry.

Remove（vt.vi.拿走，撤走，除去）= unload（vt.卸货，卸下）

The manufacturers had to pay more money than they had anticipated, for they bought the biscuit from the student for ＄24, 000.

than they had anticipated = than they had expected

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1>D tempt vt.诱惑，引诱，吸引，使感兴趣

disposal n.处理，处置，布置，安排，配置，支配 promote vt.宣传，推销（商品）

2>A

3>C

4>C be proud of

5>B love doing / love to do

6>A 本句描述的是事实，不该用 if 条件语句。

当修饰主语的定语从句过长而谓语过短，一般将定语从句置于句位。

7>C in length（adv.长度）, in height in width（adv.宽度方向上）, in weight, in depth

8>D

9>C some or other (不确定的)某一个 = this or that one or other 或者这个，或者那个

10>D attraction n.吸引，吸引力

11>B occupy（vt.占有，拥有，占领，占据）= take up 占据

12>A

Lesson 27 Nothing to sell and nothing to buy 不卖也不买

New words and expression 生词和短语

Philosopher n.哲学家

Wisdom n.智慧 （wise adj.英明的，明智的，聪明的）
-- He showed great wisdom. 他展示了非凡的智慧。
-- He is a man of wisdom. = He is a wise man.
cut one's wisdom teeth 开始懂事

Priest n.牧师

Spiritual adj.精神上的（adj.非物质的，精神的，灵魂的）
-- Spiritual life 精神生活, spiritual need 精神上的需要
spirited adj.精神饱满的，生机勃勃的，勇敢的
-- a spirited girl 一个勇敢的女孩
-- low-spirited 沮丧的, high-spirited 兴奋的
-- public-spirited 热心公益的, a spirited debate 热烈的辩论
mental adj.心理的，智力的
physical adj.身体的，物质的，自然的，物理的
spirituous adj.酒精的，含酒精的（liquor n.酒类）
-- spirituous liquor 烈性酒

Grudge v.不愿给，舍不得给
surgeon n.外科大夫
passer-by n.过路人（复数 passers-by）

dignity n.尊严（高贵）
lose one's dignity 丢面子，失去尊严
-- If you are afraid of losing your dignity, you can't expect to learn to speak a foreign language.
-- Although she is very poor, she has not lost her dignity. 她虽然很穷，但没有失去她的尊严。
Keep/stand on one's dignity 保持自己的尊严
pocket one's dignity [口]放下架子
with great dignity 仪态大方
-- Ladies and gentlemen should always act with great dignity.
太太先生们的举止应该总是十分端庄体面的。
Dignify vt.使有尊严，使高贵
Dignified adj.高贵的，有尊严的

deliberately adv.故意地（深思熟虑的，考虑周到的）

on purpose　adv.故意
-- He coughed on purpose to attract my attention.

consequence　n.后果，结果
in consequence　因此，结果
in consequence of...　因为...的缘故，由于
take the consequences of…　承担…责任
-- You have to take the consequences of the accidence.
Result　一种特殊的行动、运行或过程的结果
Effect　n.结果，效果，作用，影响
Outcome　n.结果，成果（自然的结果）
-- The outcome of the election was in doubt then.　当时大选的结果还看不准。

afflict　v.使苦恼，折磨
be afflicted with…　受…的折磨
-- He is afflicted with a disease (n.疾病，病)
affliction　n.痛苦，苦恼
afflictive　adj.带给人痛苦的，苦恼的，难受的

ease　n.容易
with ease　熟练地，轻而易举地
at ease　安逸，自由自在
be/feel ill at ease　局促不安，心神不宁
put sb. at his ease　使某人宽心，使某人感到无拘无束
-- The manager put his shop assistants at their ease.　（shop assistant　n.店员）
take one's ease　安心，放心
-- I take my ease to study English here.

nature　n.大自然

contempt　n.蔑视
in contempt of…　不顾…
-- In contempt of his father’s objection he went aboard.（objection　n.反对）
hold/have sb. in contempt　鄙视某人　= look down upon sb
-- I hold him in contempt because he has nothing to do every day.
Contemptible　adj.可鄙的，不齿的，可轻视的
-- He is a contemptible person.
Contemptuous　adj.轻蔑的，傲慢的，轻视的
Despite　n.轻视，怨[憎]恨，轻蔑，侮辱
Scorn（n.轻蔑，嘲笑）
-- pour scorn on　不屑一顾，嘲弄
Scornful（adj.轻视的，藐视的）
-- Glancing at her scornfully, he told her that the dress was sold.
　他轻蔑地看了她一眼，告诉她说，那件衣服卖出去了。

envious　adj.嫉妒的（羡慕的）
-- be envious of sb for his success = be envious of sb's success
　忌妒(羡慕)某人的成功
jealous　adj.妒忌的，羡慕的，吃醋的
-- She is jealous of our success.　她嫉妒我们的成就。

Tramp　vt.vt.徒步走，徒步旅行
Tramp　n.步行，徒步旅行，徒步旅行者
Tramp　n.流浪者，乞丐，妓女
Comfort　n.安慰，舒适
Material　adj.物质的 n.材料，原料
Goods　n.商品，货物
Willing　adj.乐意的，自愿的
Willingly　adv.自动地，欣然地
Precise　adj.恰好的，精确的，准确的
Precisely　adv.正好，恰恰，精确地，准确地
Society　n.社会
Skill　n.技巧，技艺，技能，(专门)技术
General　adj.一般的，普通的
Rule　n.常例，习惯，规律 n.规则，惯例
Arouse　vt.唤醒，唤起，鼓励，引起
Independence　n.独立，自主
Sacrifice　v.牺牲，献出 n.牺牲，献身
Choose　vt.vi.（chose, chosen, choosing）挑选，选择
Aware　adj.知道的，明白的，意识到的
Anxiety　n.忧虑，焦急
Care　n.烦恼，忧虑
Felt [felt]　（feel 的过去式和过去分词）

Text 课文

What is the most important thing for a tramp?
It has been said that everyone lives by selling something.
It is said that…　据说…
Live by = to make enough money to feed oneself
Live by…　以某种职业为生
Live on…　依靠某种食物维持生命，或靠某人生活。
-- Sheep and cows live on grasses.
-- He lives chiefly on fruit.　（Chiefly　adv.首要，主要地）
-- Though he is over thirty, he still lives on his parents.

In the light of this statement, teachers live by selling knowledge, philosophers by selling wisdom and priests by selling spiritual comfort.

In the light of… 按照，根据，考虑到，从...的观点
In the light of = according to = taking into account
-- The theory has been abandoned in the light of modern discovery.
-- In the light of the evidence it was decided to take the manufacturers to court.(n.法院，庭院)
In accordance with... 依照…(用在法律上，更加正式)
-- In accordance with the law
-- In accordance with the regulation (n.规则，规章)

Though it may be possible to measure the value of material goods in terms of money, it is extremely difficult to estimate the true value of the services which people perform for us.
in terms of 按照，在...方面，就…而言，关于
-- He thinks of every thing in terms of people's interests.(n.利益)
他依据(按照)人民的利益考虑任何事。
In terms of
= in respect of（关于，就…来说）, with respect to（关于，至于，谈到）
= in/with regard to（关于）, as regards（关于，至于）

There are times when we would willingly give everything we possess to save our lives, yet we might grudge paying a surgeon a high fee for offering us precisely this service.
There are times when… 有的时候…
Would 表达一种心理的愿望，并不表示过去。
-- There are time when we would willingly give everything we possess to bring our family happiness.
Grudge vt.吝啬，不愿给，勉强给（后面要和名词和动名词搭配）
-- I grudge wasting time on this. 我不愿在这件事上浪费时间。
-- He grudge paying so much money for such bad food.

The conditions of society are such that skills have to be paid for in the same way that goods are paid for at a shop. Everyone has something to sell.
The conditions of society are such = Such are the conditions of society

Tramps seem to be the only exception to this general rule. Beggars almost sell themselves as human beings to arouse the pity of passers-by. But real tramps are not beggars.

They have nothing to sell and require nothing from others.
Require sth from…

In seeking independence, they do not sacrifice their human dignity.
In seeking independence = In the course of seeking independence
In 和动名词搭配，表示在…的过程当中。
-- In speaking to him, I found that he stammers.（v.口吃，结巴着说出）
On 和动名词搭配，表示一…就…
-- In crossing the hall, I noticed my shoes was undone.（adj.脱去的，解开的，放松的）
在进入大厅的时候，我注意到我的鞋带松了。

-- On crossing the hall, I noticed my shoes was undone.
一进入大厅的时候，我就注意到我的鞋带松了。

A tramp may ask you for money, but he will never ask you to feel sorry for him.
He has deliberately chosen to lead the life he leads and is fully aware of the consequences.
Fully = completely

He may never be sure where the next meal is coming from, but he is free from the thousands of anxieties which afflict other people.
be free from… 不受…的影响，免于...（= without）
-- The old lady is never free from pain.
-- free from error 没有错误, free from anxiety 没有忧虑
-- He is leading a life free from care and anxieties.
Care（n.烦恼，忧虑） anxiety（n.忧虑，焦急，渴望，热望）

His few material possessions make it possible for him to move from place to place with ease.
Make it possible for sb to do sth

By having to sleep in the open, he gets far closer to the world of nature than most of us ever do.

He may hunt, beg, or steal occasionally to keep himself alive; he may even, in times of real need, do a little work; but he will never sacrifice his freedom.
keep oneself alive 为了生存

We often speak of tramps with contempt and put them in the same class as beggars, but how many of us can honestly say that we have not felt a little envious of their simple way of life and their freedom from care?
With +名词（表示具有、带有）
-- How many of us can honestly say that we wouldn't like to learn English well?

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1>A circumstance n.环境，详情，境况

2>D criminal n.罪犯，犯罪者 adj.犯罪的，犯法的，罪恶的
compensate v.偿还，补偿
inconvenience n.麻烦，不方便之处

3>B in moments of truth = truly
undignified adj.无尊严的
compare v.比较，相比，比喻 n.比较
burden v.负担 n.担子，负担
livelihood n.生计，谋生

4>B

5>B　　a 中的 have to 用的不恰当
对两者的否定
Neither…nor…
Nothing…nor…
Nor 位于句首，倒装。

6>B

7>D　　contemptuously　adv.轻蔑地
speak of　谈及，说到
speak for　代表...讲话，为…辩护
speak on　就…而发言
speak to　与…谈话，向...说

8>C

9>C
financial　adj.财政的，金融的
insure　vt.给...保险　v.确保
sickness　n.患病，疾病，不适，恶心

10>
from place to place　从一个地方到另一个地方；各地，到处
= here and there　各处，到处
one way or another　无论如何，某种方法
in every sense　在各种意义上
-- He is a cheat in every sense.（cheat n.欺骗，骗子）

11>B　　to survive = keep himself alive

12>C
look down upon/on　蔑视，瞧不起
convict　vt.（常与 of 连用）证明有…罪；宣判有…罪
-- He was convicted of murder.　他被判犯有谋杀罪。
Blame　vt.（常与 for 连用）责备，谴责　n.过失，责备
-- She blamed me for the accident.
Condemn　vt.判刑，处刑（常与 to 连用）判以死刑或无期徒刑
be condemned to death　被判死刑
-- The prisoner was condemned to death.

Lesson 28 Five pounds too dear 五镑也太贵

New words and expression 生词和短语

Wares n.货物，商品
Ware n.器皿，陶器，物品（总称，常用于复合词）
-- silverware 银器 / ironware 铁器 / chinaware 陶器 / glassware 玻璃器皿
-- software 软件 / hardware 五金器具, (电脑的)硬件
-- a popular ware 热门货 / small wares 小百货
goods n.商品，货物（商店里出售的物品）
-- half-done goods 半成品 / home made goods = native goods 国货
-- leather goods 皮件 / frozen goods 冻结货物 / consumer goods 日用消费品
commodity n.商品，物品（总称，正式的经济学术语）
-- commodity price 商品价格， commodity economy 商品经济
-- commodity market 商品市场， agricultural commodity 农产品

Anchor v.停航下锚
Deck n.甲板
Silverware n.银器

Tempt v.吸引，引诱
Tempt sb to do sth 吸引某人做某事
Temptation n.勾引，诱惑，引诱
-- The temptation to steal is greater than ever before - especially in large shops.
偷窃的诱惑力比以往任何时候更强烈了,在大商店里尤其如此。
Tempting adj.诱惑人的，吸引人的 = （attractive adj.吸引人的，有魅力的）

Bargain v.讨价还价
Bargain n.交易，合同交易，协议
-- a good bargain 赚钱的生意 / make a bargain 成交，达成协议
-- drive a hard bargain with sb 极力和某人讨价还价
-- bargain with sb for sth. 和某人就某事讨价还价
-- bargain away 议价出售

Disembark v.下船上岸（= debark）
Embark v.上船，上飞机
-- He disembarked. 他下船上了岸。
-- He decided to embark. 他决定上船。

Assail v.纠缠
-- He was assailed with worries.
Afflict vt.使痛苦，折磨
-- Tramps can keep free from the thousands of anxieties which afflict other people.

Marble　n.小玻璃球
Inscribe　v.刻写，雕

Favour　n.好处，优惠
in favor of　赞成，支持
-- I am in favor of stopping work now.　我赞成现在停止工作。
in sb.'s favor　得某人欢心，对某人有利
-- The situation, both at home and aboard, is in our favor.
out of favor　失宠，不利
by favor of sb 请面交给某人(信封上用语)
do sb a favor　给某人恩惠
favorite　adj.心爱的，受宠的
favorite　n.受宠的人或物
favorable　adj.赞成的，赞许的，讨人喜欢的

Gesticulate　v.（讲话时）打手势

Outrageous　adj.出人预料的，令人不悦的
-- He played an outrageous joke.
Outrage　n.暴行，侮辱，愤怒 vt.凌辱，强奸，虐待，伤害，迫害
Rage　n.愤怒，情绪激动，狂暴，精神错乱
-- My father was in a rage last night.　我父亲昨天晚上十分生气。
fly into a rage 勃然大怒

Thrust　v.硬塞给
Thrust sth into…　塞进…
-- He thrust the pen into my hand.
Thrust aside　推开
-- He thrust the girl aside.
Thrust oneself forward
-- He thrust himself forward in the crowd.
thrust oneself in　强行闯入，干涉，探听（= thrust one's nose into）
-- Don’t thrust yourself in private sth.
thrust sth. on/upon sb.　强卖给某人
-- Don’t thrust your idea on me. = Don’t exert your idea on me.
thrust out　推出，逐出，解雇

other words:
speed vt.vi.（speeded, speeded, speeding）或（**sped**, sped, speeding）
liner　n.班机，定期轮船
rug　n.(小)地毯，垫子
Persia　n.波斯（西南亚国家，现在的伊朗）
Iran　n.伊朗

Iranian adj.伊朗的 n.伊朗人（= Irani）
Silk n.蚕丝，丝，丝绸，绸缎
copper n.铜，警察
tradesman n.零售商，工匠，手艺人
conceal vt.隐藏，隐蔽，隐瞒
diamond n.钻石，菱形
intention n.计划，目的
firmly adv.强有力的
approach vt.vi.走近，靠近
close adj.近的，近亲的，紧密的，严格的
neat adj.整齐的，整洁的
indicate vt.指出，显示，象征，预示
hold up v.举起，支撑，继续下去
wildly adv.狂暴的，激动的，愤怒的 adv.野的，野生的，野性的
offer n.出价，提议
eventual adj.最后的，结果的
-- eventual success [failure] 最后的成功[失败]
eventually adv.最后，终于，结果
shrug vt.vi.（表示怀疑或不感兴趣）耸肩
shoulder n.肩，肩部，侧翼
readily adv.乐意地，欣然，容易地
throw up 猛地举起
especially adv.特别，尤其

Text 课文

Why was even five pounds‘too dear’?
Dear（adj.昂贵的）= Costly（adj.昂贵的，贵重的）= Expensive（adj.费钱的，昂贵的）

Small boats loaded with wares sped to the great liner as she was entering the harbour.
Small boats sped to the great liner（主干）
Loaded with 装载，运载 = filled with
-- The boat was loaded with wooden goods.
Loaded with wares 为过去分词做定语修饰 boats（= that was loaded with wares）
Speed v.迅速驶向
-- Speed down hill 向山下疾驶 / Speed up hill 向山上疾驶
Speed by 迅速驶过
-- Our holiday speed by. 我们的假期迅速过去。

Before she had anchored, the men from the boats had climbed on board and the decks were soon covered with colourful rugs from Persia, silks from India, copper coffee pots, and beautiful handmade silverware.
The men (coming) from the boat 小船上的人们
-- a plane (coming) from New York

on board 在船上，在公共交通工具内
be covered with 盖着，覆着
handmade adj.手工的，手制的

It was difficult not to be tempted.（双重否定）
-- It was difficult/impossible not to be tempted by the beautiful shoes.

Many of the tourists on board had begun bargaining with the tradesmen, but I decided not to buy anything until I had disembarked.
Tradesman n.零售商，工匠
bargain with sb 和某人讨价还价
on board 介词短语修饰 tourists
not…until…
-- 我决定回家之前什么都不做 I decided to do nothing until I had got home.
-- They didn't reach the school until they had already passed by two village.

I had no sooner got off the ship than I was assailed by a man who wanted to sell me a diamond ring.
had no sooner…than… （no sooner 位于句首要倒装）
I had no sooner got off the ship than = no sooner had I got off the ship than
一…就…的表达方式：
-- as soon as / the moment that / on doing
-- had no sooner…than… / had hardly…when…

I had no intention of buying one, but I could not conceal the fact that I was impressed by the size of the diamonds.
I have no intention of doing 不打算做某事
-- I have no intention of changing my mind.
-- He said has no intention of looking for another job.
The fact that（that 引导的是同位语，不能换成 which）
I could not conceal the fact that… 我不能隐藏…事实
-- He could not conceal the fact that he was taken in.（take in 欺骗）
impress vt.留下印象
be impressed by/at/with… 被…深深打动/感动
-- I was most impressed by his behavior.
What impressed me most was… 给我印象最深的是…
-- What impressed me most was the beauty here.
Impression n.印象
Make/create a bad impression on sb. 给某人留下不良的印象
-- If you don't work hard, it will make a bad impression on the boss.
Make/create quite an impression on sb. 给某人留下极深的印象
-- Your speech makes quite an impression on me.
Impression n.印，印痕
-- The dog left the impression of his paws in the wet cement.（n.水泥）

-- He made a deep impression in the glass.

Some of them were as big as marbles.

As…as… 象…一样

-- As strong as horse / as white as snow

The man went to great lengths to prove that the diamonds were real.

Length n.长度，长

go to great(considerable, any) lengths to do… 竭尽全力做…

-- He go to great lengths to pass the examination.

Real adj.真实的（以实际或真实状态存在或发生的）

-- real objects 真的物件 / a real illness 真的疾病

-- real people 真实的人 / a real problem 一个真实的问题

-- a film based on real life 一部以真实生活为基础的影片

Real adj.天然的，非人工或假造的 （= Genuine）

-- This ring is real gold. = This ring is genuine gold. 这枚戒指是真金的。

Genuine（adj.正品的非伪造的，非假冒的）

反义词：Fake（adj.伪造的，捏造的 n.捏造者，冒牌货，赝品）

-- Is this a genuine vase? No, it is a fake.

True adj.真实的（与事实或现实一致的、相符合的）

-- Only parts of his story are true.

反义词：False adj.虚伪的，假的（与真理或事实相反的）

-- false tales of bravery. 不真实的英勇故事

As we were walking past a shop, he held a diamond firmly against the window and made a deep impression in the glass. It took me over half an hour to get rid of him.

Pass = by 走过

It take sb sometimes to do sth. 某事花费某人多少时间

-- It took me two months to read the book.

Get rid of 摆脱，除去

Cure vt.治愈

-- to cure a patient 治愈病人

-- I hope the doctor can cure the pain in my shoulder. 我希望医生能治好我肩上的疼痛。

Get rid of = cure

-- I have tried all sorts of medicine to get rid of this cold.

Get rid of = pay off 还清

-- He can never get rid of his debts.

Get rid of = wash off 洗刷掉 （stain n.污点，瑕疵）

-- He thought I can never wash off this stains.

The next man to approach me was selling expensive pens and watches. I examined one of the pens closely. It certainly looked genuine.

The next man to approach me 第二个走近我的人

At the base of the gold cap, the words‘made in the U. S. A.’had been neatly inscribed.

At the base of… 在…的低部

The man said that the pen was worth £50, but as a special favour, he would let me have it for £30.

as a special favor 做为一种特殊的优惠

for 出…价钱

tradesman n.零售商，工匠

As a special favor, the tradesman would let me have the watch for £20.

I shook my head and held up five fingers indicating that I was willing to pay £5.

Indicating… 意思是说…（现在分词做状语）

I held up ten fingers indicating that I was willing to pay $10.

Gesticulating wildly, the man acted as if he found my offer outrageous, but he eventually reduced the price to £10.

Gesticulating 现在分词做伴随状语

Act as if… 行为、举止好象…（as if = as though）

-- He acted as if he has never lived in England before.

Outrageous adj.令人不能容忍的，令人震惊的，令人愤慨的

Eventually adv.最后，终于（= at last）

Shrugging my shoulders, I began to walk away when, a moment later, he ran after me and thrust the pen into my hands.

Shrugging 现在分词做伴随状语

Though he kept throwing up his arms in despair, he readily accepted the £5 I gave him.

Keep doing sth. 不断地做某事

in despair 绝望的

readily（adv.乐意地，欣然，容易地） = willingly（adv.心甘情愿的，欣然的，自愿的）

I felt especially pleased with my wonderful bargain ---- until I got back to the ship.

Be pleased with = be satisfied with 对...感到满意

No matter how hard I tried, it was impossible to fill this beautiful pen with ink and to this day it has never written a single word!

No matter how = however（conj.不管用何种方法 adv.无论如何）

fill with 使充满

to this day = up to now = until now = till now = so far 到现在为止，迄今

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1>B merchandise n.商品，货物（= goods）

-- lay out 摆开，展示

2>C pester（vt.使烦恼，纠缠）= assail（vt.攻击，困扰）

3>B 4>D 5>C 6>A 7>D

8>C

resist vt.抵抗，反抗

-- resist aggression 抵抗侵略 / resist heat 耐热

-- resist temptation 抵制引诱

-- I was unable to resist laughing. 我忍不住笑了。

9>C

afterwards adv.然后，后来地（可以单独使用）

-- soon afterwards, shortly afterwards

after adv.在后，后来（不能单独使用）

-- two days after

later adv.后来，过后

-- I will see you later. 等会儿再见。

-- But some time later it began to rain. 但过了些时候开始下雨了。

The later 后者

10>B intend to do 打算做某事

11>B

irritating adj.使愤怒的，使人不愉快的

outrageous adj.无耻的，可恶的，令人不可容忍的（= preposterous）

preposterous adj.荒谬的，可笑的

-- That's a preposterous excuse! 那是一个荒谬的藉口!

-- What a preposterous idea! 多么荒谬的想法!

-- a preposterous old woman 一位可笑的老妇人

hilarious adj.热闹的，高兴的，狂欢的

unspeakable adj.无法形容的,不能以言语表达的,可怕的,坏透了的

= terrible adj.很糟的，极坏的

12>A No matter how = however

Lesson 29 Funny or not? 是否可笑？

本课的 flash 不全

New words and expression 生词和短语

Largely adv.在很大程度上
-- His success was largely due to luck.

Universal adj.普遍的
universal agent n.全权代理人
universal time n.(= Greenwich Time)世界时间,格林尼治时
universal joint n.[机]万向接头
万向接头：一种接头或连轴节，能使互相不在一条线上的机械零件在传输旋转运动时在任意方向上具有有限的运动自由度。
Universality n.普遍性，一般性，多方面性，广泛性
Universally adv.普遍地，全体地，到处
-- Acknowledged adj.公认的
-- It's universally acknowledged that English is get more and more important.
Universe n.宇宙，世界，万物

Comic adj.喜剧的，可笑的
Comedian n.滑稽演员，喜剧演员
Comedy n.喜剧，喜剧性的事情
-- Tragic adj.悲惨的，悲剧的
-- Tragedy n.悲剧，惨案，悲惨，灾难
-- Tragedian n.悲剧演员，悲剧作家

Distasteful adj.讨厌的 （adv. distastefully）
Unpleasant adj.使人不愉快的，讨厌的
Displeasing adj.使人不愉快的，令人发火的
-- The idea is distasteful to me.

Pester v.一再要求，纠缠 （assail vt.攻击，困扰）
pester sb. to do sth. 以某事烦扰某人；缠住某人讨取某物；麻烦某人做某事
pester sb. with sth. 以某事烦扰某人；缠住某人讨取某物；麻烦某人做某事
-- He continually pesters his boss with demands.
pester sb. for sth. 以某事烦扰某人；缠住某人讨取某物；麻烦某人做某事
-- Don't pester me for the trifle.（n.小事，琐事，微不足道的东西）

Dread v.惧怕
Dread + 名词，动名词，动词不定式
-- We were dreading his arrival. 我们正担心他来呢！
-- He dreaded having to meet his parents.

-- I dread to think what will happen if he finds out.
Dreadful　adj.令人恐惧的，令人不快的
-- a dreadful disaster 可怕的灾难
dreaded　adj.感到恐惧的
in dread of….　害怕某人[某事]
-- We are in dread of insects.（insect n.昆虫）
terrify　vt.使恐怖，恐吓
horrify　v.使恐怖，使极度厌恶，惊骇
fear　v.害怕，畏惧，为...担心

Recovery　n.康复
Plaster　n.熟石膏

console　v.安慰，慰问
-- Grief　n.悲痛，伤心事，不幸，忧伤
-- He is consoling his friend in grief for the loss of child.

hobble　v.瘸着腿走
-- I hurt my foot while getting off the bus, and had to hobble home.
　我在下公共汽车时脚受了伤，只好一拐一拐地走回家。
Hobble　n.困难，窘惑
-- be in (get into) a hobble 陷于窘境

compensate　v.补偿
to compensate sb. For　为…向某人赔偿
-- Nothing can compensate the young mother for the loss of her favrourite daughter.
　年轻的妈妈丧失了自己心爱的女儿是任何东西也弥补不了的。
Compensate　v.酬报（for）
-- The company compensates her for extra work. 公司因她的额外工作而给她报酬。

mumble　v.喃喃而语
-- He mumbled sth. to me but I could not hear what he said.
　他对我咕哝了几句，可是我没听清他说的什么。
mumbler　n.说话含糊的人

basis　n.基础，基本，根据
basic　adj.基本的 n.基本，要素，基础 n.[计]BASIC 语言，基本高级语言
bring up　教育，养育
mysteriously　adv.神秘的
bind　vt.vi.（bound, bound, binding）缚，绑
-- be bound up with　与...有密切关系
sense　n.意思，意义 n.感觉，知觉，感知
characteristic　n.特性，特征
Russian　n.俄国人，俄语 adj.俄国的，俄国人的，俄语的

Situation n.情形，境遇
-- Comic situation 喜剧情节
appeal n.魅力，吸引力，感染力
stem vi.[美]起源，发生 n.【植】茎，干，花梗，叶柄
tragic adj.悲惨的，悲剧的
violent adj.猛烈的，狂暴的，剧烈的
-- a violent death 横死，暴死
judge vi.下判断，作出裁判
celebration n.庆祝，庆典
eve n.前夕，前日 n.节日的前夜（-- New Year's Eve 除夕）
n.（重大事件的）前夕（-- on the eve of the great war 大战前夕）

Text 课文

What is the basis of‘sick’humour?

Whether we find a joke funny or not largely depends on where we have been brought up.

The sense of humour is mysteriously bound up with national characteristics.

A Frenchman, for instance, might find it hard to laugh at a Russian joke.
I found it difficult to finish the work in a day.
It was difficult not to be attempted.

In the same way, a Russian might fail to see anything amusing in a joke which would make an Englishman laugh to tears.

Most funny stories are based on comic situations.
be based upon… 基于…
-- This news report is based entirely on fact. 这篇新闻报导是完全根据实际情况写成的。

In spite of national differences, certain funny situations have a universal appeal.

No matter where you live, you would find it difficult not to laugh at, say, Charlie Chaplin's early films.

However, a new type of humour, which stems largely from the U.S., has recently come into fashion.
stem from 源自，起源于
-- His feeling of hate stem from envy.（n.羡慕，妒嫉）
-- Her interest in flowers stemmed from her childhood in the country.
stem from 源自，起源于
= come from 出身于，由...引起，是...的结果，是在...生长大的
= arise from 由...而引起，由...而产生
= originate from 由某人发起(首创)

Originate　vi.发源，开始，发生
-- The quarrel originated in a misunderstanding. 争吵是由于误解而引起的。
-- The film originated from a short story. 这部电影取材于一篇短篇小说。
Originate　vt.使产生，创始，创办，发明，发起，引起
-- They originated the plan. 他们首先提出这一计划。

come into fashion 流行起来，开始风行
come into power (开始)掌权，上台
call into being 使产生，使出现，建立，成立

It is called‘sick humour’.

Comedians base their jokes on tragic situations like violent death or serious accidents.

Many people find this sort of joke distasteful.

The following example of‘sick humour’will enable you to judge for yourself.

A man who had broken his right leg was taken to hospital a few weeks before Christmas.

From the moment he arrived there, he kept on pestering his doctor to tell him when he would be able to go home.

He dreaded having to spend Christmas in hospital.
Dread to do = dread doing

Though the doctor did his best, the patient's recovery was slow.

On Christmas Day, the man still had his right leg in plaster.

He spent a miserable day in bed thinking of all the fun he was missing.
Miserable　adj.痛苦的，悲惨的，可怜
A miserable day = a terrible day
think of　考虑，设想，想象
-- When I saw you I thought of my sister
think of doing sth
-- He is thinking of setting a school.
Spend time doing sth.
By 通过某种方式
-- I arrive here by train.

The following day, however, the doctor consoled him by telling him that his chances of being able to leave hospital in time for New Year celebrations were good.
Chance 在表达机会这个概念的时候，经常采用复数形式。

One’s chances of doing sth are good　某人做某事的可能性很大

-- My chances of passing the examination are good.

-- His chances of being dismissed are good.

remote　adj.遥远的，偏僻的

adj.极小的，细微的，模糊的（= slight adj.轻微的，微小的）

One’s chances of doing sth are remote　某人做某事的可能性很小

-- His chances of arriving here by bicycle are remote.

The man took heart and, sure enough, on New Year's Eve he was able to hobble along to a party.

take heart　鼓起勇气，打起精神

-- He took heart when he got the good news.

lose heart　灰心，泄气

-- If they knew how difficult it was to drill through the hard rock they will lose heart.

To compensate for his unpleasant experiences in hospital, the man drank a little more than was good for him.

To = in order to

More than…　超出…范围

-- The cake is more than I can eat.

More than 后面可以引导省略主语的比较从句，从句中常见的形容词有：necessary, good, Possible, anticipate, expect, feel, suggest, report, require, think.

-- The man drank a little more than was good for him. = The man drank a little more than what was good for him.

-- There were more accidents than (what) was reported.

-- He eats more than (what/it) is good for him.

As 后面可以引导省略主语的比较从句

-- He arrived as I expected. = He arrived as (what) was expected.

-- He eats as much as (what/it) is good for him.

-- The man drank as much as (what) was good for him.

比较：

1>-- He eats more than is good for him.　他总是吃的正好。

-- He eats as much as is good for him.　他总是吃的过多。

2>-- The man drank a little more than was good for him.

-- The man drank as much as was good for him.

委婉的表达方式：

The man drank a little more than was good for him.

She is quite fat. = She isn’t right fat.（Right　adv.正确的，合适的，恰当的）

In the process, he enjoyed himself thoroughly and kept telling everybody how much he hated hospitals.

in the process of…　在...的过程中

In the process = during the party（上文中的 party）　27-04

-- Yesterday I went swimming. In the process, I have a very good time.

-- I was looking for your house and got lost in the process.

Keep telling = keep on telling

How much = To what extent

-- How much can I trust him? = To what extend can I trust him?

Extent n.程度，范围，广度，宽度，长度

He was still mumbling something about hospitals at the end of the party when he slipped on a piece of ice and broke his left leg.

When = at that moment

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1>C the funny side of… …可笑方面的

fundamentally adv.基础地，根本地

be related to… 与…有关系

2>B

3>A point n.要点 taken 过去分词做后置定语 illustrate vt.阐明

4>A The French 法国人的总称

a French 应改为 a Frenchman（任意一个法国人） a man in France 一个在法国的人

5>A

most adj.最多的，多数的，大部分的

adv.最，最多，很，十分，最，最大的，其中大多数，极其

n.大多数，大部分

-- most student

-- most of the student

majority n.（常与 of 连用）多数；半数以上 the majority of… 大多数…

-- The majority of children in our class have brown eyes. 我们班大多数孩子是棕色眼睛。

Mostly adv.主要地，大部分，通常

6>A who had the right leg → who had had the right leg（应该用过去完成时）

7>B no sooner…than…

8>C by drinking

By 通过某种手段 （是重点，在损坏的部分）

9>D do one's best = try one's best 尽全力

10>D console = comfort vt.安慰，藉慰

11>C how much = to what extend

at length（adv.最后，详细地）= in detail（adv.详细地）

to one's cost 付出了代价才..., 吃亏后才...

-- Wasp's stings are serious, as I know to my cost.

-- Wasp（n.黄蜂） Sting（n.刺，刺痛，针刺）

12>B

in the same way adv.同样地

to the same effect 以相同的意思

Lesson 30 The death of a ghost 幽灵之死

New words and expression 生词和短语

Labourer n.劳动者（劳工）
-- 强调使用体力，而不是技能，在户外工作。
Workman n.技工，工匠
-- 具有某种工艺技能的半熟练工人
worker n.工人（泛指）
-- 具有更高水平的工人
-- white-collar worker 白领职员(指非体力劳动者)
-- blue-collar worker 蓝领工人(指体力劳动者)
-- a factory worker 工厂工人 / farm worker 雇农，农业工人
farmhand（n.农业工人，农场工人）= farm labourers = farm worker

Overnight adv.一夜期间
Hay n.干草
Corn n.谷物
-- Corn n.［英］谷物，五谷，小麦 ［美、加、澳］玉米 ［苏、爱］燕麦
Moonlight n.月光

Conscientious adj.认真的
Conscientious adj.尽责的，凭良心的，谨慎的
-- a conscientious teacher
-- a conscientious worker 勤勤恳恳的工作者
conscious adj.有意识的，神志清醒的
-- He is hurt but still conscious. 他受了伤，不过神志还清醒。
conscious adj.了解的，察觉的
-- She was not conscious of his presence in the room. 她不晓得他在这房间里。
-- I was conscious of her presence. 我知道她在场。

Suspect v.怀疑
Suspect vt.怀疑，猜疑，疑心
-- I suspected her motives. 我怀疑她的动机。
Suspect sb to be
-- suspect him to be ill 猜想他病了
-- I suspect him to be a spy.
suspect sb of doing/n
-- I suspect him of stealing the car.
-- suspect sb. of giving false information 怀疑某人提供假情报
-- suspect sb. of a crime 怀疑某人犯罪
Suspect that…
-- I suspect that his girlfriend hide her true feelings.

-- We suspect they'll be a little late. 我们揣想他们会晚来一会儿。
Suspicion n.猜疑，怀疑
Suspicious adj.可疑的，引起怀疑的
-- Cats are suspicious of human beings.
Suspect 表示一种肯定的语义, Doubt 表示一种否定的语义
Doubt vt.怀疑，不信，拿不准（用 that，往往表示非常怀疑）
-- I doubt the truth of it. 我怀疑它的真实性。
-- I doubt that he will come. 我看他不见得会来。
-- I doubt whether [if] he is at home. 我看他不一定在家。
-- I do not doubt (but) that he can recite it. 我相信他能把它背下来。
-- Can you doubt that he will win? 你不相信他会获胜吗?
-- I doubt what he said. 我不相信他说的话。
Doubtful adj.怀疑的；不信任的
-- It is doubtful that he will come.
Doubtable adj.可疑的，令人怀疑的

Desert v.（军队中）开小差
-- The soldier deserted his army. 这个士兵开小差。
Desert vt.vi.遗弃，抛弃，舍弃（= abandon vt.放弃，遗弃）
违背法律、道义、责任、信仰
-- desert the army, desert school, desert his duty, desert his family
Abandon vt.抛弃，舍弃，离弃（被迫放弃所喜爱的或所负责的东西）
-- He had to abandon his favorite research because of the war.
-- abandon one's home 离弃家园
-- He abandoned his wife and went away with all their money.（research n.研究，调查）
他抛弃了妻子还带走了两人所有的钱。
Forsake vt.(-sook, -saken)
舍弃，放弃，背弃，和…脱离关系
-- He forsook his family.
-- He has forsaken his wife and children. 他遗弃了他的妻子和孩子。
革除(旧风习等)，抛弃(坏习惯)
-- You must forsake your bad habits. 你必须革除你的坏习惯。
Discard vt.放弃，丢弃，抛弃（= give up as useless）
-- Everyday we discard a large amount of rubbish.

Regiment n.（军队）团
Action n.战斗
Recluse n.隐士

give up 放弃，抛弃，认输
labour n.劳动，劳力，劳工 v.劳动，苦干
cowshed n.牛棚，牛舍
oblige vt.迫使，责成

Text 课文

Why did the two brothers keep the secret?

For years, villagers believed that Endley Farm was haunted.

Haunt vt.闹鬼

-- It is said that the public house was haunted.

Haunt vt.常去，常到（某地）= visit somewhere every often

-- He haunted this cinema.

The farm was owned by two brothers, Joe and Bob Cox.

Own = possess

They employed a few farmhands, but no one was willing to work there long.

Be willing to do = be ready to do

Every time a worker gave up his job, he told the same story.

Every time = whenever 引导时间状语从句

-- Every time I listen to his advice, I get into trouble.

= Whenever I listen to his advice, I get into trouble.

Farm labourers said that they always woke up to find that work had been done overnight.

Wake up to find that… 醒过来时，结果发现…

-- He woke up to find that he was surrounded by a large crowd of people.

-- He hurried to the post office **only** to find that it was shut.（表示遗憾的结果用 only）

Hay had been cut and cowsheds had been cleaned. A farm worker, who stayed up all night, claimed to have seen a figurecutting corn in the moonlight.

claimed to do…

-- He claimed to have seen the puma.

-- Seamen claimed to have seen monsters.

See sb doing sth 看见某人正在做某事

Who 引导非限定定语从句（lesson 08）

-- These young people, who love the peace of the mountains, always receive a warm welcome at Saint Bernard Monastery.

stay up 不睡觉，留在原地，原地不动（= not to go to bed）

= sit up 坐起，端坐，熬夜

-- The boy sat up to see the film.

Wait up for 等候着不睡

-- Don't wait up for me; I'll be home very late.

burn the midnight oil 开夜车

-- I have to burn the midnight oil to tonight to complete work.

In time, it became an accepted fact that the Cox brothers employed a conscientious ghost that did most of their work for them.

In time　最后，终于

It became an accepted fact that…　变成了一个大家都接受的事实

That 引导同位语从句，补充说明 fact。

-- It becomes an accepted fact that the puma is still at large.

= Everybody had already accepted the fact that the puma is still at large.

No one suspected that there might be someone else on the farm who had never been seen.

Someone else who had never been seen.

This was indeed the case.

A short time ago, villagers were astonished to learn that the ghost of Endley had died.

Be astonished = be surprised

类似的词：amaze, astound

be astonished to do sth（可代替 do 的词：see, learn, hear, find, know, discover）

-- I am not surprised to see he is still as fat as before.

Everyone went to the funeral, for the ‘ghost’ was none other than Eric Cox, a third brother who was supposed to have died as a young man.

For(= as)引导原因状语从句，对主句补充说明。

none other than = no other than　不是别的，正是...（强调人）

-- The man who spoke to her was none other than her husband.

和她说话的不是别人正是她丈夫。

-- It was no other than my old friend.

nothing else than　只不过，仅仅（强调事物）

-- His failure was due to nothing else than his own careless.

他的失败不因为其它原因，仅仅因为他的粗心。

A third brother　又一位兄弟

Was supposed = was thought

-- He was supposed to have died twenty years ago.

After the funeral, Joe and Bob revealed a secret which they had kept for over fifty years.

Keep secret 保密　（= keep sth to oneself）

Reveal secret　揭露秘密（= make known）

-- The press reveal the scandal.（n.丑事，丑闻）（the press 新闻界）

-- He kept secret for a long time. = He kept it to himself for a long time.

Eric had been the eldest son of the family, very much older than his two brothers.

Very much 中的 Much 用来加强语气

He had been obliged to join the army during the Second World War.

Be obliged to do… = be force to do…　被迫做某事

Feel obliged to do…　有义务做某事

As he hated army life, he decided to desert his regiment.

When he learnt that he would be sent abroad, he returned to the farm and his father hid him until the end of the war.
He had been in hiding…

Fearing the authorities, Eric remained in hiding after the war as well.
Fearing the authorities　现在分词做原因状语从句
Concealment　n.隐藏，隐蔽，隐蔽处
in hiding（躲藏着的）= remain in concealment（隐藏着，躲着）
-- He remained in hiding at home.

His father told everybody that Eric had been killed in action.

The only other people who knew the secret were Joe and Bob.
The only other people who knew the secret　仅知道这个秘密的人
The only other people who finished the work　仅完成这项工作的人

They did not even tell their wives.

When their father died, they thought it their duty to keep Eric in hiding.
They thought it their duty to…（it 是形式宾语）
-- I thought it very difficult to pass the examination.
-- We all think it our duty to support our parents.
动词 + 宾语（形式宾语 it）+ 宾补(名词、形容词) + **to do…**

All these years, Eric had lived as a recluse. He used to sleep during the day and work at night, quite unaware of the fact that he had become the ghost of Endley.
Quite unaware of…　形容词短语做状语
that 引导同位语
unaware　adj.不知道的，没有觉察的(of, that)
-- be unaware of the danger　没有觉察到危险
-- He was unaware that I was present.　他不知道我在场。
aware　adj.知道的，明白的
-- I was not aware of the fire.　我没有意识到火。

When he died, however, his brothers found it impossible to keep the secret any longer.
his brothers found it impossible to…　（动词 + 宾语 + 宾补 + **to do…**）
-- We found it quite impossible to finish the hard work in 2 hours.
　= It is quite impossible to finish the hard work in 2 hours.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1>D
It never occurred to them that…　他们从来没有想到过…

2>A
penalty（n.处罚，罚款）= punishment（n.惩罚，处罚，惩处）
desertion　n.丢掉，遗弃，逃亡，开小差

3>D
outbreak　n.(战争的)爆发, (疾病的)发作
bury　vt.埋葬，掩埋，隐藏

4>B　　5>C

6>B　　army life = life in the army　军队生活
　　school life = life in the school　学校生活

7>A　　8>A

9>C　　with time　随着时间的推移
at the time　当时，在那个时候
on time　adv.准时
at times　adv.有时，不时

10>B
recruit　vt. vi.招募（新兵）
-- to recruit new police officers　招募新的警官
吸收（新成员）
-- to recruit some new members　吸收新成员
conscript　n.被征入伍的士兵 vt.征募，征兵，征召（美语用 draft）
-- He was conscript into the army.
Regiment　n.团，大群　v.把...编组，把...编成团，管辖
Regiment　n.〈军〉团
-- The regiment was ordered to the front.　这个团被调往前线。
（常与 of 连用）大群；大量
-- a regiment of ducks　一大群鸭子
Regiment　vt.管辖，严格控制
-- Modern children don't like being regimented.　现代的儿童不喜欢受严格的控制。

11>D　　hermit　n.隐士，隐居者

12>A
realizing = become aware of
never realizing = quite unaware of

Lesson 31 A lovable eccentric 可爱的怪人

New words and expression 生词和短语

lovable adj. 可爱的

lovable=worthy of love 惹人爱的

lovely=beautiful 可爱的

What he does is lovable. 他的所作所为很惹人爱。

I like the lovely boy/girl. 我喜欢这个可爱的孩子。

A large number of eccentrics are lovable. 许多怪人惹人喜爱。

eccentric n. （行为）古怪人:

eccentric n. =a person whose behavior is peculiar ,unusual,rather strange.;

adj: peculiar,unusual,strange

strange 因为陌生而奇怪

The modern building looks strange to the villagers.

eccentric a.行为举止古怪

I can't get on well with him, because he is eccentric.

odd 强调指出因为少见而多怪

Look, he is wearing an odd hat.

peculiar 奇异的,不同寻常的

The house is peculiar.

I feel peculiar today.=I feel uncomfortable/ill.=I'm not myself today.

eccentricity n.怪癖

disregard v. 不顾，漠视

disregard v.=ignore ,pay no attention to

Disregard noise and keep working.

disregard n.

have a disregard of/for

He has complete disregard of/for my feelings.他对我的感情漠然不顾。

in disregard of 不顾，忽视，漠视

He did the work in disregard of my instructions.他不顾我的指示而继续做这项工作。

treat sb. with disregard 怠慢某人

Anyway, don't treat your friends with disregard.无论如何不能怠慢自己的朋友。

convention n. 习俗，风俗

convention n.: generally accepted practice 被普遍接受的行为准则、常规、惯例,可受时间影响

Shaking hands when meeting people is normal convention in China.

custom 历史悠久的社会习俗,不受时间影响

It is a custom of giving presents at Christmas.

He always does exactly what he wants and does not care about convention.

practice 某团体的传统做法或令他人无法接受的习俗
The normal practice in the company is to send bill as soon as the job is done.这个公司的通常做法是工作一做完就记帐单。
a normally accepted practice 普遍接受的做法 见 23 课
tradition 传统,比 custom 有更悠久的历史
Spending Christmas day is a tradition for western people.
habit 个人习惯
I have a habit of reading aloud in the morning.

Conscious adj. 感觉到的，意识到的
conscious a.感觉到的=aware
be conscious of/that=be aware of/that
He is quite unaware of the danger.他丝毫没有意识到这个危险。
He is not conscious of the danger.
class conscious 有阶级意识的
family conscious 有家庭观念的
clothes conscious 注重衣着的
stairs conscious 注重地位的
aware ;conscious 的反义词直接加 un-----unaware ;unconscious
subconscious 下意识的
consciousness n.意识、知觉、个人思想

routine n.常规,惯例
routine=the regular fixed way of sth./doing things
follow the routine 墨守成规
break the routine 打破常规
start the daily routine 开始每天的日常生活

shrewd adj.精明的,狡猾的,敏锐的,机灵的
shrewd=showing good practical judgement
He is a shrewd observer.
We have got shrewd common sense.
Sb. is shrewd. = He has good judgement.
shrewd brained 头脑机灵的
shrewd headed 头脑机灵的
shrewd looking 看起来机灵的
shrewd a.精明的
cunning :clever at deceiving 善于欺骗的
sly 用更隐秘的办法来达到目的 强于 cunning
a sly old fox 非常狡猾的老狐狸

intensely adj.强烈地
intense adj.=very strong ;violent; extreme ;sharp ; central
intense cold 严寒

intense heat 酷暑
intense discussion 激烈的讨论
intensify vt.使……增强
You must intensify your sense of responsibility.你必须加强责任感。
intensity n.强烈、剧烈、强度
Losing jobs are growing in intensity.失业这种现象是越来越严重了。

reprimand v.正式地、严厉地斥责
reprimand :scold officially and severely
blame 责备（语气程序很弱）
blame sb. for sth.
The teacher blamed him for his coming late.
scold 斥责（语气稍重一点）
Don't scold me for such a trifle. 不要因为这样的小事责备我。
reproach 斥责
He often reproached his children.
reprimand v./n. 严厉斥责；谴责 (语气最强)
The boss reprimanded his employees severely.

apologetic a.道歉的
He was apologetic. 他致以歉意。
apologize v.道歉
apologize to sb.
He apologized to his boss.
The boss apologized to his employees.
apology n.歉意
make apology to sb. for sth.

stage v.暗中策划
He staged a joke.

elaborate adj.精心构思的
elaborate =carefully worked out
an elaborate design 精心的设计
elaborate vt. 精心设计构思
He elaborated a system of computer.

Text 课文

True eccentrics never deliberately set out to draw attention to themselves.
真正古怪的人从不有意引人注意。
deliberately: on purpose
set out to do=set about doing=start doing/to do sth.

draw/capture/attract/hold/catch/arrest/receive attention to 吸引对...的注意

They disregard social conventions without being conscious that they are doing anything extraordinary.
他们不顾社会习俗，意识不到自己所作所为有什么特殊之处。
He made a mistake without being conscious of the fact.

This invariably wins them the love and respect of others, for they add colour to the dull routine of everyday life.
他们总能赢得别人的喜爱与尊敬，因为他们给平淡单一的日常生活增添了色彩。
invariably:=always
win them the love and respect of others --- win sb sth
Her fine character quickly won her the friendship of her colleagues.
add colour to 为增添.....色彩
Eccentric add colour to our dull life.

希望背诵第一段

Up to the time of his death, Richard Colson was one of the most notable figures in our town.
理查德.科尔森生前是我们镇上最有名望的人之一。
up to the time of his death: before he died 完成时的标志，这里之所以没有用现在或过去完成时，主要是突出一个客观事实
notable: famous

He was a shrewd and wealthy businessman, but most people in the town hardly knew anything about this side of his life.
他是个精明能干、有钱的商人，但镇上大部分人对他生活中的这一个方面几乎一无所知。
this side of his life 生活中的这一个方面：指他的精明能干、有钱

He was known to us all as Dickie and his eccentricity had become legendary long before he died.
大家都管他叫迪基。早在他去世前很久，他的古怪行为就成了传奇故事了。
be known to sb. 众所周知
long before he died 在他去世前很久

Dickie disliked snobs intensely.
迪基痛恨势利小人。
intensely: violently,strongly, very much

Though he owed a large car, he hardly ever used it, prefering always to go on foot.
尽管他有一辆豪华小轿车，但却很少使用，常常喜欢以步代车。
prefering 现在分词做伴随状语
hardly: rarely

One day, he walked into an expensive shop after having been caught in a particularly heavy shower.

一天，他遇上一场瓢泼大雨，淋得透湿。

be caught in 突然遇到，突然碰上

be caught in a heavy shower 遇到瓢泼大雨

be caught in a heavy snow 遇到大雪

be caught in a heavy storm 遇到风暴

He wanted to buy a $300 watch for his wife, but he was in such a bedraggled condition than an assistant refused to serve him.

他走进一家高级商店，要为妻子买一块价值 300 英镑的手表。但店员见他浑身泥水的样子，竟不肯接待他。

in such a condition/state 处于一种状态

bedraggled condition 拖泥带水的状态

such...that.. 如此...以至于...

The assistant asked him to leave, but Dickie paid no attention to him and requested to see the manager.

店员让迪基走开，他置之不理，并要求见经理。

pay no attention to him= ignore him=take no notice of him=turn a deaf ear to him= refuse to listen to him

request 求见（正式，礼貌，语气强烈）

I requested the headmaster.

Every student can request assistance of their teacher.

demand 在语气上还要强烈，并且不愿意接受否定的回答

I demand my rights. 我要求我的权利。

ask 口头或写信要求得到某物

I asked to get the book.

He asked me for help.

Recognizing who the customer was, the manager was most apologetic and reprimanded the assistant severely.

经理认出了这位顾客，表示了深深的歉意，还严厉地训斥了店员。

recognizing 现在分词做原因状语

most=very much

When Dickie was given the watch, he presented the assistant with the cloth bag.

店员为迪基拿出了那块手表，迪基把布口袋递给他。

hand sb sth /hand sth to sb 把某物递给某人

present sb with sth / present sth to sb 把某物交给某人(比较正式)

He insisted on the assistant's counting the money before he left -- 30,000 pennies in all!

他坚持要店员点清那些硬币后他才离去。这些硬币加在一起共有 30,000 枚！

insist on doing/insist that + should do 坚决要求

He insisted that the shop assistant should count the money before he left.

This exhibition received a great deal of attention in the press, for though the pictures were supposed to be the work of famous artists, they had in fact been painted by Dickie.

这次展览引起报界广泛注意，因为这些画名义上是名家的作品，事实上是迪基自己画的。

receive an attention 引起注意

receive a great deal of attention in the press 引起报界的广泛注意

suppose to do

It took him four years to stage this elaborate joke simply to prove that critics do not always know what they are talking about.

他花了 4 年时间策划这出精心设计的闹剧，只是想证明评论家们有时并不解他们所谈论的事情。

simply to prove=only to prove

don't always know what they are taking about= don't always talk sense= always talk nonsense

talk nonsense 胡说八道

talk sense 说正经话

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1.正确答案：B

go to such lenghths 竭尽全力

2.正确答案：B

3.正确答案：D

4.正确答案：B

be quite unaware of the fact that... that 引导同位语从句,在非正式用法中 of the fact 可省略

5.正确答案：B

much 多用在疑问句或否定句中，而肯定句中多用 a lot;a great deal

He knows a lot about it.

He doesn't know much about it.

Does he know much about it?

6.正确答案：A 7.正确答案：A

8.正确答案：A 9.正确答案：D

10.正确答案：D 11.正确答案：C

12.正确答案：D

talk nonsense 胡说八道

talk sense 说正经话

Lesson 32 A Lost Ship 沉船之谜

New words and expression 生词和短语

salvage n. 营救，救助，打捞
salvage goods from fire 从火中抢救货物
salvage the patient 拯救病人
salvage your time 节省时间
salvage archaeology/boat/ money 抢救性的考古/营救船/救助的钱

cargo n.货物
cargo : the goods carried by ship, plane or vehicle （通常用于船运）
The ship has a cargo of 1000 tons.
cargo vessel 货船
goods: the goods carried by plane or train 也可以做形容词。做形容词时只表示铁路运输。常指商店里的商品。
a goods train 货物列车
Trains are used to carry goods and passengers. 火车是用来运送货物和旅客的。

scour vt.彻底搜查
scour : go through
The house has been searched/scoured for the hidden bullions.为了找到被藏起来的金条，整个房子都被彻底找过了。
search 指寻找丢失的东西或被认为是存在的东西 比 look for 更正式
I have been searching everywhere but I can't find the key.
hunt 指漫无边际的寻找急需的东西
We spent a week hunting for the puma.
scour 表示彻底的搜查一个特定的范围 并暗示花费更大的力气
They scour the woods for the child.
三个词的共同特点：search/scour/hunt 都可以+ for 表示目的

chest n.箱子
chest: a large strong box in which valuable objects are kept
case（总称）/ suitcase (手提相) / safe（保险箱）/ trunk（汽车尾箱）/ dustbin(垃圾箱)
find n.. : sth good or valuable
The little restaurant is quite a find.
The garden is a good find

piece v. 拼成整体
piece n. : part
a piece of cake / a piece of news
v. : put parts together to form a whole
piece together 拼凑

They piece the log book together. 他们把航海日记拼凑在一起
Piece up：修补，拼合
Please piece up the dress. 请把裙子缝补一下
Piece a quilt. 拼缝一下被子

convoy n. 护航
in a convoy 护航
under a convoy 被护航

submarine n. 潜水艇
关于 sub 前缀的用法：
1．表示下 如：subway（地铁） /substructure（下层建筑）/subsoil（下层土）/ subnormal（低于正常的）
2．表示次、准、亚 如：subtropics（亚热带） / sub college（准大学）/ sub continent（ 次大陆）
3．表示副、分支、下级、下属 如： subeditor（副编辑） / subagent（副代理人） /subhead（副标题）/ sub office（分办事处）
4．表示接近的 如：subadult（接近成年的）/ sub teen (13 以下) / subequal（接近相等的，约等于）
5．表示再 如：subdivide（再分）/ sublet（转租）/subculture（再培养）

naval n. 海军的
naval port 军港
naval power 制海权
navy n. 海军
voyage n. 海上航行
navigation n. 航海术
navigate v. 航海，航行

Text 课文

The salvage operation had been a complete failure.
打捞工作彻底的失败了。
请背熟上面这个句子
My examination is a complete failure.
Their experiment had been a complete failure.

The small ship, Elkor, which had been searching the Barents Sea for weeks, was on its way home.
这艘小船爱尔克号在巴伦支海上搜索已经好几个星期了，现在正在返回途中。
定语从句。Which 指代 the small ship, Elkor

A radio message from the mainland had been received by the ship's captain instructing him

to give up the search..

=The captain had received a radio message from the mainland instructing him to give up the search.。

船长收到了从大陆上发来的电报，指示他放弃搜索。

背熟这句话。在这句话中，instructing 进一步说明 a radio message 的内容。

instruct sb. to do sth. 指示命令某人做某事（在第五课已经学过）

the editor sent a fax to the journalist instructing him to get statistics.

这位编辑给这位记者发了一份传真，指示他马上开始获取数据。

The captain knew what another attempt would be made later, for the sunken ship he was trying to find had been carrying a precious cargo of gold bullion.

make (another) attempt 再一次尝试

船长知道，今后还会另作一次尝试，因为他在设法寻找的那艘沉船装载了贵重的金砖。

Despite the message, the captain of the Elkor decided to try once more.

尽管有那份电报，但爱尔克号船长决定再试一次。

dispite = in spite of

try once more 代替 **make another attempt** 为了避免重复

The seabed was scoured with powerful nets and there was tremendous excitement on board when a chest was raised from the bottom.

他们用了又大又结实的渔网在海底拖。当一只大箱子从海底被打捞上来时，船上的人兴奋极了。

Searching the seabed need a lot of time and energy. 所以我们用的动词是 **scour**，语气要比 **seach** 强烈。

重点掌握 **there was tremendous excitement**

在正式的书面语中，我们常用 **there is tremendous excitement** 这个结构。但是在口语中，我们还是直接采用形容词 **excited.**

People on board felt excited.

There was tremendous excitement before the game.

Though the crew were at first under the impression that the lost ship had been found, the contents of the sea-chest proved them wrong.

虽然，开始时船员们以为沉船已经被找到，但是从海底捞起的箱子里的东西证明他们错了，

under the impression = thinking that 认为

I'm under the impression that he is the manager of the store.

He is under the impression that you'll help him.

What they had in fact found was a ship which had been sunk many years before.

实际上，他们所找到的是艘多年前的沉船。

由 **what** 引导的主语从句。

注意课文中出现的两个形容词 **sunk** 和 **sunken**。

做定语只用 **sunken.** 而过去分词的普通用法，既可以用 **sunk** 也可以用 **sunken,**一般来讲用 **sunk.**

The ship had sunk.
a sunken ship

The chest contained the personal belongings of a seaman, Alan Fielding.
箱子里装着一个 **Alan Fielding** 海员的私人物品。
personal belongings 个人所属物品

There were books, clothing and photographs, tighter with letters, which the seaman had once received from his wife.
有书、衣物和照片，同时还有他妻子写给他的信件。
together with 还有
He together with his classmate went to the zoo and they enjoyed themselves.

The captain of the Elkor ordered his men to salvage as much as possible from the wreck.
爱尔克号船长命令船员尽可能从沉船里多打捞些东西上来。
salvage as much as possible = salvage as much as they could

Nothing of value was found, but the numerous items which were brought to the surface.
虽然没有找到什么值钱的东西，但是被打捞上来的一些物件倒是颇为有趣的。
nothing of value = valuble
Very much interesting = of great interest 极有意思的
Of great importance = of great significance 非常重要的
of no consequence = of no importance 无足轻重的
of no interest 没有意思
numerous = countless

In another sea-chest, which contained the belongings of a ship's officer, there was an unfinished letter which had been written on March 14th,1943.
在另一只箱子有装着一位海军军官的东西。有一封 1943 年 3 月 4 日未写完的信件。
本句的主干是In another sea-chest, there was an unfinished letter which had been written on March 14th,1943.
Which（指代 chest ）contained the belongings of a ship's officer = there were the belongings of ship officer in the chest

The captain learnt from the letter that the name of the lost ship was the Karen.
船长从这封信中知道这艘船叫卡伦号。
learn form 从……得知

The most valuable find of all was the ship's log book, parts of which it（形式主语）was still possible to read.
在所有打捞上来的东西中最有价值的是这艘沉船的航海日志。某些部分仍然能看清楚。
Which 在句中指代 log book，而 it 是形式主语，句子可以变成 parts of the log book it was still possible to read.进而变成 it was still possible to read parts of the log book.

From this the captain was able to piece tighter all the information that had come to light.

船长可以把自己掌握的资料综合起来。

that had come to light.做定语从句修饰 information

Come to light = become known = emerge 被公开，被发现（不及物动词短语，要用主动语态）

The secret came to light after his death.

bring sth. to light = review 把……公布于众

The two brothers review the secret.

The two brothers brought the secret to light.

The Karen had been sailing in a convoy to Russia when she was torpedoed by an enemy submarine.

卡伦号是在执行去苏联的护航任务中，遇到敌人潜艇的鱼雷袭击。

in a convoy 护航

under a convey 被护航

This was later confirmed by a naval official at the ministry of defense after the Elkor had returned home.

爱克号回去以后，国防部的一位海军官员证实了这一点。

confirmed = made sure

this 指代“The Karen had been sailing in a convoy to Russia when she was torpedoed by an enemy submarine.”

最好背诵第一段和牢记熟练运用第二三两自然段的重点固定句式结构。

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1. 正确答案：A

2. 正确答案：B

3. 正确答案：A

4. 正确答案：C

5. 正确答案：B

6. 正确答案：D

7. 正确答案：C

8. 正确答案：C

9. 正确答案：D

in the letter 在信中

in the radio message 在电报中

in the fax 在传真中

10. 正确答案：B

together with = along with 表示还有

added to 表示被加上

including 表示包含、包括。它强调一个整体包含若干个部分，而这里是表示还有什么。

11. 正确答案：C

inscribe 刻画

mark 做标记

12. 正确答案：A

come to light = emerge

arisen 是 arise 的过去分词形式，是个不及物动词，表示产生、出现

surface 露出水面

alight 要与介词 on 连用，表示偶然发现 **My eyes alighted on the book.**

Lesson 33 A day to remember 难忘的一天

New words and expression 生词和短语

prelude n. 序幕，前奏
prelude 与介词 to 搭配表示“……的前奏”
a prelude to serious trouble 麻烦事的前奏
introduction n. 导言，绪论 （连 to）
introduction to the book
preface n. 序，前言 （连 to）
foreword n. 序 （连 to）

unforeseen a. 意料之外的
foresee v. 预见，预知
foresee = see before hand / in advance
I foresee a bright future for you.
foreseeable a. 可预见的
foreseeing a. 预料之中的
unforeseeing a. 意料之外的
foretell v. （普通用词）预言（主语可用人和物）
predict v. 预言，预示（语气比 foretell 强 主语是人）
He predicts that it would happen in ten years.
forecast v. 预测，预报
Timely snow foretells bumper harvest. 瑞雪兆丰年。

series n. 系列
series 单复数同行
常见搭配 a series of
We've got a series of good harvest. 我们取得了一连串的大丰收。
chain n. 连串 连锁
a chain of 一系列
a chain of reaction
a series of reaction
chain store 连锁店
chain reaction 连锁反应
chain smoker 吸烟很严重的人
succession 侧重指时间的顺序，强调时间的连续没有间隔开
a succession of failures 一系列的失败
We've got a succession of successes. 我们取得了一次又一次的成功。
string 连续不断相似的事件
a string of cars 一连串的汽车
train 一个接一个发生的事
a train of thoughts /ideas 一个个的想法

catastrophe n.. 大祸，灾难
这个词强调严重，波及范围广的灾难
worldwide ~ 世界范围的灾难
national ~ 波及全国的灾难
disaster n. 灾难，不幸 （比 catastrophe 弱的多说明灾难，不幸的程度是可以忽略的）
calamity n.灾害，不幸事件（指令人痛心的，个人或社会的损失，往往指产生持久的广泛忧伤痛苦）
nature calamity 自然灾害

panic n. 惊慌，恐慌
panic = uncontrollable quickly spreading fear or terror
get into a panic 陷入惊慌之中
He suddenly got into a panic and stopped his car.
be seized/struck with panic 惊慌失措
He was seized with panic. 他突然地感到惊慌失措。
terror n. 惊骇
horror n. 恐惧
fright n. 害怕
alarm n. 惊恐

stray a. 迷失的 = lost
vi. 迷失（通常与介词 form 连用）
The dog strayed from home.

confusion n. 混乱
confusion = condition out of order
in order 秩序井然
out order 混乱
in confusion 乱七八糟
fall into confusion 陷入混乱状态
be covered with confusion 局促不安
throw sb. into confusion 使某人惊慌失措

devour v. 狼吞虎咽地吃
有三种意思：
1. eat like an animal 狼吞虎咽
The dog devours the cake.
2. destroy 吞灭，席卷
The flame devours the whole building. 火把整幢楼都吞没了
3. take in eagerly with eyes, ears, or mind 贪婪地看、听
His eyes devoured the scene. 他两眼贪婪的看着这美丽的风景。

Text 课文

建议背出全文

We have all experienced days when everything goes wrong .
我们都曾经历过诸事不利的日子。
when 引导的定语从句修饰 days
Every dog has its day. 每个人都有飞黄腾达的日子。

A day may begin well enough, but suddenly everything seems to get out of control.
有时一天开始时可能还算顺利，但是突然间一切似乎都不可收拾了。
get out of control = uncontrollable = beyond control 失控
everything seems to get out of control = everything seems to be uncontrollable / beyond control

What invariably happens is that a great number of things choose to go wrong at precisely the same moment.
事情总是这样发生的：很多事情偏偏在同一时间出乱子。
由 what 引导的主语从句。
invariably = always
What happened yesterday was that he couldn't deal with the hot potato. 昨天发生的事就是他没能应付这个棘手的人。
precisely = exactly

It is as if a single unimportant event set up a chain of reactions.
似乎一件小事情就会导致一连串的连锁反应。
a chain of reactions = a series of reactions
it is as if 似乎看起来
it seems as if 似乎看起来
it looks as if 似乎看起来
set up = cause 引起，导致，造成
What set up the accident / trouble?
set up（= create） 创立，建立
set up a world record 创立一个世界记录
The unimportant event is the prelude to trouble. 不重要的事情是麻烦事的前奏。

Let us suppose that you are preparing a meal and keeping an eye on the baby at the same time.
让我们假定你正在烧饭，同时又照看着孩子。
keep an eye on the baby 照料孩子
keep an eye on = look after = take care of
Please keep an eye on my house while I am out.
keep one's eyes open 睁大眼睛
When I am out, please keep your eyes open.
have an eye to （如果用动词 have 就一定要跟介词 to 搭配）

keep an eye to the baby = keep one's eyes on the baby
eye for eye 以牙还牙
have eyes only for 只要，只爱
I have eyes only for you.
look sb. in the eyes 两眼直视某人
Don't look me in the eyes. 不要直直地盯着我看。
eye to eye with sb. 与某人看法完全一致
I invariably eye to eye with my sister. 我总是与我的姐姐看法一致。
turn a blind eye to sth. 对……视而不见
He even turns a blind eye to me.
make eyes at sb. 含情脉脉地看着某人
The boy is making eyes at his girlfriend.

While you are on the phone, the baby pulls the table-cloth off the table, smashing half your best crockery and cutting himself in the process.
当你在接电话时，小孩把台布拉了下来，把最好的陶器打碎了一半，同时手又被割破了。
on the phone = answer the phone
注意与介词 off 搭配的动词词组的意思：
pull off 拉下来 pick off 取下来 knock off 碰落下来
smash half 摔成两半
in the process 在这个过程中

You hang up hurriedly and attend to baby, crockery, etc.
你连忙挂上电话，去照顾孩子，收拾陶器等等。
hang up = put on the receiver 挂断电话
attend to = look after = deal with 照顾，处理
Please attend to my baby. 请照料我的孩子。
Excuse me, I have something urgent to attend to. 请原谅，我有一件急事要处理。

As if this were not enough to reduce you to tears, your husband arrives, unexpectedly bringing three guests to dinner.
似乎这一切还不足以使你气恼得流泪，你丈夫回来了，出乎意料地带着三个客人来吃饭。
重点句型。这是个虚拟语气。
reduce you to tears 迫使你流下眼泪
You almost reduce me to tears. 你快要让我流下眼泪来了。
His comforting words almost reduced his wife to tears.
他安慰的话语让他的妻子几乎掉下了眼泪。
His answer almost reduced me to silence. 他的回答几乎让我沉默了。
The bomb reduced to the city to ruins. 这枚炸弹将这个城市化为废墟。

We can draw a conclusion :
Everything seems to get out of control suddenly and a great number of things choose to go wrong at precisely at the moment.
Troubles never come single. 祸不单行。

Things can go wrong on a big scale as a number of people recently discovered in Parramatta, a suburb of Sydney.

正如许多人最近在悉尼郊区的帕兰马塔见到的那样，搞糟的时期功能可能规模很大。

on a big scale = to a great degree = to great extent

as 引导非限定性定语从句

as we know 众所周知

As we know, the earth is round.

As Brane pointed out, giving up smoking is the easiest thing to do in the world.

As the headmaster mentioned, one is never too old to learn.正如这位校长所提及的，活到老，学到老。

as，which 都可以引导非限定性定语从句。但 as 重点突出整个句子的含义 ，而 which 有可能指代主句当中某个词的含义，也有可能指代整个句子的含义。

As 引导非限定性定语从句，可以用于主句之前，as 和主句之间要有一个逗号分隔开来。

As we expected, John was admitted to the university. 正如我们所预料的，John 被这所大学入取了。

As 引导非限定性定语从句，也可以用在主句之后，这时就相当于 which

She married him, which was unexpected.

She married him as was unexpected.

但是在 as 所引导的非限定性定语从句中，如果运用的是被动语态结构，被动词可以省略。

She married him as unexpected. （was 省略）

The material is elastic as shown in the figure. 如图显示，这种材料是富有弹性的。

在这种情况下，shown 之前省略了谓语动词，这时就不能把 as 换成 which . 如果要用 which 则要补上谓语动词。

The material is elastic, which is shown in the figure.

During the rush hour one evening two cars collided and both drivers began to argue.

一天晚上，车辆最拥挤的时候，两辆车相撞了。两位开车人争论起来。

during the rush hour 上下班的高峰期

The woman immediately behind the two cars happened to be a learner.

原句 = it happened that the woman behind the two cars was a learner.

紧跟在两辆车后的那位女士又碰巧是个初学开车的人（实习司机）。

happen to 恰巧

I happen to hear the news . 我恰巧听说了这个消息。

It happened that I heard about it the day before yesterday. 很凑巧，我是昨天听说这个事的。

This made the driver following her brake hard.

这使得她后面的司机紧急刹车。

Following 现在分词作定语修饰 driver

As she was thrown forward, the cake went right through the windscreen and landed on the road.

当她由于惯性向前一冲的时候，蛋糕被甩出了挡风玻璃，落到马路上。

副词 right 作状语，相当于 straight

Seeing a cake flying through the air, a lorry-driver who was drawing up alongside the car, pulled up all of a sudden.

一个货车司机正在超车上来，看到一块蛋糕从空中掠过，于是他把车刹住。

draw up = pull up 停车

all of sudden = suddenly

The lorry was loaded with empty beer bottles and hundreds of them slid off the back of the vehicle and on to the road.

这辆货车满载着空啤酒瓶，几百只瓶子从车子后面滑到了地上。

was loaded with = was filled with

vehicle 这里指的是 truck，lorry

This led to yet another angry argument.

这又导致了另外一次激烈的争吵。

lead to = cause 导致

Meanwhile, the traffic piled up behind.

同时后面的车辆全停下了，堵塞了交通。

meanwhile = at the same time = at the same moment = in the meantime 与此同时

Tt took the police nearly an hour to get the traffic on the move again.

警察花了近一个小时才使交通重新通畅。

get the traffic on the move 使得车辆开动起来

on the move = move from place to place 在移动之中（介词 on 和名词搭配表示处于某种状态或者某种动作正在进行之中）

on the rise 正在上升

on the boil 正在沸腾

on the go 正在忙碌中

on the watch 正在监视中

on the turn 正在转变中

on the run 正在逃跑中

on the fly 正在飞行中

on the increase 正在增加

on the decrease 正在减少

Only two stray dogs benefited from all this confusion, for they greedily devoured what was left of the cake.

只有两条野狗从一片混乱中得到好处，因为他们贪婪地吞噬了剩下的蛋糕。

benefit from 从……得益

You can benefit a lot from your reading.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1． 正确答案：C

2． 正确答案：B
省略 as 的虚拟条件句
As there had been a more experienced driver behind the two cars. 假如在这两辆车后面是一位有经验的司机

3． 正确答案：A

4． 正确答案：B
that is…是定语从句修饰 event
a single unimportant event
that is of no importance 是修饰 event，而 set up 是整个句子的谓语部分

5． 正确答案：D
典型的现在分词做状语。为了使现在分词做状语比较明确，可以在现在分词前面加上 while

6． 正确答案：A

7． 正确答案：A
如果介词短语提前到句子前面，那么句子必须采用倒装形式

8． 正确答案：C
spending (time) doing sth.

9． 正确答案：C
and 连接的前后两个词相呼应

10．正确答案：B
get into a panic 陷入慌乱之中
in panic 在恐慌（惧）中
in terror 在恐慌（惧）中
in fear 在恐慌（惧）中
in horror 在恐慌（惧）中

11．正确答案：A
slid over 躲过 He slid over the question without answering it.
slip off 滑落

12．正确答案：D 剩余的蛋糕
remain 表示所剩余的部分，除此以外也表示遗体，遗址。
C 选项 leftover 通常采用复数形式 leftovers，表示吃剩的东西。
The leftovers of the meal were fed to the dog.

Lesson 34 A happy discovery 幸运的发现

New words and expression 生词和短语

学习词汇时仅知道汉语语义是不够的，要把单词放在语句中体会其应用
学习关键句结构是则要把它放在段落结构或文章里

antique n. 古董，古玩

fascination n. 魅力，迷惑力
= the power of fascinating 常与 for/over/on 连用
have fascination for sb 固定句势结构
--Cats have unfailing fascination for most people.
--Chinese Art has great fascination for me.
fascinate: attract or interest very strongly 使着迷，常用被动形式
--Cats never fail to fascinate human being.
--English never fail to fascinate students.
fascinated by / with sth
--He is fascinated with chess.
--The students were fascinated by his idea.
Charm 比 **fascinate** 语气要弱
--The beautiful picture charms me.
--I am charmed by the beautiful picture.
Captivate 迷惑，使着迷
--His idea captivated me.
Enchant 使迷惑，**用魔法迷惑**，使心醉，使喜悦
be enchanted by / be enchanted with
--She was enchanted by the flower you sent her.
Fascinate / charm / captivate / enchant 后接加 ing 变成形容词
Fascinating / charming / captivating / enchanting
--She is a charming girl.
--Cats are fascinating animals.
--The flowers are enchanting.
Winning 吸引人的，主要指物品
--The beautiful dresses is winning.

Forbidding adj. 望而生畏的，望而却步的
=having a unfriendly or danger look.
--He has got a forbidding appearance.
--We'd better not visit the forbidding coast.
Forbid 不允许
Forbid sb to do sth

--The father forbad his children to touch the clavichord.

Forbid doing sth

--Smoking is forbidden here.

The Forbidden City 紫禁城

Forbidden fruit 禁果

Forbidden zone 禁区

Forbid / prohibit / interdict

Forbid : 政府或私人下令以禁止

--Swimming is forbidden here.

Prohibit: 法律条文或官方明令禁止

--The law prohibits young people under 18 from going to bar.

Interdict: 法律或教会所不允许

Muster v. 鼓起

Collect / summon

Muster up / Collect up / summon up = gather / pluck up / keep up 鼓起，振奋

--He mustered up his courage and walked up to the girl.

Pretentious adj. 自命不凡的，矫饰的

--We won't like to visit the pretentious shop.

Assorted adj. 各式各样的

=various types mixed together

assorted / different / various

different : 强调此事物与彼事物完全不同

--The word glare is different from that word slare.

Various : 各种各样的 all kinds of 强调种类不同

--We have got various books.

In every part / all parts / various parts of the world 在世界各地

Assorted : various types mixed together

--Assorted chocolates 什锦巧克力

--He bought a bag of assorted fruit.

Diverse 强调性质不同

--We have got diverse opinion.

junk n. 破烂货，废品

rubbish / garbage / trash / junk

dealer v. 商人

businessman / trader / merchant / tradesman

dealer 侧重于零售，相当于 tradesman
peddler 小贩

cherish v. 期望，渴望
=entertain or keep hope , love etc. in mind deeply
--she cherishes the hope that her son will return.
--Don't cherish such illusion.
--Don't cherish the illusion that your father will always pay your debts.

Amply adv. 足够地
Ample 充足而有余的
Ample / enough
Enough 数量，程度足够
--The bread is just enough for one meal.
--He is old enough to go to the party.
Sufficient 只放在名词前
Enough 可放在名词前或后
--We have sufficient food to last one week.
--We have enough food / food enough to last one week.
Sufficiently 只放在被修饰词前
Old enough / sufficiently old
Adequate 数量和质量上的满足
--The performance is adequate.
--Don't be worried .They have gotten ample time.
Ample / adequate / sufficient / enough
--Whatever you do, you must put your heart into it. And then,someday you will be rewarded amply.

Masterpiece n. 杰作

mere adj. 仅仅的

prise v. 撬开

carve v. 镌刻

dagger n. 短剑，匕首

miniature adj. 小巧的，小型的

composition n. 构图

Text 课文

Antique shops exert a peculiar fascination on a great many people.
古玩店对许多人来说有一种特殊的魅力。
Exert a peculiar fascination on sb 对某人有一种特殊的魅力
Antique shops appeal to a great many people. 古玩店很吸引人。
Shoe shops exert a peculiar fascination on a great many ladies.
鞋店对于很多女士来讲，具有一种很特殊的魅力。

The more expensive kind of antique shop where rare objects are beautifully displayed in glass cases to keep them free from dust is usually a forbidding place.
首先抓主干：
The more expensive kind of antique shop is usually a forbidding place.
高档一点的古玩店往往是令人望而却步的地方。
Where 引导的定语从句修饰 antique shop
Rare objects 文物，稀有珍品 可以用 Rarity 来代替。
Keep sb or sth free from （29 课）
You can't keep yourselves free from anxieties like tramps.
你是不能够像约翰一样不受烦恼的侵扰的。
We put our books in bookcase to keep them free from dust.
我们把书放进书柜目的不落上灰尘。

But no one has to muster up courage to enter a less pretentious antique shop.
The forbidding antique shop is pretentious.
二三两句包含强烈明显的对比。
The more expensive kind of clothing shop is usually a forbidding place. But no one has to muster up courage to enter **a less pretentious** clothing shop.
一种高档的服装店往往是令人望而却步的，但是当我们走进一家普普通通的不是矫揉造作的普通商店的时候却不必鼓足勇气。

There is always hope that in its labyrinth of musty, dark, disordered rooms a real rarity will be found amongst the piles of assorted junk that little the floors.
人们还常常有希望在发霉、阴暗、杂乱无章、迷宫般的店堂里，从杂乱地摆放在地面上的、一堆堆各式各样的破烂货里找到一件稀世珍品。
There is always hope that ……
We cherish the hope that ……
You must cherish the hope that one day you will be amply rewarded.
Pieces of paper litter the floor. / The floor is littered with pieces of paper.
地面上到处都是纸。

No one discovers a rarity by chance.
By chance / by accident 偶然地，偶尔地

A truly dedicated bargain hunter must have patience, and above all, the ability to recognize the worth of something when he sees it.

Dedicated / concentrated

A truly dedicated person.

--He is a truly dedicated scholar.

--He is a truly dedicated English learner.

Above all : most important of all　最重要的是。承上启下。用来加强语气。

The ability to do something

To do this, he must be at least as knowledgeable as the dealer.

To do this : in order to discover a rarity

Like a scientist bent on making a discovery, he must cherish the hope that one day he will be amply rewarded.

Bent on / bent upon　　决心于。 形容词短语做定语修饰 scientist

--He is bent on winning the game.

--He is bent on becoming a bridge player.

Be bent on doing sth / be determined on doing sth / be devoted to / be engaged in

He has often described to me how he picked up a masterpiece for a mere $50.

For　花费

A mere : only

He found a great deal to interest him.

He found a lot of interesting things.

要会背这两个句型。

The morning passed rapidly and Frank was about to leave when he noticed a large packing case lying on the floor.

Be about to do sth

Be about to when (at the moment)…….表示正要或刚要干什么，突然

--I was about to leave when the telephone rang.

--He was about to lock door when his friend visited him.

The morning passed rapidly and Frank just come in, but that he could not be bothered to open it.

Bother : trouble 打扰

--Don't bother / trouble to come here tomorrow.

--I would not like to be bothered / troubled by you every day.

Disturb 语气更为强烈，又指心烦意乱的心理状态，有时也指严重的精神错乱。

--The news has disturbed me very much.

--It is disturbing to think that a wild animal is still at large in the quiet countryside .

Disturbing / disturbed

Trouble 在含义上介于 disturb / bother 之间

Apart from an interesting-looking carved dagger, the box was full of crockery, much of it broken.

Apart from 除……之外，还有

=In addition to

=**Except**

--Apart from a slight headache , I feel all right now.

the box was full of crockery, **and** much of it broken. 独立主格结构

Dish is done , he begged his wife not to sweep the floor.

--She ran into the room , her face covered with tears.

--He lay in bed , his face exposed.

Frank gently lifted the crockery out of the box an suddenly noticed a miniature painting at the bottom of the packing case.

At the bottom of 在底部

At the top of 在顶部

Frank could hardly conceal his excitement, for he knew that he had made a real discovery.

Conceal one's excitement 掩饰激动心情

Make a real discovery 做出发现

The tiny painting proved to be an unknown masterpiece by Correggio and was worth hundreds of thousands of pounds.

hundreds of thousands of 几十万

短语 （文中有解释）

For a mere &50

In my neighbourhood

He found a great deal to interest him

Was about to do when

The dealer told him that it had just come in , but that he could not be bothered to open it

Prised it open

Apart from

Much of it broken

At the bottom of

Reminded sb of sth

For he knew that he had made a real discovery

Was worth hundreds of thousands of pounds

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1… 正确答案：B

display the kind of perseverance (展现出坚韧不拔的毅力)

过去分词做定语修饰 perseverance perseverance needed to do

2… 正确答案：B
happen to be：恰巧

3… 答案正确：C

4… 答案正确：B
to keep them free from dust
which 引导定语从句，限定 glass cases

5… 答案正确：D
ordinary =>less pretentious
it is not necessary

6… 答案正确：
the ability
be able to do = have the ability to do
be capable of + 动名词

7… 答案正确：A
he had never been there before……
never having been there before
the first time to do sth 要去做某事

8… 答案正确：D
cost 的响应形式

9… 答案正确：C
in my neighbourhood = near my home

10… 答案正确：B
just … when …: 刚…就…;正在…突然

11… 答案正确：A
nail down：用钉子钉住
rope：用绳子拴住，捆住

12… 答案正确：C
glancing at it briefly …
give sth. A brief glance
peer：眯着眼睛看

重点习题：2 .7. 10

Changtong 编与 2004-3-3

Lesson 35 Justice was done 伸张正义

New words and expression 生词和短语

学习词汇时仅知道汉语语义是不够的，要把单词放在语句中体会其应用
学习关键句结构是则要把它放在段落结构或文章里

justice n. 正义，公正；司法
--Justice is done. 正义得到伸张。
bring justice to the criminal. 把罪犯缉拿归案。
do justice to sb. 公正对待某人。
do oneself justice. 公正对待自己。
give oneself up to justice. 自首
in justice to : 为了对…公正起见
the ministry of justice 司法部
injustice 不公平，不公正

law n.法律
take law into one's own hand : 无法无天
take the law of sb : 控告
at law : 在诉讼中
within the law : 合法
outside the law : 不合法
lawyer : 律师
lawful : 有法可依
lawfully adv
lawless: 没有法律的
lawlessly adv

innocence n 无辜
innocent a.无辜的

undertake v.承担，着手做
undertake to do
--He undertook to inform everyone concerned.
--We undertake a investigation.
承担，着手做：
start to do sth
take off doing sth
be engaged in sth
set out to do
set about doing
carry on doing

perform sth .
…… on the way

arduous a.艰苦的，艰难的
--Studying English is a arduous job.
ous 结尾的形容词
industrious a 勤劳的
laborious a 劳神的，费力的，吃力的
strenuous a.费力的，精心的，须全力以付的，比 arduous 强烈的多，同时表示奋发的

mete out 给予，处置
mete out reward 进行奖励
mete out punishment 进行惩罚
--Justice was meted out to them. 他们得到了公正的处理。

accord n/vi 一致
in accord with : 和……一致
out of accord with : 和……不一致
of one's own accord : 自然而然地
--Justice is done of its own accord.
according to : 依据，根据
in accordance with : 依据（法律）

premises : n. 房屋
residence : 住处，居住地，非常正式的用词
dwelling : 供人居住的地方，也是非常正式的用词
house : 住房
housing : 房（总称）**the housing problem** 住房问题

disused : a.不再用的，废弃的 **disused house** 废弃的房子
misused : 弄错了的
used : 用过了的
second-hand : 二手的

chip v. 砍，削，凿
chip a hole 凿了一个洞
chop : 砍
chop head 砍头

Text 课文

<u>The word justice is usually associated with courts of law.</u>
be associated with = be connected with , be related to : 与…相联系

We might say that justice has been done when a man's innocence or guilt has been proved beyond doubt.

We might say that ：我们也许会说（重点框架）一种不太肯定的口气

--We might say that justice has been done. 我们也许会说正义得到了伸张。

beyond prep.(介词)：超出某种范围，限度，主要是和名词进行搭配

beyond doubt 无可怀疑

--He has been proved to be innocent beyond doubt. 他已经被证据确凿的证明无罪了。

beyond belief 难以相信

beyond words 难以形容

beyond description 难以描述

beyond question 难以质疑

beyond hope 没有希望

beyond recovery 康复无望

beyond dispute 无可争议

beyond controversy 无可争辩

beyond imagination 难以想象

beyond measure 难以衡量

beyond understanding 难以理解

beyond comparison 无与伦比

beyond one's …超出某人的…

--Your beauty is beyond my description. 你的美是我无法用言词形容的。

Justice is part of the complex machinery of the law.

part of ：部分，前面没有冠词

--Only part of his story is true. 他的话有一部分是真实的

parts of : 几部分，若干部分

--Parts of the log book were recognized. 航海日志的若干部分还是能被辨认出来的.

--Large parts of the house were destroyed in the fire.房屋的大部分在火灾中烧毁了。

无论是 part of 还是 parts of 后面都要带单数名词

Those who seek it, undertake an arduous journey and can never be sure that they will find it.

那些追寻正义的人，可以说是踏上了一条漫长崎岖而且艰难的道路。

Judges, however wise or eminent, are human and can make mistakes.

法官无论如何聪明与有名，毕竟也是人，也会出差错的。

however = no matter how

There are rare instances when justice almost ceases to be an abstract concept.

在个别情况下，正义不再是一种抽象概念。

There are rare instances when: 在极个别的情况下。

--There are rare instances when women are not equal to men.

在极个别的情况下，女士和男士是不平等的。

cease: （正式）彻底的停止，暗指动作的突然性

--His heart suddenly ceased to beat. 他的心脏突然停止了跳动。

ceased to do 与动词不定式连用

stop:（广泛，不正式）不强调方式，只强调结果

--The car suddenly stopped. 车突然停了。

Reward or punishment are meted out quite independent of human interference.

奖惩的实施是不受人意志支配的

quite independent of human interference

--形容词短语做定语，说明主句的状况。

He deserves it. / It serves him right. 罪有应得

At such times, justice acts like a living force.

在有的时候，正义像一种有生命的力量行使其职能。

At such times: 在有的时候

When we use a phrase like 'it serves him right', we are, in part, admitting that a certain set of circumstances has enabled justice to act of its own accord.

当我们说“他罪有应得”这句话的时候，我们部分承认了某种特定的环境使得正义自动地起了作用。

把握句子主干：

we are , in part , admitting that 我们部分的承认了…

enabled sb. to do 使什么能够做某事

of its own accord 自然而然的

When a thief was caught on the premises of large jewellery store on morning, the shop assistants must have found it impossible to resist the temptation to say 'it serves him right.'

一天上午，当一个小偷在一家大型珠宝店里被人抓住的时候，店员一定会忍不住说：“他罪有应得。”

二三自然段衔接相当紧密，再次提到'it serves him right.'

…found it impossible to resist the temptation to say…（双否）背诵

Towards midday, a girl heard a muffed cry coming from behind on of the walls.

快到中午的时候，一个女售货员听见从一堵墙里传出一种闷声闷气的叫声。

come from behind : 从后面

--He jumped from behind one of the trees. 他从树后跳了出来。

As the cry was repeated several times, she ran to tell the manager who promptly rang up the fire brigade.

由于这种喊叫声重复了几次，她跑去报告经理，经理当即给消防队挂了电话。

promptly=immediately 马上

They located the right chimney by tapping at the walls and listening for the man's cries.

他们通过叫击烟囱倾叫声而确定传出声音的那个烟囱。

located the right chimney 确定那个烟囱

by **tapping** at the walls **and listening** for the man's cries
and 连接前后形式相一致。
listen for : **pay attention ,so as to be sure of hearing** 表示集中注意力，等待听到某种声音
--We are listening for the clock to announce the New Year.
我们正等待新年钟声的敲响。
--I'm listening for your steps.
我正倾听着你的脚步声。

The sorry-looking, blackened figure that emerged, admitted at once that he had tried to break into the shop during the night but had got stuck in the chimney.
那个看来满脸沮丧、浑身漆黑的家伙从烟囱里一出来，就承认头天夜里他企图到店里行窃，但让烟囱卡住了。
emerged：出现 = **came out , appeared**
get stuck : 被卡住

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1… 正确答案：C take effect : 起作用 要背熟题干，相当重要
2… 正确答案：B expect them to be of most help (背熟这种表达方式)
I expect you to be of most help
3… 正确答案：B 重点动词：ascertained 确定
4… 正确答案：
However = no matter how
5… 正确答案：C
6… 正确答案：
be tempted to do 被诱引去做某事
7… 正确答案：C
独立主格结构做原因状语
8… 正确答案：C
介词 in 与动名词搭配，表示在什么的时候，在什么的过程当中。
在同他讲话当中，我发现他有点紧张
In speaking to him, I found him nervous.
While 确实可以引导从句，但是 while 引导从句，分词短语和介词短语，而不能跟动名词形式搭配。在 while 引导的从句当中要出现的是延续性动词。
9… 正确答案：A
侧重听到了这个结果。
10… 正确答案：D
11… 正确答案：B
12… 正确答案：D
emerge (侧重于强调公布于众)：come to light
本文表示出来
come up : 意外发生

Changtong 编与 2004-3-4

Lesson 36 A Chance in a Million 百万之一的机会

New words and expression 生词和短语

学习词汇时仅知道汉语语义是不够的，要把单词放在语句中体会其应用
学习关键句结构是则要把它放在段落结构或文章里

credulous	adj.轻信的
improbable	adj.不大可能的
obscure	adj.不起眼的
maidservant	n.女仆，女佣
presume	v.假定
wickedly	adv.心眼坏地，居心叵测地
plot	v.密谋
downfall	n.倒台，垮台
naive	adj.天真的
unacceptable	adj.不能接受的
conspire	v.(事件)巧合促成
incredible	adj.难以置信的
resemblance	n.相似
scorn	n.嘲弄，挖苦
acquaint	v.使了解
reunite	v.使团聚
assume	v.假定，认为

credulous adj.轻信的 (多修饰人)
区分 credible:可信的,可靠的,多修饰事物 eg. The story he told us is credible.
incredulous / incredible
反义词 believable 以已知事实为根据 eg. He demanded for believable explanation.
(反)unbelievable

improbable adj.不大可能的

obscure adj.
1)不起眼的，不出名的 eg. The bus stopped at an obscure little town.
2)令人费解的 not clearly An obscure figure can be seen through the fog. 模糊不清的
通过大雾我们可以看到模糊不清的身影.
vague:多用于比喻意,指不明确说明而造成的模糊不清
eg. what he said is vague.

maidservant n.妇女仆,女佣

presume v.假定 take sth. as true 经常用的表达方式 presume that
根据过去的经验或感觉作出推断

assume 与事实不相符合 eg. Let us assume that your words are fact.
suppose 最普通的用词猜想\陈述自己的看法 I suppose that it was my fault.

wickedly adv.心眼坏地,居心叵测地

plot v.密谋 一人或多人秘密谋划伤害他人.
eg. The criminals were plotting to rob the bank.
conspire 众多人合谋做重大的犯法勾当 犹指反叛
scheme 某人暗中设计狡诈的手段来谋求自己的私利
eg. The man is scheming for power.图谋夺权.
本文中 conspire 指事件巧合促成
eg. The weather and car trouble conspire to spoil our vacation.

downfall n.倒台,垮台

naive adj.天真的
unacceptable adj.不能接受的
conspire
incredible

resemblance n.相似的
like ness bear a strong resemblance to sb. or sth.
have a close resemblance to sb. or sth.
eg. The girl bears a strong resemblance to her sister.
such a resemblance
resemble
likeness 最普通的用语,比 resemblance 意味要强
resemblance 特别是指外观或外在性质的相似
similarity 性质\物色\程度的相似
similar to sth. sb.

scorn n.嘲弄,挖苦
短语 pour scorn on
pour contempt on
pour ridicule on
pour heap
eg. He poured scorn on his wife's suggestion.
look down upon 瞧不起，蔑视
辨析：
think scorn of
contempt:蔑视,强烈谴责某人或某事低贱\卑鄙,语气强于 scorn
despite 语气较弱,表示嘲弄 His suggestion was dismissed with scorn.
His face showed the scorn/despite he felt.

acquaint v.使了解 be acquainted with sth.
eg. I have been acquainted with the secret.
acquaint sb. with sth.
acquaint sb. of sth.
make a person acquainted with sb :介绍某人同另一个人认识
Let me make... acquainted with you.
acquaintance 熟人

reunite n 使团聚
assume v.假定,认为

Text 课文

a chance in a million one chance in a thousand 可能性小
eg. It is a chance in a million to meet you here.在这儿见到你可真是不容易呀
----He let out a scream that must can be heard in Peru.
典型的夸张,目的是加强语气

We are less credulous than we used to be.
这是明显现在与过去的对比
eg. We are less credulous than we used to be. 我们不再像以前那样轻信于人了。
are 表示现在的情况 / used to be 过去的情况
eg. We are not so honest as we used to be.我们不像过去那么诚实了.
谓语动词是 be 动词的时候用 used to be,而不用 used to
谓语动词是使役动词的时候用 used to
eg. He works less hard than he used to.

In the nineteenth century, a novelist would bring his story to a conclusion be presenting his readers with a series of coincidences – most of them wildly improbable.
19 世纪的小说家通过给读者们提供一系的巧合事件结束…..
破折号后面的语句是对前作者的一个观点。
Them 指一系列的巧合 而其中大部分的巧合事件发生的机率是极小的
bring sth. to a conclusion 结束
eg. They decided to bring the meeting to a conclusion.
bring sth. to a close (比较正式的)
eg. It was ...who brought meeting to a close.
present sb. with sth. 给某人提供…
present sth. to sb.

Readers happily accepted the fact that an obscure maid-servant was really the hero's mother. Along-lost brother, who was presumed dead, was really alive all the time and wickedly plotting to bring about the hero's downfall.
wickedly plotting to… ------居心叵测的密谋把这个英雄搞下台来……
bring about:产生,引起

eg. Modern science has brought about great changes in life.

And so on. Modern readers would find such naïve solutions totally unacceptable.

现在的读者已经不愿意接受这样的结尾

find such naive solutions totally unacceptable 觉得这种解决办法很天真不能够被接受

find sth. interesting 觉得什么有意思

find sb. beautiful 觉得某人漂亮

Yet, in real life, circumstances do sometimes conspire to bring about coincidences which anyone but a nineteenth century novelist would find incredible. *牢记此句

do—加强语气,really

A German taxi-driver, Franz Bussman , recently found a brother who was thought to have been killed twenty years before.

who was thought…….

who 所引导的定语从句修饰 brother

While on a walking tour with his wife, he stopped to talk to a workman. After they had gone on , Mrs. Bussman commented on the workman's close resemblance to here husband and even suggested that he might be his brother.

he was on a walking tour……..省略了 he

comment on sth 就...作出评论\评价--remark on

Bussman 夫人对工人作出评价说长得和他的兄弟很像，甚至暗示说就是他的兄弟…

eg:I can't explain how it is that he is still here.

be separated from

make one's way

Franz poured scorn on the idea, pointing out that his brother had been killed in action during the war. Though Mrs. Bussman was fully acquainted with this story, she thought that there was a chance in a million that she might be right.

…..她认为有百万分一的机会证明她所说的是正确的……..

A few days later, she sent a boy to the workman to ask him if his name was Hans Bussman. Needless to say , the man's name was Hans Bussman and he really was Franz's long-lost brother. When the brothers were re-united, Hans explained how it was that he was still alive.

……explained how it was…..汉斯解释说他依旧活着是怎么一回事。

After having been wounded towards the end of the war, he had been sent to hospital and was separated from his unit. The hospital had been bombed and Hans had made his way back into Western Germany on foot.

Make one's way…力尽艰辛…….

Meanwhile , his unit was lost and all records of him had been destroyed. Hans returned to his family home, but the house had been bombed and no one in the neighbourhood knew what had become of the inhabitants. Assuming that his family had been killed during an

air-raid, Hans settled down in a village fifty miles away where he had remained ever since.
……all records of him had been destroyed….他所有的资料都被毁掉了

become of :happen to :发生遭遇\不幸的事件,多用于疑问句,主语必须是 what 或 whatever
eg. Whatever became of that girl?
Please explain what became of you yesterday.
用 assuming,而不用 presuming:主观上的臆断\无事实根据的

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1、 What would a modern reader find totally unacceptable in a novel today?
答案 d—Having for a hero a man once presumed dead.
根据课文内容知道现在的读者是不能接受一些巧合的事件

2、 When Mrs. Bussman suggested that the workman might be Franz's brother
答案 c—Franz was so sure his brother was dead he did not take her seriously.

3、 What did Hans Bussman do immediately after the war was over?
答案 c—He inquired after his family's where abouts but found no trace of them. *背熟*
(打探某人的情况,但是没有发现任何踪迹)

4、 -his readers with a series of coincidences…wildly improbable.(lines 3-6)
答案 b—which would be most

5、 A long-lost brother, who was presumed dead, had not in fact died and…to bring about the hero's downfall.(lines 8-12)
答案 d—had been wickedly plotting.

6、 He stopped…(line 25)
答案 a—in order to talk to a workman

7、 She sent a boy to ask the workman…(lines 25-26)
答案 b—what he was called

8、 Meanwhile his unit was lost and …had been destroyed. (lines 31-32)
答案 b—every record of his
(他所有的记录都被毁掉了)

9、 -who was thought to have been killed twenty years…(lines 18-19)
答案 d—previously
previously: before 同义 完成时的标志

10、 Mrs Bussman told her husband that he and the workman…(lines 20-21)

答案 c—looked very alike
look 表示人的外貌\长相应该采用复数形式
look alike 看起来像

11、 -there was the …chance she might be right.(lines 24-25)
答案 a—remotest
remote 既表示"遥远\偏僻的",也表示"微弱的",特别用来修饰 chance

12、 -how it had …that he was still alive. (lines 28-29) *
答案 d—come about
come about: happen
多用于疑问句,尤其是 How does it come about that?结构中

补充：
一、词组
标题：**a chance in a million** one chance in a thousand 可能性小
less credulous not so gullible 不怎么轻信于人(殆无可能)
we used to be we were 像我们往常那样
bring……to a conclusion:
bring…… to an end
to a close 把……告一结束
presenting(sb.) with offering (sb.) with 给（人）以
a series of a train of 一系列
wildly improbable extremely absurd 荒诞不经，十分荒唐
was presumed was supposed 人们以为
all the time all the while 一直
plotting to conspiring to 图谋
bring about (one's) downfall=bring about(one's) failure
把（人）搞垮，叫别人日子不好过
and so on and so forth,等等，诸如此类的事
conspire to bring about conspire towards
不期而然地发生，导致……许多事凑在一起，引起了，合力促成
was thought to have 原来人们认为已经 was believed to have
on a walking tour 徒步旅行 on a walking excursion
stopped to talk to 停下来然后向……讲话=stopped walking and talked to
commented on made observations on 置评，评论
close resemblance to great likeness to 酷像
poured scorn on scoffed at 嘲笑
pointing out that indication clearly that 明白指出，说道……
killed in action fallen in battle 阵亡
was acquainted with 熟知，熟悉 was familiar with
needless to say 不用说 it goes without saying , it is a matter of course
how it was that 怎么会……怎么搞的……=how(跟主语) came 或 how it came that……
(be) wounded be injured 受伤

was separated from 隔绝，失去联系 was out of touch with, lost touch (contact) with

made his way back into=went his way back into/to 返回

on foot by walking 步行

family home old home, home town 老家

in the neighbourhood 在街坊邻里 in the residential district

what had become of 变为什么样子，变成什么样的一种现状（命运，结果）= what had happened to (或 befallen)

assuming that presuming that 料想

settled down 定居 established one's residence

ever since 打那以后 the whole period from some specified time.

二、关于 conspire to

(有一种这样的含意：许多事，情况或人凑在一起造成了……) 后接 V

1) Events conspire to bring about great difficulties for government

2) They conspire to bring about the meeting of the two people.

3) They conspire to make it a success.

4) The bad weather conspired with a dirty hotel to make my holiday a resounding failure.

三、表达法对比

a) Hans explained how it was that he was still alive.

how things happened that he was still alive.

the whole story of his being still alive.

b) conspire to bring about 可写成 conspire towards(合力促成)

conspire against(凑在一起反对)

例：一切事情都和我作对

All things conspire against me.

一切因素都促成那种结果。

All things conspire towards that result.

c) a 例所示 how it was,是说“原委”,“事情之究竟”。所以我们说“原来是这样”，就可写成 So that's how it is.

Lesson 37 The Westhaven Express 开往威斯特海温的快车

New words and expression 生词和短语

1. Express n.快车；a..高速的

Express way 高速公路 / Express train 快车
Stopping/local train 慢车
Special express 特快 / Through express 直快

2. Punctual a. 准时的(= neither early nor late)

Be punctual in doing sth 在做。。。事方面相当准时
--In the modern society, we must be punctual in what we are doing .
Be punctual to the minute 非常的准时
--He is a man who is punctual to the minute.
副词：Punctually
反义词：Unpunctual
名词： Punctuality

3. Condition vt.使习惯于(=Form a habit in)

--Society has conditioned each one of us. 这个社会已经使我们大家都适应了。
Be condition to
--Each one of us has been conditioned to society.
--the plants have been conditioned to the cold weather here.. (plant 做主语)
--The cold weather has conditioned the plants here. (cold weather 做主语)

n. 条件

on condition that 在……条件下如果
on no condition 在任何情况下都不 (用在句首句子必须采用倒装)
--On no condition must you be late. 在任何情况下都不能迟到。
in good/bad condition 情况良好(不好)
change one's condition 结婚
in the interesting condition 怀孕=pregnant

4. unshakable a. 不可动摇的

5. faith n.信任=strong belief/trust 深信不疑，信仰，信心

keep faith with sb 对某人守信用
put one's faith in sth 对……有信心
on the faith of 在……保证下，凭……信用
词汇比较：
faith 深信不疑，信仰(比 belief 程度更重一些)
belief 可信赖，可接受
conviction 坚定的信念
trust 相信，依赖
credit 完全相信
--I have full credit in your ability to do this job.

6. cancel v.取消

--we have to cancel the appointment.
词汇比较：
Call off 取消，解除 (可以替换 cancel)
Abolish 废除
--The law was abolished.
Rescind 撤销，废止,比 abolish 正式
Write off 注销，勾销
--Write off the name. 注销这个名字。
Cross out 划掉
--The word here is useless, please cross it out.

7. exceptionally adv. 例外地

8. dislocate v. 打乱(计划等)

9. blame v. 责怪

10. consult v.请教，查阅

11. direct adv.径直地

12. odd a.奇怪的，异常的

13 reflect vt 细想，深思熟虑=consider carefully

Reflect on sth
--He's reflecting on his idea.
Reflect upon oneself 反省
--Sometimes we need reflect upon ourselves.

第二种意思： 反射

--She looks at herself reflected in the water.

14. Advantage n.优势,长处

Take advantage of sb 欺骗某人并利用
Take advantage of sth 利用某事
--We must take advantage of what we can use.

Of great/no advantage **to** sb/sth 对。。。大有益处/毫无益处
--Smoking is of no advantage to you.
To advantage 更有效地
--You should use the money to advantage.
To one's advantage =to the advantage of sb 对某人有利
Have advantage over sb 胜过某人，比某人有优势
词汇比较：
Interest 个人的利益，好处
--It's to your interest to give up smoking
Benefit 通过正当手段谋求的好处
--Doing exercises will benefit us a lot.
Profit 金钱上的获利
Good 个人或集体的利益

15. mighty a. 强大的，有力的

16. dawdle v. 慢吞吞地动或做

17. chug v.咔嚓咔嚓的响

18. Lodge v.提出=make a statement **officially** ，比 make 更正式

Make/lodge complaint 提出抱怨

19. complaint v.抱怨

20. triumph v.胜利

21. asterisk n.星号

22. conduct v.引导，指向

Text 课文

We have learnt to expect that trains will be punctual.

这是文章中的第一句话，大家一定要牢记它，并掌握这个句子的主干：

have learnt to expect that …… 已经习惯于期待……

--We have learnt to expect that all friends will be helpful in need of danger.

After years of conditioning, most of us have developed an unshakable faith in railway time-tables.

(1). 介词 **of** 后接动名词形式，意为：经过多年的适应.

(2). Develop an unshakable faith in sth. 对于……形成了一种不可动摇的信念。

(3)全句译文：经过多年的适应，大多数人对火车时刻表产生了一种不可动摇的信念。

--We have learnt to expect that parents are quite able, after years of pre-conditioning all of us have developed such unshakable faith. 我们已经习惯于期待父母总是能干的，经过多年的适应，我们每个人都已经养成了这样一个不可动摇的信念。

--Most of us have developed an unshakable faith in our teachers.

On time = punctual a. 准时的

Only an exceptionally heavy snow fall might temporarily dislocate railway services.

Exceptionally = unusual / uncommonly 不同寻常的，特别的(用于加强语气)

译文：只有那种特别大的暴风雪才有可能暂时打乱铁路计划。

Dislocate railway services = put railway services out of order

It is all too easy to blame the railway authorities when something does go wrong.

When something does go wrong. 当事情出现差错时

It is all too easy to blame the railway authorities. 我们总是去责备铁路当局。

Too .. to 结构中，在 too 之前出现了 all, only, but, not 等词时，to 后的从句就有肯定意义。

--He is but too eager to get home. 他太急于要回家了。

--One is never too old to learn. 活到老学到老。

--I'm all/but too glad to have someone to speak to.

They are more likely to be ours than theirs.

译文：很可能是我们自己犯下的错误而不是铁路当局的。

Ours = our mistakes. Theirs = their mistakes.

句型：be likely to do 有可能…

--He is likely to arrive tomorrow evening.

--You are likely to get success if you work hard.

与 likely(有可能的) 有关的句型：

1. be likely to do
2. It is likely that……

--It is likely that he arrives here in time. 他及到达这里是有可能的。

词汇比较：

1. probable 与 likely 意思相通，但是**不能与不定式形式搭配**。可以用：It is probable that …

--It is probable that he arrives here in time.

probable 表示的可能性比 possible 表示的可能性要大，与 likely 基本相同。

2.possible 表示可能发生或可能不发生，也可以用句型：It is possible that …

--It is possible/probable that he will speak to you.

--It is possible for us to finish the work in an hour.

After consulting my railway time-table

After **consulting** 是介词+动名词构成的时间状语，=after **I had consulted** my timetable.

Go direct from … to … 从哪儿径直到哪儿。

--The train goes direct from shanghai to Beijing.

At this time, this did not strike me as odd.

译文：这个时候，这件事情并没有让我感到惊讶。

Strike sb as 给某人以印象，使某人感到

--The activity struck me as wasting time. 这次活动给我的印象就是浪费时间。

As 后面可以接分词，名词，形容词。

I reflected that there must be a great many people besides myself who wished to take advantage of this excellent service.

I reflected : 我想

Besides me = in addition to me 除我之外

Hold up = hold back / hinder / prevent 妨碍，阻碍

It suddenly dawned on me that this express was not roaring down the line at ninety miles an hour, but barely chugging along at thirty.

Dawn on sb. = become gradually known by sb 渐渐的被某人所明白

Barely = only

But he had not even heard of it.

Hear of = hear about

Denied the train's existence 否认存在

There was a note of triumph in my voice when I told him that it was there in black and white.

A note of = a tone : 在我的声音里面存在着一种胜利的口吻。

In black and white 白纸黑字

A tiny asterisk conducted me to a footnote at the bottom of the page. It said:' This service has been suspended.'

Conduct me to = lead me to

Suspend = delay 暂停

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

Comprehension 理解

1… 正确答案：B
by rail = by train

2… 正确答案：C
at the speed of 以…的速度
express train 特快列车

3… 答案正确：A
complain about; complain of 抱怨
注意句子：**The train scheduled as an express train having in fact been a slow one.**
Scheduled as an express train 修辞 the train，做它的后置定语。
Having in fact been a slow one 与 train 构成独立主格结构。

句型结构题和词汇题是每课的关键

Structure 结构

4… 答案正确：B
expect 的用法：
expect sth/sb to do

5… 答案正确：C
注意：might 在 railway services 之前，是明显的倒装表示。
需采用倒装形式的几种情况：
A) only 所引导的状语从句用在句首，句子必须倒装。
B）if 条件句，如果 if 省略，were 要前置。
--Were it to snow = If it were to snow. 这是虚拟语气条件句的用法。

6… 正确答案：A
in a mere hour and seventeen minutes 在 1 小时 17 分钟内

7… 正确答案：D
因为 still, 所以答案为 d.
如果选择 a) before we had ,则应去掉 still to. 即：before we had covered half the distance.

8… 正确答案：C
十分有礼貌的表达方式，且与 asked 形式呼应。

Vocabulary 词汇

9… 正确答案：D
held up = delay
halt 停止
retard 防止
slow up 减慢

10… 正确答案：D
as soon as I arrived = immediately on arrival

11... 正确答案：B
注意：主句中 I 做主语
a 选项，则 noting 与主句中的主语 I 不相符合。
b 选项，sounding 是现在分词做状语说明修辞 I 的情况

12… 正确答案：A
take another look 再看一眼
review 复习
overlook 忽视，宽恕，检查，监督

Lesson 38 The first calendar 第一本日历

New words and expression 生词和短语

calendar n.历法，日历
Calender n.轮压机

historian n.历史学家
historic adj.有历史意义的
-- This is a historic speech.
historical adj.与历史研究有关系的
-- Historical research 历史研究

unique adj.无与伦比的，独一无二,
=uneauqaled speech is a unique human ability
-- 本身具有比较意义，不能接受比较级，可以接受 quite,nearly,surely,really ，不能接受 rather,very 等词的修饰
special adj. 注重性质 特殊
especial adj.强调超过其它 全部
-- This is a matter of especial importance.
-- This is a especially important matter.
particular adj.特定的
--Pineapples have particular flavour.
exceptional adj.
extraordinary adj.
-- The warm weather is exceptional for January.

steadily adv.不断地
solely adv.唯一地
video n.录像
CD-ROM n.光盘驱动器

bewilder v.令人眼花缭乱
= confuse,especially by lots of different things at the same time
-- She was bewildered by so many beautiful dresses.
puzzle 某问题因复杂、微妙而令人费解，既可用主动语态，也可用被动语态。
-- I am puzzled by the problem.
perplex 难以理解（包含焦虑不安，不知如何解决的意思）,多用于被动语态。
-- He is perplexed for the answer.
bewilderment n.
in bewilderment 茫然不知所措

deduce v 推断，推理（有充分的证据和准则而得出结论）

= determine or decied sth by given fact
-- I deduce the conclusion from the given facts. (deduce……from 从……推断)

infer v.推断（不表示过程，也不表示结论是否有充足的理由）
-- What can you infer from the text?
反义词：
-- induce v.归纳

scanty a.不足的，贫乏的
= too few,not enough
-- scanty knowledge 一知半解
-- a scanty crop 歉收
-- be scanty of sth 奇缺 / be short of 短缺
-- The village school is scanty of text books.这乡村学校奇缺教材。
be want of 需要
in need of 需要

clue n.线索
insignificant adj.不重要的

shed v.使流出，泻
= pour out
-- shed tears 泪流满面
-- shed light 发光
-- shed light on sb 启发，启迪
-- shed one's blood for country 为祖国而流血
-- shed one's clothes 脱去衣服

advent :出现，到来，来临,经常与 the 搭配，只要指节气，重要发展的到来，来临。
= coming or arrival
-- at the advent of winter 在冬天到来的时候
-- since the advent of 自从……的到来

agriculture n.农业
dot n.小圆点
engrave v.雕刻
mammoth n.长毛象
nomad n.游牧民
phase n.月相，天相
depict v.描绘，描画
assumption n.假定，设想
symbol n.符号
ivory n.象牙制品
tusk n.獠牙，长牙
correlate v.使相互联系
primitive adj.原始的

Text 课文

They will hardly know which facts to select from the great mass of evidence that steadily accumulates.
Select…from 从中进行选择

Choose 挑选（凭个人意愿），它不仅强调做这个决定的行动，而且强调最后的决定。

有三种情况二者不能互换：

1> 当在两者中选一个时只能用 choose，即 choose between

-- We have to choose between leaving early and paying for taxi.

2> choose 可带 wh 从句

-- I`ll let you choose where we should go to eat.

3> choose to do 只能用 choose

其二 select 比 choose 更正式

What is more they will not have to rely solely on the written word.

what is more 更有甚者，起到承接上下文的作用,是 furthermore,moreover 的意思

what is worse 更糟糕的是

rely on = count on = depend on 依靠、指望

-- you can`t rely on others.

-- He can`t be relied on / depended on / counted on.

solely adv.唯一地

=only , just , nearly

They will be able, as it were, to see and hear us in action.

in action 行动中的，活动中的

as it were 可以说，似乎，好象，是一个插入语，在语法上是一个独立成分，可以用于任何时态语句中。

-- He is as it were a walking dictionary. 他可以说是一本活字典。

-- Computers can never as it were lead independent lives. 电脑不能过独立的生活。

As it is = in fact = in reality = actually = as a matter of fact 事实上

-- I thought things would get better,but as it is ,they are getting worse.

-- In many ways children live as it were in a different world from the adults.

在许多方面，孩子可以说过着一种与大人完全不同的生活。

But the historian attempting to reconstruct the distant past is always faced with a difficult task.

be faced with 面临

= be in the position in which one must deal with a problem or unpleasant situation

-- Automobile industry is faced with a bad future now.

-- A great many people are faced with losing their jobs.

-- In my opinion,you are faced with a problem as it were how to get enough time to study English.

文中 attempting to reconstruct the distant past 现在分词修饰 the historian，所以句子可转换为：

But the historian who is attempting to reconstruct the distant past is always faced with a difficult task.

-- The student attempting to learn Eghlish well in a year is faced with a difficult task.

He has to deduce what he can from the few scanty clues available.

available adj.可利用的

-- I have a dictionary available for you .

-- is there a place available for us to have a chat?

-- I know you are in need of a help,but excuse me,I don`t have any students available for you.

Even seemingly insignificant remains can shed interesting light on the history of early man.

remains = ruins 遗迹，遗物

insignificant = unimportant 不重要的

shed light on = throw light on = cast light on 解释，说明，揭示

= make a matter clear or understood

-- This information shed light on the problem.

-- Can you shed light on the case of the fire? 你能够解释这次火灾吗？

-- She will shed light on the case of stolen jewels.

Up to now, historians have assumed that calendars came into being with the advent of agriculture, for then man was faced with a real need to understand something about the seasons.

up to now = so far 到目前为止

come into being = come into existence 产生，出现

come into 的用法：

-- come into power 上台

-- come into use 开始使用

be faced with a real need to do sth. 面临着做某事的真正需要

-- We are faced with a real need to learn English well.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

Comprehension

1… 正确答案：B 根据课文内容选择

2… 正确答案：D 同上

3… 正确答案：A 同上

Structure

4… 正确答案：D

用将来时态才与原文相符合

5… 正确答案：C

原句中缺少主语，由 what 引导一个简单句做主语从句

6… 正确答案：B

code 指 the markings ；现在分词做状语

7… 正确答案：C

强调二者之间有联系，故排除 A，而 C 选项表示有可能联系，语气不肯定，符合题目要求。

Vocabulary

8… 正确答案：B

puzzle out:to find answer by thinking hard

9… 正确答案：A

同义词

10… 正确答案：A

令人费解的：puzzling ;符号 signs 代替了 code,而不是 singal,singal 表示信号。

11… 正确答案：C

A 选项，come to 必须接动词原形，如 come to record / come to exist

C 选项 ，come into existence(existence n.)

12… 正确答案：A

nomands:move from place to place

Lesson 39 Nothing to worry about 不必担心

New words and expression 生词和短语

Rough a 崎岖不平的=no smooth
Be rough on sb 对某人苛刻、无礼
Don't be rough on your friends.
Cut up rough 发脾气
We'd better not take the rough road.

Perturb v.使不安=very upset
Be perturbed about sth
His threats didn't perturb her in the least.
Disturb 并非用心去扰乱，语气弱得多
It is disturbing to think that a wild animal is still at large in the quite countryside.
Plague 病痛或类似事情的折磨而使人苦恼
The terrible disease plagued him.
Trouble 搅扰别人的安宁，舒适等
Sorry to give you trouble./sorry to trouble you.
Worry 表达不安的心情到了忧虑的程度
He is worried about his son's safety.
Fret 持续的忧虑、哀伤或焦急，表示烦燥的心情
He freted himself all the time for news of her.
Upset 内心忐忑不安
I feel upset now because I am afraid I hurt you.
Dismay 使沮丧

Scoop v.（用勺子）挖出，铲出
She scooped out some suger.
Make a scoop 走运，赚大钱，抢先得到新闻
That guy made a scoop.

Ominously adv 有预兆地
Ominous adj
Look at those ominous black clouds.
Omen n./v 预示着，预兆
This is a good/bad omen
The clouds omen rain.

Rip v.用力地撕开=Tear
Rip the letter open
Rip one's mask away.
Let things rip:=let things be

Rip into 攻击
Rip off 偷窃
Rip up the back 背后说坏话

Stretch n.一大片
A stretch of land
A stretch of water
At a stretch 连续地，不停顿地
We worked for hours at a stretch.
We drove fast on a stretch of open field.
He is unable to work for long stretches.他不能连续地工作。
A stretch of hills
也可作动词，
stretch out 伸出；到了极限
He stretched out his hand to get the apple.
There are forests stretching for hundreds of miles.
Transport was rather stretched in the Spring Festival.

Obstacle n.障碍
Lack of education is an obstacle to success.
Constitute an obstacle to 构成……障碍
Remove/overcome an obstacle 克服障碍
Put obstacle in sb's way 妨碍某人的发展
Obstacle to
Key/answer/shred/advantage/disadvantage/admission/damage + to 一起使用
Obstruction 障碍物，阻塞通道的东西
There must be an obstruction in the pipe.
Hindrance 阻碍事物发展的人或物，重点在妨碍事物的发展
You are more of hindrance than help.
Obstacle 阻于途中的物体，也指受阻碍的状况

grind v.摩擦
Grind wheat into flour
Grind sth to pieces
Grind one's teeth in anger

Halt n.（暂时的）停=stop
They halt for a few minutes.
Stop 最普通的用语，可代替 cease(formal),halt
Cease 非常正式的用词，表示中止
The heart will cease to beat when life ceased.
Pause 暂停
He paused for a breath.
Halt 又表示名词 Come to a halt/stop

Text 课文

get sb to do sth :persuade/advise sb to do
Please get them to finish the work as quickly as possible.
Please get hi to give up smoking.

be littered with 布满
be pitted with holes 坑坑洼洼
even though :even if
not in the least: not at all /not a bit / not the least bit 一点也不
反：not a little = very much

by no means /in no way /on no account /at no times /under no circumstances 绝不

a mere:: only

It was not (to say)……..

dusty track = dusty road 尘土飞扬的路面

look back 回头看

we looking back, wondering (从句做伴随状况语) if we were leaving a trail of oil an d petrol behind us.

give way to 为……所代替
The great clouds gradually broke up and give way to blue sky.
He has no intention of giving way to your demands.

In response to: in reaction to

Hardly…..when…..
He had hardly had time to settle down when he sold the house.
Before he had hardly had time to settle down, he sold the house.
We had hardly had time to worry about what might happen when we were back on the plane again.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

Comprehension
No.1 C
It seemed less likely that……
Meet with disaster
No.2 A
In response to renewed pleadings, Bruce stopped.
No.3 A He was not the sort of person to be perturbed by anything.

Structure

No.4 D

Believe sb./sth./that/in

No.5 A

What 感叹句的主题词是名词

How 感叹句的主题词是形容词

No.6 D

No.7 B

Run out of

Vocabulary

No.8 C

No.9 A

Hinder = obstacle

No.10 C

No.11 B

No12 C

旧版笔记

bumpy /washboard +road

I'm a rough diamond. 内秀

问路

Where is the hospital? Can you direct me to ..?

How do I get to .. What is the closest way to..?

Bear left, when you came across the fork.

run across

I run across an old friend in the street. 碰巧遇到

get sb to do = persuade sb to do sth

get sth done (get foot spiked)

get sth dong = begin to do sth

I need you professional advice.

Any suggestions?

We are hungry fo ideas.

Why not try this way?

No point in trying.

even though he is wealthy +he is not satisfied.

wealthy as he is

No matter how wealthy he is

how ever

regard less of how wealthy he is

Be he ever wealthy

Let him be wealthy

For all he

with all his wealthy

in spite of the fact that

despite the fact that

He was not in the least worry.
I was +not in the least /by no means /not bit /not the fewest(informal) +surprised at the news.

a mere = only a mere + exact number
He often described me how he picked up the painting for a mere 5 dollars.

It is not that …..but (that)……
It is not that I am not satisfied but that I have my own business to attend to.
No that I dislike the work, but I have no time to do it.

I have nobody to complain of except myself.
I have yet to receive your reply.我还没有收到你的回音。

He is as good a swimmer as any of us.

The new container holds 10 times as much as the old one.

cry over a novel 看小说落泪
give over his misfortune
rejoice over 高兴
Talk over a cup of coffee.
It’s no use crying over split milk.

Those days are long gone.
He’s strolling down the memory lane.
It’s just like yesterday.
I wish I could turn back the old days.

Old solders never die., they just fade away.

Stream trains give way to electric trains.
Ice and snow give way to warm weather.
When the wind changes.

The hand that rocks cradle,= mother

The news is welcome by students immediately.
The solution finds a immediate welcome away students.

impediment 发展过程中的障碍
barrier 不可逾越的障碍 obstacle

Lesson 40 Who's who 真假难辨

New words and expression 生词和短语

hoax n.骗局，戏弄
play a hoax/trick on sb. 戏弄
play a joke on sb. 开玩笑
The boy student is thinking how to play a hoax on his classmate.

deception n.欺骗，指无关紧要的欺骗，有时也指利已的不诚实行为
She referred to the pills as sweet, so the harmless deception made it easy for her child to take them.
deceit 强调一个人对另一个的故意欺骗
We are incapable of deceit.
fraud 复杂的对于公众的欺骗行为，着重指官方的欺骗或财政舞弊
trickery 语气上比 deception 严厉，着重指有步骤的诡计以追求私利
He had gained control of the company by trickery.

self-respecting a.自重的

indulge v.使沉迷
He indulged himself in smoking and drinking.
indulge oneself in
be indulged in
He was indulged in smoking and drinking.
indulge 的第二个语义是“纵容”
She indulges her only son.

pneumatic a.气动的

drill n.钻

silly a.无意义的，无聊的
foolish 强调愚蠢的，笨的，不明智的
I remonstrated him not to do anything foolish.
Silly 表示无意义的，无聊的，无知的
Being called silly is not compliment.
Don't play such a silly play.
stupid 强调人及言行缺乏良好的判断力，及一般的智能（主要指天生迟钝）
His son is as stupid as all.
dull 指理解迟钝，或健康状况不佳、工作过度而导致的缺乏敏锐的头脑
The old man's hearing has become dull.
She is a dull girl.表示人很呆

advance a.n.预先的，事先获得的
advance information 预先获得的信息/ in advance 提前

archway n.拱形门楼

remonstrate v.规劝，告戒（非常正式的用词）
remonstrate sb. to do sth.

ironically adv.讽刺地

permission n.许可
ask sb. for permission
give/grant sb. permission

grant v.同意，准予

Text 课文

Key structures

It has never been explained why he seems to enjoy doing it.

specialize in
He specialized in biology after graduation.

except the victims/ but the victims

tear up=destroy

take sb. seriously 严肃对待

be to do 结构
1. should
2. must
3. intend
Such a private thing should be avoided.
Such a private thing is to be avoided.
No students must leave school without the permission of the police.没有警察的允许，谁都不准离开。
No students are to leave school without the permission of the police.
We intend to start a work next week.

We are to start a work next week.

be grateful to sb. for sth.

that went on=that happened

as he pleased 随他的意愿做

four more=another four

fiercely=strongly

at this 听到
At the words, he got angry.听到这话，他生气了。
With the words, he left the room angrily.说完这话，他生气地离开了房间。

pointed out ironically 讥讽地指出
hardly be necessary 大可不必

under 与名词搭配表示一种被动的概念
under discussion/arrest/repair

make a telephone call 打一个电话

only 引导的时间状语从句或介词短语，以及条件状语从句在句首时，句子要倒装。

Lesson 41 Illusions of Pastoral peace 宁静田园生活的遐想

New words and expression 生词和短语

illusion： n. 幻想，错觉

under illusion that/under the impression that

eg: I am under the impression that you are honest.

He still lives under the illusion that country life is **superior to** town life.

He lives under that illusion that country life is superior to town life.

with live under the illusion

eg: I am under the illusion that he will help me every day.

under no illusion that: 没有…幻想

eg: We live under no illusion that country is beautiful.

have illusion about/have no illusion about: 对…不报有幻想

delusion: 幻想，幻觉。侧重于强调精神病人无中生有的幻觉

eg: He is under the delusion that somebody will kill him tomorrow.

He lives under the delusion that he will be killed sometime.

vision: 对美好未来的想象，憧憬

eg: I live under the vision that I have a bright future

从词根扩展词型：

illusioned: adj. 充满幻想的

eg: The world of children is illusioned.

illusionary: adj.错觉的，幻觉的

eg: Don't believe in him. What he said is illusionary picture.

illusive: adj. 虚假的，不可靠的

eg: what he described was illusive.

What he described was illusive. Don't depend on him any more.

imagine / imaginary / imaging

eg: I can not imagine building the Great Wall.

imaginary: 虚构的

eg: The story is imaginary. Do not be taken in.

imaginative: 富有想象力的

eg: Children are more imaginative than adults.

unimaginative: 缺乏想象力的

imaginable: 能够被想象的出的，用在修饰的名词后面

eg: This is the idea / way imaginable.

pastoral：adj. 田园诗的

eg: pastoral piece：田园般的宁静

breed (bred, bred)：vt. 培育

breed / raise / bring up / rear

breed: 1.书面用语，表示 raise,表示饲养宠物. breed 较 raise 更为正式

eg: raise / breed pets

raise / breed dogs

Do you raise dogs?

No, I do not think I have enough time to keep an eye on dogs.

2. 表示 bring up,把 sb. 培养成人 educate

eg: As mother, you must **breed good manners into** your child. 作为一个目前，你必须培养孩子良好的举止和习惯。

rear: vt. 培养 sb. 饲养 pets

eg: I must rear the child because I have the duty.

He rears / raise /breeds two dogs.

在口语中，推荐使用 raise/rear，在书面语言中，使用 breed。

3. breed = cause/lead to/result in/give rise to

eg: War breeds misery and ruin.

Your careless bred the accident.

breed in and in / breed out and out 近亲结婚，同种繁殖/非近亲结婚，异种繁殖

rapture：n. 欣喜若狂 / great joy / delight

in raptures

eg: At the news, they are in raptures.

At the news, they are greatly delighted.

in raptures over / about sth. 对…欣喜若狂

eg: I am in raptures about the new book.

go into raptures: feel delighted 感到非常高兴

eg: He went into raptures when he heard the good news.

go into raptures over/about/at sth. 对…感到非常高兴

joy / happiness

eg: We have a good time and we are full of happiness.

rapture>delight>joy

在口语中，建议使用 delight

delight: n. v. 使高兴，使喜悦

delighted: adj.

eg: I feel delighted./ I am in raptures.

ecstasy: 狂喜，出神

enchant: v/enchantment: n. 出身，魅力

eg: He was enchanted in thoughts.

elation: 兴高采烈，得意洋洋

eg: He has got the feeling of elation.

bliss: 极乐,无上的幸福。

eg: Nothing in the world can make you happier than bliss.

Recently, a sound sleep is my bliss.

glee: 高兴，欢欣，常用于文学，诗歌中

必须掌握的词汇：

rapture /in raptures /go into raptures / joy / happiness / delight / enchantment / elation / bliss / glee

extol：vt. 赞美，颂扬,书面= praise

eg: I can not find a good word to praise you/your ability.

I want to extol(高歌) the virtues pf human beings

compliment: 恭维

eg: Do you always compliment your friends?

applepolisher: 拍马屁的人

exalt: 赞扬，歌颂，吹捧

eg: You disgust me. Why do you extol such a stupid person?

laud: 赞美，书面语

eg: I want to do nothing but laud you.

What do you want to laud me?

I want to laud you beauty, ability, and your wealth.

extol / praise / compliment / exalt / laud

1. superior：adj. 优越的，没有比较级和最高级，只能是原形 = better than the average

be superior to: 比 sb. / sth.更加优越

eg: In my opinion, town life is superior to country life.

interior: 比…低，不如…

eg: Town life is interior to country life.

2. senior: 高级的，年长的

eg: senior high school: 高中

junior: 年幼的,下级的，下属的

3. posterior: 后于…

prior: 先于…

inferior: 不如…

eg: This job is prior to that one.

of no confidence / importance / significance: 无足轻重

eg: This work is of no significance. It should be inferior to that one.

cockcrow：n. 鸡叫

twitter：v. （鸟）吱吱叫，喊喊喳喳叫

glint：v. 闪烁

flash: 表示忽明忽暗的闪光，如：手电筒的光，镜子的光线

eg: Lighthouse is flashing in the distance.

glim: 透过某种媒介而闪现的微弱的光线，如，透过大雾

eg: Though the fog, we saw a lighthouse glimming.

glint: 闪烁，由于迅速闪烁的微弱的光 = shine for a moment

eg: The sun glinted through the leaves.阳光透过叶缝闪着微弱的光芒

glisten: 潮湿的物体上反射的光泽和光辉

eg: The white snow glistened **in** all the colors of rainbow.

flicker: 表示蜡烛。油灯在即将熄灭的时候的摇曳不定的光

eg: On the cold night, I sat in front of the only candle which was flickering.

pasture：n. 牧场

idyllic：adj. 田园诗的

eg: He is leading an idyllic life

virtually：adv. 几乎，差不多

dubious：adj. 可疑的，怀疑的 = doubtful / uncertain / questionable / suspicious / sceptical

be dubious about / of 对…不肯定,表示怀疑的 doubtful / uncertain

suspect: 表示一种肯定的怀疑，猜疑的

eg: I doubt whether he stole the car.

Cats are suspicious of human beings.

I am doubtful of your ability.

I am dubious about your ability.

questionable: 提出质疑的，不肯定的，值得争议的

eg: This is a questionable conclusion / decision.

sceptical: 怀疑论的

eg: Your idea is sceptical.

privilege：n. 特权

misery：n. 苦难

acquaintance：n. 熟人

treat：n. 难得的乐事，享受

be one's treat: 请客吃饭

eg: Let's go to have dinner. It's my treat.

treat sb. to dinner

eg: It is pleasure to treat you to dinner.

stand treat

eg: I stand treat. 做东

treat sb. as…

eg: I treat him as my best friend.

treat with sb. = talk with sb.

eg: I can not bring it to a conclusion. I want to treat with you.

treat of sth. sb. = speak of, talk of

eg: we speak /treat of tramps contemptuously.

Having a dinner with you is my treat.

dweller：n. 居住者

stagger：v. 摇晃，蹒跚

exotic：adj. 导乎寻常的，外来的

glow：n. 白炽光

descend：v. 下落，降临（书面用语）

eg: Darkness descends very soon because winter is coming.

从…上传下来 **descend from…**

eg: The watch descend from his grandfather.

突然的到访，突然的袭击 **descend on/upon**

eg: He looked me up suddenly.

He called on me suddenly.

He visited me suddenly.

Yesterday, my best friend descended on me.

传给谁… **descend to… descend from sb. to sb.**

eg: The watch is descend from grandfather to grandson.

ascend: 上升

eg: The aeroplane is ascending at tremendous speed.

tuck: v. 缩进，隐藏

obstinately：adv. 固执地，顽固地,不容易被改变

obstinate: adj. = stubborn 倔强

eg: If you are an obstinate person, nobody can change your mind.

He is a stubborn person, he insists on finishing what he wants to do.

Don’t try to persuade him because he is an obstinate person.

persistent: 固执己见

eg: If you always follow your friends around, I should say, you are a persistent person.

strong-minded: 顽强的，意志力顽强的

eg: If you are a strong minded person, you can do everything well.

as stubborn as a mule: 倔强如牛

Text 课文:

Illusions of Pastoral peace 宁静田园生活的遐想

The quiet life of the country（the quiet country life） has never appealed to me. （背诵）在论述好处坏处的时候，应该在第一句话时救应该表达个人的意见。组织一篇议论文时，主要有三段：开头段、支持段和结尾段。在开头段中的第一句话或是最后一句话讲明观点。 City born and city bred. （独立主格结构，as I was born and bred in a city）

I have always regarded the country as (think of … as… / refer to … as) something you look at through a train window, or something you occasional visit during the weekend. (扩展句进行说明你的观点)。Most of my friends live in the city, yet（however）they always go into raptures at the mere mention (at the mere mention of / at the sight of/ at the news of / at the touch of / at the mention of) of the country. （具体的事例进行说明观点，例子在文章中是必不可少的）

Though they extol the virtues of the peaceful life (从本课开始，注意文章的安排，结构的布局和关键词的重复，引导让步状语从句，应注意其主句), only one of hem has ever gone to live in the country and he was back in town within six months. （discussion: why writer talk about this sentence: hypocritical 虚伪 ie: The country life never appeals to me, and never appeals to others. 从反面进行论述）

Even he still lives under the illusion that country life is somehow superior to town life.（背诵，the writer emphasizes that his friend is hypocritical）(the life of country / the country / country life 重复使用关键词能够引导读者跟着你的思路走)

He is forever talking about the friendly people, the clean atmosphere, the closeness to nature and the gentle pace of living. （Discussion: why writer talks about the virtue of country life? 作者的意图是讨论城市生活优于乡村生活，为什么要提及乡村生活的美德呢？Every picture has two sides, 应论述其好处，再进行逐一否决）

Nothing can be compared, he maintains, with the first cockcrow, the twittering of birds at dawn, the sight of the rising sun glinting on the trees and pastures. （the writer illustrates the country life advantageous further）

This idyllic pastoral scene is only part of the picture.（背诵，从下文开始使用对比法进行论述）My friend fails to mention the long and friendless winter evenings in front of the TV -- virtually the only form of entertainment. He says nothing about the poor selection of goods in the shops, or（表并列）about those unfortunate people who have to travel from the country to the city every day to get to work.

Why people are prepared to tolerate a four-hour journey each day for the dubious privilege of living in the country is beyond me.（本文重点句：背诵 why 所引导的从句

1. stand / bear / put up with / endure / tolerate
2. dubious: doubtful / uncertain）

They could be saved so much misery and expense if they chose to live in the city where they rightly belong. (Conclusion: the writer illustrates the topic: the country life is never appeals to him. The writer talks about both advantages and disadvantages of country life in order to comparison, but he did not draw the conclusion about the comparison.)

If you can do without (manage/do without 没有…也能忍受 eg: I can do without car.) the few pastoral pleasures of the country, you will find the city can provide you with the best that life can offer. （背诵）There are advantages of living in the country, but there are few living in the country than living in the big city.

You never have to travel miles to see your friends. They invariably(always) live nearby and are always available (able to be used anytime，主要是用做表语，也可以用于定语，用做定语放在被修饰词的后面 eg: I am available to have a chat with you. The books in our classroom are available for you. I have a dictionary available for you.) for an informal chat or an evening's entertainment.

Some of my acquaintances in the country come up to town once or twice a year to visit the theatre as a special treat. For them this is a major (demanding：要求高的，需要时间的) operation which involves considerable planning.

As the play draws to its close （near its end）, they wonder whether they will ever catch that last train home. The cit dweller never experiences anxieties of this sort. （背诵 eg: We can keep ourselves free from the anxieties of this sort which afflict the country dweller. Eating food with different taste is also a pleasure. ）

The latest exhibitions, films, or plays are only a short bus ride away. Shopping, too, is always a pleasure. The latest exhibitions, films, or plays are only a short bus ride away. Shopping, too, is always a pleasure.

There is so much variety that you never have to make do with second best. Country people run wild when they go shopping in the city and stagger home loaded with (方式状语) as many of the exotic items as they can carry. （背诵）

Nor is the city without its moments of beauty.（双重否定表肯定）

There is something comforting about the warm glow shed （流泻）by advertisements on cold wet winter nights. Few things could be more impressive than the peace that descends on deserted city streets at weekends when the thousands that travel to work every day are tucked away in their homes in the country.

It has always been a mystery to me who city dwellers, who appreciate all these things, obstinately pretend that they would prefer to live in the country. 结论句与第一段第一句进行呼应。

Vocabulary:

extol the virtues

extol = praise highly

praise 比 extol 的语义要弱的多

virtue:美德 = advantage

illusion 幻觉，错觉 = false idea

superior to 比…强 better than

maintain = hold

glinting: 闪烁 glistening

tolerate: 忍受 = endure, bear, stand, put up with
suffer without complaining

beyond me: cannot be understood by me
beyond my understanding

多项选择

1. D （该选项背熟）
   think sb. hypocritical: 认为某人很虚伪
   maintain a preference for sth: 坚持一种想法

2. B（题目背熟）
   in terms of/regarding
   have advantage over sb/sth: 比…更具有优势
   within easy reach of sb. 方便，容易达到

3. A
   allude to: mean

前 3 道题的题干和答案需要掌握

4. C

5. A
   tire of：厌倦
   eg: I am tired of doing so.
   never: 表一般状态，用一般现在时

6. C
   on only short bus right away 只有几站路的路程

7. 重点 B
   many of the… 许多物品中的许多
   You can take as many as you like.
   You can take as many books as you can.

8. B

It has been a mystery to me.
be mystified by: 被…所困扰
be freighted by: 被…所吓着

9. A
altogether: 总共，完全
virtually:几乎
certainly:肯定的，当然的
in particular: particularly 特别，尤其是
pretty well:相当不错，相当好（AE），= almost (BE)

10. B
do without, go without, manage without

11. B
near its end 接近尾声 = draw to its close
reach its climax: 达到高潮

12. A
imposition : n.强人所难
impose: v.
Do not impose your idea on me. 不要把你的想法强加给我
imprint: 印记，印痕
give sb a (deep) impression: 给某人印象
have impact
eg: what he said give me a deep impression
what he said has a deeply impact.
注意动词搭配

Lesson 42 Flash 无讲解

Lesson 43 Fully Insured 全保险

New words and expression 生词和短语

Insure v.投保
=make a contract that promises to pay a sum of money in case of accident,damage,loss,etc.
Insure sb/sth against 给某人或某物保险，以防万一
—Employer must insuer their employees against accident.
Insurance n.保险
Insurance company 保险公司
同意词：
assure v.向……保证，使确信，它的宾语一定是人
--I assure you that I'll bring your happiness.
ensure:保证，确保，宾语可以是物
--Hard work can ensure our success.
guarantee:担保
--I can guarantee the watch for ten months.

recover ① vi.使得到补偿，弥补=make up for ,compensate for
② vt,康复 recover from
--Nothing can recover our health.
同义词：
regain:经过努力而获得什么
--regain one's courage 重新获得勇气
recover our courage 恢复勇气
--He regained/recovered his enthusiasm.
restore 恢复(健康,原状)vt
--He has been restored.
--He has recoverd.不及物
heal vt.治愈（创伤，伤口）
--His wound has healed.

admittedly adv.公认地=we are admitting that
inevitably 不可避免地
--Admittedly he is a great person.

purchase vt.买（比 buy 要正式，主要用于书面语，还可以是名词）
--Can you purchase freedom with money?
--Yesterday I bought a tie,that look terrible.
purchase money 买进价格
purchasing power 购买力
not worth a day's purchase.危在旦夕

--His life is not worth a day’s purchase.

annual a.一年一度的

teenager n.(13 至 19 岁）的青少年

capsize vi.(船)翻
--The ship capsized because of the rough wave.

shiver v.打颤，发抖=tremble
整体的颤抖用 shiver,部分的用 tremble
--His hands are trembling.
--His trembling voive betrayed his secret.
--He is shivering with cold.
shudder 因为寒冷害怕等因素导致的全身抖动,可替换 shiver

Haul v.拖曳=pull with effort our force 强调用力拉
--They pauled the boat up the beach.

同义词：
pull 应用范围最广,连续不断的拉
drag 拖拉,强调二者有摩擦力
--The stone was so heavy that I had to drag it into the room.
--After a day’s hard work,I dragged myself home.
drag oneself to 拖着疲惫的身躯去
tug 飞快地拖拉,强调幅度大，动作快
--Look,a thief tug the bicycle.
tow 借助外力拖拉较大较重的物体
--They towed the huge stone with a truck/lorry.

agonizing a.精神紧张的，提心吊胆的
agonize v.使精神紧张，使极度痛苦
---This frustration agonized him.
agonized 感到提心吊胆的
agony n.=great pain 极度痛苦，常用介词 in
在英文中需注意意境，如
---At the news he is an agony of joy.听到这个消息，他感到极度的高兴。

perch vi.位于（高处）be on the hige position
perch on 栖息
---A brid perched on the branch of the tree of the moment.
---The little village perches among the hills.
knock sb off his perch 打败，击败
---I knocked him off his perch yesterday.

knock sb off his perch 打败，击败
---I knocked him off his perch yesterday.
come off one’s perch 不再骄傲自大
---Put your pride in your pocket.不要妄自尊大
---After his failure,he came off his perch.
同义词：
stand v.高高地矗立
Look,a great tree stands on the mountain.
locate ,situate 是正式用语，vt. be located/situated＋介词＝lie

☆precariously adv.危险地，不稳固地
precarious adj. =unsafe,not firm,not steady :强调不安全，不稳定，不稳固
---An actor's life would be too precarious for me.演员的生活很不稳定。
同义词：
dangerous:强调很危险
---Playing with matches is dangerous.
hazardous 碰运气的，冒险的,具变幻莫测之义
---Climbing the high mountain is hazardous.
adventruous:爱冒险的，胆子很大的
---Are you adventurous?
perilous :语义程度比 dangerous 要高得多，强调被伤害或被伤害或被杀害的危险
---It is perilous to do so.这样做会丢命的！

overbalance v.失去平衡

clamp n.夹钳，夹板

vertically adv.垂直地－－ vertical adj.
反义词：horizontally 平行地－－horizontal adj.平等的
－－－I draw a line horizontally,and I draw another line vertically.

torrent n.激流，洪流

rebound v 弹回
－－－The ball is rebounded.

Notes on the Text 课文

Insuring public or private property is a standard practice in most countries in the world.
---This practice is accepted and it is acceptable.
insuring 动名词做主语，具名词地功能也具动词的特点。

If, however,you were holding an open air garden party or a fete it would be equally possible to insure yourself in the event of bad weather.
eqully=alike,in the same way
in the event of=in case of
---In the event of being sick,you'd better not go to the party.为防生病，你最好不要去参加那个 party 了。
in the event that
---You must work harder and harder in the event that you get the frustration.
---In the event that you will get the frustration you must work harder and harder.

Needless to say,the bigger the risk an insurance company takes,the higher the premium you will have to pay.
needless to say,插入语
the more……the more……
---The older you get,the more belongings you will accumulate.年龄越大你积攒的东西就越多。
take the risk 冒险，承担

It is not uncommon to hear that a shipping company has made a claim for the cost of salvaging a sunken ship.
it is not uncommon to hear=it is quite common,双重否定用于强调语气
1、not＋否定 adj　is not unreasonable
2、not＋without　I can't live without you.
3、no＋not/no ＋no　两个 no 都是用来修饰限定名词
---There is no cat that doesn't like fish.
---There is nothing he can't do.
---He does't have any meals without meat.
---There is no rule that has no exception/that doesn't have exception.
make a claim 提出索赔要求

But the claim made by a local authority to recover the cost of salvaging a sunker jpie dish must surely be unique.
unique＝very much particular 独一无二
recover＝make up for 弥补
Slef-discipline required a sedulous work.需要作出艰苦努力的自我约束。
句中 to 做 claim 的定语，不能 in order to 用替换。
But the .claim　was made　by a　local authority　in order to recover the cost of ……

---From finding a right place to put the lastest edition.
---From finding the right place for us to put the latest edition.

这是一项可以使你学好英语的计划。
---This is a good plan for you in order to learn English well.(×）
---This is a good plan for you to learn English well.

The pie committee dicided that the best way to transport the dish would be by canal
the best way to do sth.做某事的最好办法

Dancing proved to be more than the dish coule bear,for during the party it capsized and sank in seven feet of water.
动名词＋prove（to be) more than……

The pie committee telephoned a local garage owner who arrived in a recovery to salvage the pie dish.
此处 to 可用 in order to 替换

They had little difficulty in finding it,but hauling it out of the water proved to be a serious problem.
difficulty 不可数名词，费力；可数名词，各种困难的事情
have little difficulty in h 毫不费力
have much difficulty 很费力
haul 从下往上拖；drag 平行的拖拉，接触面的拖拉

The sides of the dish were so smooth that it was almost impossible to attcach hawsers and chains to the rim without damaging it.
it was almost impossible……
attach to
attach＝tie 栓，系
rim=the sides of the dish

Eventually chains were fixed to one end of the dish and a powerful winch was put into operation.
eventually=at last 语气比 at last 强烈的多，重点强调经过努力而终于如何
终于：强调失败的结果用 in the end
表示成功用 at last ，eventually
finally 只表示顺序的最后
put into operation=use

For one agonizing monent,the dish was perched precariously on the bank of the canal,but it suddenly overvalanced and slid back into the water.
precariously=unsteady,unfirmly
slide back into 回复老样子

The men were now obliged to try once more.
be obliged to do=be forced to do

The dish now had to be lifted vertically because one edge was resting against the side of the canal.
lift 提起，吊起，由低到高的动作
rest against 依靠，紧靠

There was a danger that the wave would rebound off the other side of the bank and send the dish plunging into the water again.
that the wave ……为同位语从句修饰 danger
rebound off 弹回
send 造成，使得＋ving（做宾语补足语）
---What send you doing so?什么使得你怎么做呢？
---If the huge wave had rebounded off the other side of the bank,the pie dishi would have been sent to
water.如果当时大浪从对岸折回来的话，这个盘子就会重新落入水中。
---If the huge wave had rebounded off the other side of the bank,it would have sent dish plunging into the water again.

By workong at tremendous speed ,the men managed to get the dish on to dry land before the wave returned.
manage to do =be able to to,succeed in doing

--The ship capsized because of the rough wave.

Shiver v.打颤，发抖=tremble
整体的颤抖用 shiver,部分的用 tremble
--His hands are trembling.
--his trembling voive betrayed his secret.
--He is shivering with cold.
shudder 因为寒冷害怕等因素导致的全身抖动,可替换 shiver

Haul v.拖曳=pull with effort our force 强调用力拉
--The pauled the boat pu the beach.
pull 应用范围最广,连续不断的拉
Drag 拖拉,强调二者有摩擦力
The stone was so heavy that I had to drag it into the room.
After a day’s hard work,I dragged myself home.
drag oneself to 拖着疲惫的身躯去
tug 飞快地拖拉,强调幅度大，动作快
--Look,a thief tug the bicycle.

tow 借助外力拖拉较大较重的物体
They towed the huge stone with a truck/lorry.

agonizing a.精神紧张的，提心吊胆的
agonize v.使精神紧张，使极度痛苦
This frustration agonized him.
agonized 感到提心吊胆的
agony n.=great pain 极度痛苦，常用介词 in
在英文中需注意意境，如
At the news he is an agony of joy.听到这个消息，他感到极度的高兴。

perch vi.位于（高处）be on the hige position
perch on 栖息
A brid perched on the branch of the tree of the moment.
The little village perches among the hills.

stand v.高高地矗立
Look,a great tree stands on the mountain.
Locate ,situate 是正式用语，vt be located/situated＋介词＝lie
Knock sb off his perch 打败，击败
--I knocked him off his perch yesterday.
Come off one’s perch 不再骄傲自大
Put your pride in your pocket.不要妄自尊大
After his failure,he came off his perch.

☆precariously adv.危险地，不稳固地
precarious =unsafe,not firm,not steady :强调不安全，不稳定，不稳固
An actor’s life would be too precarious for me.演员的生活很不稳定。
dangerous:强调很危险
Playing with matches is dangerous.
hazardous 碰运气的，冒险的,具变幻莫测之义
Climbing the high mountain is hazardous.
adventruous:爱冒险的，胆子很大的
Are you adventurous?
perilous :语义程度比 dangerous 要高得多，强调被伤害或被伤害或被杀害的危险
It is perilous to do so.这样做会丢命的！

overbalance v.失去平衡

clamp n.夹钳，夹板

Vertically adv.垂直地
adj vertical
反义词：horizontally 平行地－－horizontal

I draw a line horizontally,and I draw another line vertically.
Vertical
Horizontally adv.平行地
Horizontal a.平等的

torrent n.激流，洪流

rebound v 弹回
The ball is rebounded.

Text 课文

Insuring public or private property is a standard practice in most countries in the world.
This practice is accepted and it is acceptable.
insuring 动名词做主语，具名词地功能也具动词的特点。

If, however,you were holding an open air garden party or a fete it would be equally possible to insure yourself in the event of bad weather.
eqully=alike,in the same way
in the event of=in case of
In the event of being sick,you'd better not go to the party.为防生病，你最好不要去参加那个 party 了。
in the event that
You must work harder and harder in the event that you get the frustration.
In the event that you will get the frustration you must work harder and harder.

Needless to say,the bigger the risk an insurance company takes,the higher the premium you will have to pay.
needless to say,插入语
the more……the more……
The older you get,the more belongings you will accumulate.年龄越大你积攒的东西就越多。
take the risk 冒险，承担

It is not uncommon to hear that a shipping company has made a claim for the cost of salvaging a sunken ship.
it is not uncommon to hear=it is quite common,双重否定用于强调语气
1、not＋否定 adj is not unreasonable
2、not＋without I can't live without you.
3、no＋not/no ＋no 两个 no 都是用来修饰限定名词
There is no cat that doesn't like fish.

There is nothing he can't do.
He does't have any meals without meat.
There is no rule that has no exception/that doesn't have exception.
make a claim 提出索赔要求

But the claim made bu a local authority to recover the cost of salvaging a sunker jpie dish must surely be unique.
unique＝very much particular 独一无二
recover＝make up for 弥补
Slef-discipline required a sedulous work.需要作出艰苦努力的自我约束。
句中 to 做 claim 的定语，不能 in order to 用替换。

From finding a right place to put the lastest edition.
From finding the right place for us to put the latest edition.
这是一项可以使你学好英语的计划。
This is a good plan for you in order to learn English well.(×）
This is a good plan for you to learn English well.

The pie committee dicided that the best way to transport the dish would be by canal
the best way to do sth.做某事的最好办法

Dancing proved to be more than the dish coule bear,for during the party it capsized and sank in seven feet of water.
动名词＋prove（to be) more than……

The pie committee telephoned a local garage owner who arrived in a recovery to salvage the pie dish.
此处 to 可用 in order to 替换

They had little difficulty in finding it,but hauling it out of the water proved to be a serious problem.
difficulty 不可数名词，费力；可数名词，各种困难的事情
have much difficulty 很费力
haul 从下往上拖；drag 平行的拖拉，接触面的拖拉

The sides of the dish were so smooth that it was almost impossible to attcach hawsers and chains to the rim without damaging it.
it was almost impossible……
attach to
attach＝tie 栓，系
rim=the sides of the dish

Eventually chains were fixed to one end of the dish and a powerful winch was put into operation.
eventually=at last 语气比 at last 强烈的多，重点强调经过努力而终于如何
终于：强调失败的结果用 in the end
表示成功用 at last ，eventually
finally 只表示顺序的最后
put into operation=use

For one agonizing monent,the dish was perched precariously on the bank of the canal,but it suddenly overvalanced and slid back into the water.
precariously=unsteady,unfirmly
slide back into 回复老样子

The men were now obliged to try once more.
be obliged to do=be forced to do

The dish now had to be lifted vertically because one edge was resting against the side of the canal.
lift 提起，吊起，由低到高的动作
rest against 依靠，紧靠

There was a danger that the wave would rebound off the other side of the bank and send the dish plunging into the water again.
that the wave ……为同位语从句修饰 danger
rebound off 弹回
send 造成，使得＋ving（做宾语补足语）
What send you doing so?什么使得你怎么做呢？
If the huge wave had rebounded off the other side of the bank,the pie dishi would have been sent to
water.如果当时大浪从对岸折回来的话，这个盘子就会重新落入水中。
If the huge wave had rebounded off the other side of the bank,it would have sent dish plunging into the water again.

By workong at tremendous speed ,the men managed to get the dish on to dry land before the wave returned.
manage to do =be able to to,succeed in doing

Lesson 44 Speed and comfort 速度和舒适

New words and expression 生词和短语 s 生词短语

positively adv. 绝对地，完全地
in positive way.
the food is positively uneatable
can you really do it positively? 相当于 **sure, of course, certainly, no problem.**

compartment n. 分隔间或单间

cramped adj.窄小的

stuffy adj. 憋气的，闷气的
同义词:
airless

monotonous adj. 枯燥的，乏味的
I don't like the way of your teaching, it is monotonous.
I hate the monotonous rhythm of travelling by train.
同义词：
tendious 乏味的，重点突出 **long and uninteresting.**
dull = interesting
I can't get along well with Mary, she is a dull girl.
Look at that dull person.
tiresome = tiring 由于疲劳而厌倦
He is tried of sleeping on the floor, because he has done so for ten years.
Long lasting meeting are tiring.
You are a little bit tiresome.
I am tired of doing so. --> be tired of
I am bored with doing so. --> be bored with

rhythm n. 有节奏的运动

click v. 发出咔哒声

lull v. 催人欲睡
The mother lulled her baby to sleep.
--> lull sb to sleep.
What a good day, the wind lulled! 风和日利
lullaby 催眠曲

snatch n. 短时，片段

in snatches 断断续续地

It rains in snatches.

On the train, we sleep in snatches.

sleeper n. 卧铺

fumble v.乱摸，摸索

He fumbled the door open. 他摸索着把门打开了。

He fumbled in his pocket for the key. 他在口袋里摸索着钥匙。

inspection n.检查

inevitably adv. 必然地

Human beings are motal,so inevitably we make mistakes,no matter how wise and eminent you are.

destination n.目的地

exhaust v.使精疲力尽

I am exhausted. 我筋疲力尽了

What exhaustes you? 什么使你筋疲力尽呀？

I am tired out.

同义词

wear out 使疲劳，使磨损

Look, your dress is worn out. 瞧，你的衣服穿坏了

After a day's work hard, I am worn out.

knock sb out 把某人打昏，使疲劳

That's a miracle that the old lady knocked the boxer out.

The arduous work knocked me out. 这项艰难的工作使我筋疲力尽。

fatigue 使筋疲力尽，使疲劳（书面）

The piece of work fatigues me.

motorway n.快车道

ferry n. 渡船

cruise n.巡游船

civilize v.使文明

spacioius adj. 宽敞的

Is your classroom spacious?

Our classroom is not so spacious as that one.

I would like to lie in the spacious classroom instead of sitting here.

同义词：

rommy

a roomy house

capacious 容量大的　capacity 容量

commodious 宽敞的，便利的　roomy and conventient

The cinema is commodious = The cinema is both roomy and convenient.

expansive 易膨胀的，广阔的

I'd like to appreciate expansive sea/ocean. 我喜欢欣赏浩瀚的海洋

vast 幅员辽阔的

The desert in our country is vast, that is a major problem

extensive 广泛的，广阔的　extensive reading 泛读　intensive reading 精读

You can enlarge your vocabulary by intensive reading.

widespread　流传广的，分布广的

The kind of news is widespread.

far-reaching 触及很远的，流传久远的

I have a good idea and it is far-reaching.

seasick adj.晕船的

airsick　晕飞机的/

carsick　晕车的

bussick　晕公交车的

bicyclesick　晕自行车的

homesick　想家的。

intimidate v.恐吓，恫吓

Nothing can intimidate me.

disadvantage n.短处，缺点

exhilarating adj. 使人高兴的

I'm exhilarated by your visit. 对于你的来访我是高兴极了。

同义词：

stimulate 刺激，激励　stimulate sb to do sth.

Your courage stimulated me to do so.

inspire 激励（通过言辞）　inspire sb to do

stir 鼓舞，鼓动　Who stired you to do it like this? You should look before you leap.

spur 刺激　His rude remarks spured me.

encourage　He always encourages me to study hard when I am unwilling to do so.

escapist n.逍遥者

sip v.呷，　drink a little at a time.　---> take a sip of 喝一点

I'm really thirsty, would you mind me taking a sip of your coffee?
I'm so hungry that I want to have a taste of your cake.
You can take a sip of my coffee, but my cake only belongs to me.

champagne n.香槟酒

refinement n.精心的安排
refine 使人精力充沛
Coffee always refined us.
Coffee always made us fresh.

breathtaking adj. 激动人心的
The picture takes my breath. 这幅画太美了。
The girl takes my breath.
The beautiful dress takes my breath.
decide to go for a trip 决定旅行
We decided to go for a breathtaking trip.

soar v.高飞
We can't soar in the blue sky.

effortlessly adv. 不费力地

landscape n.景色 = extraordinary sight
同义词：
scenery 自然风光 secne 场面 view 透过窗户看到的景色
Our classroom doesn't have a good view.
The rising sun in Tai Mountain is a spectacle.

fresh adj. 精神饱满的
a fresh man
Look at that guy, he is really fresh.

uncrumpled adj. 没有跨下来
He went home fresh and uncrumpled.

Notes on the Text 课文注释

现在分词短语修饰 people
People who travel long distance frequently.
frequently 定期地，经常地 quite often

have to decide = have to make up their mind.

would rather; would sooner 要和动词原形搭配
had better do 最好做...
would perfer to do.
would rather do.

hardly + anyone 等不定式时不倒装，在这相当于 nobody;
或 nearly nobody, virtually nobody.

---

exhausted 在这里是形容词做状语

wear out; tire out' fatigue; knock out

The writer emphasizes disadvantage of travelling by train.

Travelling by car is more unpleasant than travelling in the train.

fairly 的语气最弱的
more often than not 主要用在书面语言当中，means very often ,usually, frequently

by comparison 通过对比
off = provide

comforts 在这儿指代 service

be likely to do 有可能...
it is probable that

could not be + 形容词比较级
can not be + 形容词比较级
no ... could be
Nobody can be more beautiful than you.
No place can/could be better. 没有什么地方比这儿更好。

relatively 相对来讲
A large number of people are prepared to sacifice their higher pay for the privilege of becoming white collar.
Relatively, few people are prepared to sacifice their holiday fime for the dubious pleasure of travelling by sea.
dubious = uncertian = doubtful
Aeroplanes are famous/well-known for its being dangerous.

have the disadvantage of
have the reputation of

match sb for
but nothing can be equal to them.

在第二部分当中是采用对比法
It is almost impossible to take your mind off the journey.
You don't have to/needn't devise ways of taking your mind off the journey.

hardly
You had hardly had time to feel tired when you arrived at your destination.
on some services 在这里指代 on airplane.

keep one's mind off 转移注意力
keep sb occupied 集中注意力

however = no matter how

If you can do without the few pleasures of travelling by land, you will find aeroplanes provide us with the best.

Please illustrate the disadvantage and advantage of studying abroad.
at first, you must illustrate your topic, the disadvantage of studying at home.
the disvantage of studying abroad
最后通过实例详细论述出国留学的好处。

支持段一般是由一段或两段组成，目的是支持论点。
每段的开头一句话和最后一句话一定要和主题密切联系。
最主要的方法有三种： 对比法，比较法，例证法
结尾段起到的作用是再次肯定和强调主题，加深读者印象。
段落是由主题句，扩展句组成。 扩展句之后是具体的例子。
想表达不同的理论概念，要用转折句。
主题句应该要简练，要明确地表达中心思想。
主题句应该具有概括性，但是概括又不能太宽泛。
主题句确立之后，还要进一步利用扩展句来说明解释主题句的内容。
重复使用关键词。
内容要连贯。
衔接词的使用
1、起。 at first ,first, firstly, in the beginning, first of all
at present, nowaday, currently, to start with, to begin with, for one thing
for another, in one hand, in the other hand.
2、承。 to start with; at the same time; at any rate; besides; apart from; in addition;
in addition to; furthermore; in fact; actually; as a matter of fact; in reality;
moreover; no doubt; without any doubt; similarly; in the same way; meanwhile;
in the meantime; obviously; particularly; such as; for example; for instance;

consequently; as a consequence; as a result; what is more; what is better;

3、折。 after all; all the same; anyway; somehow; but; however; nevertheness; nonetheless; conversely; by this time; on the contray; despite; in despite of;
in contempt of; in disregard of; by contrast; by comparison; fortunately;
in other words; on the other hand; unlike; whereas;

4、合。 主要是用来小结上文的或是用做结尾段。
accordingly; as has been noted(above); as has been mentioned; as has been talked of;
at last; finally; lastly; at length; briefly; in brie; in short; in a word;
in conculsion; in sum; in summary; to sum up; to summarize; to conclude;
no doubt; undoubtedly; truly; certainly; positively; surely; obviously;
on the whole;

可以使用谚语作为 topic
as the saying goes; as proverb goes;
定义法
可以使用提问法
比如说： illustrate your opinion about friendship
Do you have a good/large circle of friends?
概括法： I quite agree with this idea.
间接开头法： 先叙述别人的观点，然后引出自己的真实看法。

在读文章时
1、注意结构安排
2、找出文章关键词
3、注意每一自然段的段首段尾

Special difficulties 难点

Cramped and stuffy : not roomy, not spacious
lacking space, airless,
Lacking space and air
Monotonous : unchanging
Lulls : cause to sleep
In snatches: not continuously
Destination : terminal
Destination is a place where someone are going.
Stretch your legs: have a rest, go for a walk
Sacrifice: give up for a purpose.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1、 d

the great disadvantage that shared by train and car travel alike is
alike : as well

D. was adored by the rich and poor alike.

2、c

distraction : 转移注意力

such… as 比如…

He can speak such languages as English, Japanese, Chinese.

3、c

No forms of transport can be more comfortable and faster than aeroplanes.

4、d

5、b

6、a

如果内心的期望和事实没有关系，表达‘如果’采用的结构形式不是 if，不是 suppose，而是 providing or provided.

I'll take all the shirts if/provided you reduce the price to $1 each.

7、c

in addition 表示承上启下，除此外还有

如果用 apart from , besides, in addition to , 必须和宾语进行搭配。

It 是形式主语

It is no use crying. 哭没有用。

It is no use pretending that I didn't see him.. 假装没看见他是没有用的。

8、d

if it is not = if it is not calm

be prone to sth. To 在这是介词，相当于 be likely to do 表示极有可能。

During cold winter, we are likely to catch cold.

During cold winter, we are prone to cold.

9、b

10、a

sit up 不睡觉 = stay up

install 安装，固定

let's install a television set on the wall..

11、c

spectacle = landscape

scenery 自然风光

scene 场景

12、b

get over 从…恢复过来

He hasn't got over his wife's death

He doesn't get over his illness.

Get away from 从…逃脱掉

Lesson 45 The power of the press 新闻报道的威力

New words and expression 生词和短语

democratic adj.民主的 democratic country 民主的国家

restrict vt.限制=keep within a certain limit.

--The prisoners' activity is restricted within narrow limits.

辨析

limit 表示时间,空间,程序等方面的限定,且限定到某一个点,如果超出这个点很可能受到惩罚。

restrict 只说明限制范围

--Land development must be limited.我们必须限制土地的开发。

--He restricts himself to two cigarettes everyday.他每天限制自己抽两只烟。

restrict sb to

confine v.控制在……范围内

confine sb.to

--I confine myself to two cigarettes a day.

--The boy is confined to the dark room.

--The boy is restricted to the dark room.

cramp vt.限制（某人的活动或限制动植物的生长）

--Nobody can cramp children.

--You can not cramp my activity.

hamper v.限制，妨碍,困累

--What hampered you to do so?

--The housewife has a lots to do every day,because she is hampered by povert 被贫困所困扰。

--My limited vocabulary hampers my reading.

impede v.限制，阻碍（相当于 hamper）

impede doing sth

--Nothing will impede my studying English.

bound v.限定，以……为界限

abuse v.滥用

--Don't abuse your authority.不要乱用职权。

--We shouldn't abuse oue rights.不要乱用自己的权力。

--For VIP,they shouldn't abuse their privilege.

untold a.=too many to be counted 数不尽的

--There are untold stars in the sky.

--I am afflicted by/with untold anxieties.

numerous a.无数的

countless a.无数的

--As hunma being ,we can't keep ourselves free from countless anxieties.

countable:can be counted

uncountable

numberless 无数的，没有房号的

--This is a numberless room.

numberable 数得清的
innumberable 不能数得清的
perpetual a.永久的，永远的(不休止的，一直持续下去的,用于不易受阻的)
--They are as poor as church mouse, they are have to struggle against perpetual poverty.
permanent a.
eternal
everlasting
--Lasting for a long time
constant a.连续的，不断的(perpetual 最好的释义)
constantly adv.连续不断地
continuous a.连续不断的
--They have continuous discussion.
--They made great success in their continuous attempt.
continual a.频繁的
continually adj.
--It rains continually .
--It is raining continuously/constantly.
lasting a.(书面上用 everlasting)持久的，耐久的
--The pair of trousers is lasting.
--Generally speaking ,jeans are lasting.
endless a.
--You can appreciate endless unbroken clouds.
--Studing English is our perpetual(endless) task.
eternal a.永恒的，永久的，不朽的（=immortal）
--His name is immortal because the longest suspension bridge was named for him.
temporary a.临时的
permanent a.非临时的，永久的
--In a big city, sometimes we can not get permanent job.
obscurity n.默默无闻
In obscurity
obscure adj.不起眼的
--The bus stopped at a obscure bus stop.
radically adv.彻底地，完全地=Completely,entirely,thoroughly,fully,inclusive
exclusive a.独占的，独家的；排外的，排他的(not shared with others)
--The swimming pool is for my exclusive use.
exclusive right 独权
--The school is exclusive ,only very clever children can go to it.
--The store is exclusive, only very wealthy people can visit it.
commodity n.商品
--commodity econnomy 商品经济 commodity market 商品市场
goods,wares

Text 课文（全文背诵）

<u>In democratic countries any efforts to restrict the freedom of the press are rightly</u>

condemned.

effort 企图（语气强烈）

try;attempt 尝试

make every effort;spare no effort;make every endeavor

go to great iengths

blame 责备

scold

reproach

reprimand

condemn 正式的谴责

deed 行为，行径

--Your deeds should be rightly condemned.

However, this freedom can easily be abused.

forest authorites 森林当局

education authorites 教育当局

the authorites 有关当局

the authorites of the press 新闻界当局

Stories about people often attract far more public attention than political events.

According to this sentence,we know we are much more interested in private stories.
Sometimes some people even want to **smell out** people's secrets or particular scandals.

far 相当于 much 加强语气

Though we may enjoy reading about the lives of others, it is extremely doubtful whether we would equally enjoy reading about ourselves.

lives of others 替代 story about people

extremely doubtful=extremely uncertain=extremely dubious

--If a family skeleton is reviewed,one's reputation will be damaged/destroyed/spoiled/ruined immediately.

equally=in the same way=alike

--We wouldn't like our secret to be reviewed.

Acting on the contention that facts are sacred, reporters can cause untold suffering to individuals by publishing details about their private lives.(要点句型)

When stories published in detalls by the press are wonderful,you will become famous very soon.
If the story is terrible,your reputation will be ruined immediately.

act on 以。。。来行事，遵循。。。来行事

that 引导的部分是 contention 的同位语从句

Newspapers exert such tremendous influence that they can not only bring about major changes to the lives of ordinary people but can even overthrow a government.

exert…on sth

--bring about 带来，导致

--lead to

--cause

--result in

major:great,considerable

--In the first paragraph the writer illustrate how powerful the press is in the general way.

The story of a poor family that acquired fame and fortune overnight, dramatically illustrates the power of the press.

acquire=gain=obtain

--acquire gortune 发财

--make fortune

The family lived in Aberdeen, a small town of 23,000 inhabitants in South Dakota.

inhabitant=dweller

--the city dweller 城市居住者

--the country dweller 乡村居住者

They were expecting their sixth child and faced with even more pressing economic problems.

expect a baby

in the interesting condition

in the family way

pregnant

be faced with 面临

--The window faces the south.窗户朝南。

--In the process of studing English,We are faced with a great many problems,which should be surmounted.

surmount 克服

solve problem 解决问题

--In the process of studing English,We are faced with a great many problems,which should be surmounted/got rid of/removed as quickly as possible.

economic problem=poverty

pressing 紧迫的

If they had only had one more child, the fact would have passed unnoticed. They would have continued to struggle against economic odds and would have lived in obscurity.

虚拟语气，与过去事实相反的状况

unnoticed 形容词做状语

odds n.各种让人烦的小事

bear 容忍，生育 born 是 bear 的过去分词

attract the attention of the press

The rise to the fame is swift.=Their being famous was rapid.

Newspapers and magazines offered the family huge sums for the exclusive rights to publish stories and photographs.

huge sums=huge sums of money

care of 关心

Reporters kept pressing for interviews so lawyers had to be employed to act as spokesmen for the family at press conferences.

press for=demand 形象地表达出不停的催问

--The students kept pressing for examinations.

Vocabulary

restrict:限制(restrict to)
--confine(confine to),limit
equally:同样地
--alike,in the same way/degree
contention:论点
--argument
untold:数也数不清的
--countless,uncountable,numerous,innumerable,numberless
acquired:以获得的
--got,gained,obtained
perpetual struggle:永无休止的斗争
--fight
in obscurity:默默无闻的，不出名的
--not being well-known
Comprension
1…b…. The argue that
affect:负面的影响
Acting on the **contention** that facts are sacred, reporters can cause untold suffering to individuals by publishing details about their private lives.(背熟)
contention=argue
2…d…
3…d…take interest in

Structure 结构

4…b…结构比较要一致 be interested in…
5…a…标志是 but →not only…but
b: not only 用在句首，句子必须倒装 can they
c: such that they cannot only：not only 用在动词之前并倒装:not only can they
d:so 修饰形容词或副词，如果强调的是一个主干的名词部分，用 such
6…a…被动语态
7…b…remain(系动词)不能用进行时态，系动词不能接动词不定式
8…a…
9…d...bring about=wield
press:榨汁；熨烫；按住，压住(n.)出版，发行
invoke:求助，祈求
impose:强加于人
wield:造成
10…c…make repeated requests for=pressing for:不断的催问，要求
11…c…on behalf of:代表
instead of:代替 on account of=because offor the sake of:出于。。。的缘故
12…a…商品化的牺牲者(victim)

lingyu5758 祝大家学习进步！！！

Lesson 47 Too high a price 代价是否太高

New words and expression 生词和短语

pollution n..污染
相应词型: pollute, polluted, pollution, polluter
More and more water is been polluted.
Pollution is the major problem we are faced with.
Gases from cars are one of the polluters of air pollution.
Contaminate taint defile pollute poison

overpopulated adj.人口多的
overpeopled
sparsely-populated community 人口稀疏的地区
sparsely-peopled
population 人口数量
What's the population in your country?
The city has a population of two million.
Our dear motherland is faced with a major problem that is population explosion. 人口暴长
populous adj. 正式，强调一个地区人口众多，拥挤
The bus here is crowded, so I decide to switch for the next one.
The narrow street is populous with people.
The most populous province in China is SiChuan.

over-industrialized adj.过度工业化的

sheer adj.纯粹的，不掺杂的
1. pure unmixed
2. steep
It is very difficult for us to climb sheer mountain.
The cliff is so sheer that you can't climb it.
3. complete
What are you talking about sheer nonsense?
4. transparent
During hot summer, ladies and girls would like to wear sheer silk stockings.

worldwide adv.在全世界

overwhelm v.制服，使不知所措
He was overwhelmed by grief. 悲伤至极
Grief seized him.
Your kindness quite overwhelms me. （I appreciates your kindness.）
The problem overwhelmes (is beyond/above) me.

辨析： conquer 征服，占领，克服 He conquered the city.
口头上表达克服困难：overcome, get rid of (difficulties)
书面语 insurmountable 艰难的
vanquish 征服，暗含击败含义

pollute v.污染
pesticide n.杀虫剂
fertilizer n.肥料
salmonella n.沙门氏菌
listeria n.利斯特杆菌
vegetarian n.吃素的人
organically-grown adj.有机培植（不施化肥和其他化学药品培植）
insidious adj.暗中为害的
urban adj.城市的
burglar n.窃贼
burgle v.入室偷窃
burgle into a house
scream v.尖叫
scream at

profound adj.极度的
替换词：
deep, complete
Yesterday he had a profound sleep.
intense, extreme
He is afflicted with profound anxieties.
knowledgable
He is a profound scholar.

irritation n.烦躁
irritate 使烦躁
noises always irritate us.
irritated 感到烦躁的
irritating 令人烦躁的

incessantly adv.连续不断的
perpetual struggle, permanent job, eternal love, continuance rain, continual, continually, constant struggle
incessant =continuous 侧重连续不断的
It has been raining incessantly for 3 hours.
There is a week of incessant rains.
ceaseless =endless, none stop, unbroken
uninterrupted
Last night I had an uninterrupted party.

He gave us a talk uninterrupted.
Undisturbed

whine v.发呜呜声
helicopter n.直升飞机
maximum adj.最大的
technology n.技术
contribution n.贡献
mobile adj.可移动的
snore v.打鼾
offender n.冒犯者
staggering adj.令人惊愕的
surprise, amaze, astonish, astound, astounding
The old lady reported to the police and they felt astounded/found it staggering.

trumpet v.吹号
partner n.伙伴

Text 课文

Pollution is the price we pay for an overpopulated, over industrialized planet. (背诵)
I was blamed for being late.
Losing health is the price he paid for his hard work.
When you come to think about it, there are only four ways you can deal with rubbish: dump it, burn it, turn it into something you can use again, attempt to produce less of it.
利用支持句论述观点
Come to=get to
并列平行结构，突出 deal with，处理，后面用动词而非名词。
There are some good ways to study English well: listen, speak, read, and write. 用语气强调 study。
There are four good ways to study English: listening, speaking, reading and writing. 强调 ways。
reuse it recycle it
We keep trying all four methods, but sheer volume of rubbish we produce worldwide threatens to overwhelm us. (背诵)
The writer wants to illustrate if the volume of rubbish is growing everyday, we wouldn't have a good way to solve the problem.
volume=amount
threaten to do
The coming earthquake threatens the village.
promise 预测好的未来
threaten 预测恶运，坏兆头
Dark clouds threaten a heavy storm.
The sun promises a good day.
It is possible for a rubbish to destroy our world.

overwhelming: something is beyond your control

两自然段衔接自然，由 rubbish 引入其他污染。

The need to produce every increasing quantities of cheap food leads to a different kind of pollution. (背诵)

不定式 to 做定语表示要发生的

lead to=result in/cause/bring about

The price we pay for cheap food may be already too high. (背诵)

If you think you'll abandon meat and become a vegetarian, you have the choice of very expensive organically-grown vegetables or a steady diet of pesticides every time you think you're eating fresh salads and vegetables, or just having an innocent glass of water!

abandon: 强调被迫放弃 be forced to give up

organically-grown vegetables: 绿色蔬菜

every time: whenever

innocent: Water is innocent, but human being pollute them.

However, there is an even more insidious kind of pollution that particularly affects urban areas and invades our daily lives, and that is noise. (背诵)

however: We are quite clear, rubbish, cheap food and vegetable are terrible, but there is more dangerous pollution in front of you.

Insidious: 暗中为害，阴险的，这里强调更严重的

Burglar alarms going off at any time of the day or night serve only to annoy passers-by and actually assist burglars to burgle.

going off 作定语修饰说明 burglar alarms

换成定语从句

Burglar alarms that go off at any time of the day or night serve only to annoy passers-by and actually assist burglars to burgle.

assist, annoy 平行，to 不必重复

Car alarms constantly scream at us in the street and are a source of profound irritation. (背诵)

constantly, incessantly, continuously

不用 lead to，用了比较规范的书面用语 are a source of

Her husband earns a lot of money every mouth and he is a source of income. 摇钱树

The survey revealed a large number of sources of noise that we really dislike.（背诵） 综述语句

列举一系列事实时，注意句式结构保持一致，与之相呼应的词：sources of noise，所以用名词结构

lawn mower: 割草机 container trucks: 集装箱卡车

New technology has also made its own contribution to noise. (背诵)

According to this sentence, the writer illustrates another cause.

make contribution to: In fact, the writer wants to say, new technology had also led to/result in noise. 从讽刺反面的角度去表述的

contribute to: 引起，导致，是….的起因

Air pollution contributes to disease.

Object to/take objection to/against

Loud conversations on mobile phones invade our thoughts or interrupt the pleasure of

meeting friends for a quiet chat. (背诵)

According to these examples, the writer wants to show why mobile phone is one source of noise.

The noise pollution survey revealed a rather surprising and possibly amusing old fashioned source of noise.

The air pollution survey revealed that in the world there are 10 big cities have been polluted terribly, and one of them is China.

It turned out to be snoring!

turn out :prove

Men were found to be the worst offenders.

offend: 惹怒　　offender: 罪魁祸首

采用被动语态：客观描述，而非突出人发现

It is said…　据说

It is revealed…　据纰漏

It is announced…　据宣布

20% of men in their mid-thirties/in their early thirties/in their thirties/in their late thirties.

against these figures

Comparing these figures, we found…

are woken: 被惊醒　　keep awake: 不能入睡

Whatever the source of noise, one thing is certain: silence, it seems, has become a golden memory. (背诵)

综述，对第三段的概括与总结

与 Lesson 44, page 204, line 28 对比：

However you decide to spend your time, one thing is certain…

要求背诵的语句，都不是具体的实例，而是综述

Vocabulary 词汇

dump: drop completely

sheer: volume: pure amount

rubbish: garbage

lead to: result in, cause, bring about

dairy: a place where milk is kept and milk product are made

abandon: give up

organically-grown: using farming or gardening methods without artificial chemicals or fertilizer

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1. c
2. b

The root cause of pollution in agriculture is **the twin pressures** to produce more food and at lower cost. (背诵)

root n. 修饰 cause

twin 表示密切相关联的两种压力

3. a

the most distressing 最让人不能集中注意力的

4. c

Snoring **causes a severe noise problem for** women of all ages.（背诵）

5. a

a way to do/of doing

6. c

7. a

people traveling around the world (lesson 44) quite often 不表示正在进行，而表示主动的动作

people who travel around the world quite often

8. a

强调句式

9. c (背诵)

原文中用 make contribution to

play an important role/part in sth.

do its bit: 尽本分做应该做的

do a share: 做好分内的工作

10. c

原文中用 object to

take exception against/to

offend: 冒犯、触怒、使不舒服

take offence at sb./sth.

11. a （背诵）

显露出来：bring sth. to light 及物动词短语 come to light 不及物动词短语

The information came to light.

It was the captain who brought the information to light.

12. b

原文中用 against

by comparison

by comparison wit sth.

Lesson 48 The silent village 沉默的村庄

Text 课文:

Lesson48 The silent village 沉默的村庄

In this much-travelled world, there are still thousands of places which are in-accessible to tourists. We always assume that villagers in remote places are friendly and hospitable. But people who are cut off not only from foreign tourists, but even from their own countrymen can be hostile to travellers. Visits to really remote villages are seldom enjoyable--as my wife and I discovered during a tour through the Balkans .

We had spent several days in a small town and visited a number of old churches in the vicinity. These attracted many visitors for they were not only of great architectural interest, but contained a large number of beautifully preserved frescoes as well. On the day before our departure, several bus loads of tourists descended on the town. This was more than we could bear , so we decided to spend our last day exploring the country- side. Taking a path which led out of the town, we crossed a few fields until we came to a dense wood. We expected the path to end abruptly, but we found that it traced its way through the trees. We tramped through the wood for over two hours until we arrived at a deep stream. We could see that the path continued on the other side, but we had no idea how we could get across the stream. Suddenly my wife spotted a boat moored to the bank. In it there was a boatman fast asleep. We gently woke him up and asked him to ferry us to the other side. Though he was reluctant to do so at first, we eventually persuaded him to take us.

The path led to a tiny village perched on the steep sides of a mountain. The place consisted of a straggling unmade road which was lined on either side by small houses. Even under a clear blue sky, the village looked forbidding, as all the houses were built of grey mud bricks. The village seemed deserted, the only sign of life being an ugly-looking black goat tied to a tree on a short length of rope in a field nearby. Sitting down on a dilapidated wooden fence near the field, we opened a couple of tins of sardines and had a picnic lunch. All at once, I noticed that my wife seemed to be filled with alarm. Looking up I saw that we were surrounded by children in rags who were looking at us silently as we ate. We offered them food and spoke to them kindly, but they remained motionless. I concluded that they were simply shy of strangers. When we later walked down the main street of the village, we were followed by a silent procession of children. The village which had seemed deserted, immediately came to life. Faces appeared at windows. Men in shirt sleeves stood outside their houses and glared at us. Old women in black shawls peered at us from door-ways. The most frightening thing of all was that not a sound could be heard. There was no doubt that we were unwelcome visitors. We needed no further warning. Turning back down the main street, we quickened our pace and made our way rapidly towards the stream where we hoped the boatman was waiting.

New words and expression 生词和短语

Inaccessible adj 难以接受的，达不到的

=entrance,approach

inaccessible adj 难以接受的，达不到的

词根 access (n) 通道，通路程，通向……的道路程，进入某地的道路，

entrance 入口

accessible (adj) :easy to get to/ easy to understand

Heavy snow made the village inaccessible to traffic.

大雪使车辆无法进入这个小山村。

使某事成为可能 make it impossible to do

approach 接近 approachable 能接近

unapproachable 不能接近，无可匹敌的，不能与之相比的

The city is accessible.

只有老师才有机会和那们校长接触

Only teacher have access to the headmaster.

hospitable adj 好客的

同= amiable , cordially , faithful , friendly , neighborly ,receptive

Hospitable adj 好客的，强调热情好客/amiable adj 亲切的

Cordially, adj 热诚的/faithful adj 忠诚的/Friendly adj 友好的

Neighborly adj 和睦的/Receptive adj 关于接受的，接纳的，强调一个人比较容易接纳一些想法和见解

反= hostile

Be hostile to 对……有敌意

Hostile----hospitable 不友好的，有敌意的

同= hostile , unfriendly , untagonistic , effensive, aggressive

Hostile adj 不友好的，有敌意的 / Unfriendly---不友好的

Untagonistic 对抗性的，敌对的

effensive 进攻性的

I took no notice of his offensive remarks.

我没有理会他的进攻性的语言。

Aggressive 挑衅的

hostile adj 不友好的，有敌意的

vicinity n 周围，近邻

同= about

In the vicinity 在附近 / Vicinity = about 大约

In the vicinity of 大概/附近的居民 inhabitant of the vicinity

architectural adj 建筑的/**fresco** n 壁画/**abruptly** adv 实然地，意外地

tramp v 徒步前进/**moor** v 用（绳，链，锚）系船上/**ferry** v 用渡船运

straggle v 蔓延，散乱分布

dilapidated adj 破旧的，倒塌的

同= **battered , broken-down , run down**

dilapiadated a 陈旧的，倒塌的

This is a dilapiadated old house.

Dilapidate v 使倒塌，使破损/Dilapidation (n)倒塌/Batter v 撞坏，撞击

Battered adj 撞击的/

Broken-down

This is broke-down lawn mower

Run down 渐渐变糟，恶化/Run-down 渐渐变恶化的

sardine n 沙丁鱼，沙丁鱼罐头/**rag** adj 破旧衣服/**motionless** adj 不动的

procession n 行列，成队的人群 / **shawl** n 围巾，披巾

peer v 凝视，盯着/**quicken** v 加快

Text 课文

In this much-travelled world, these are still thousands of places which are inaccessible to tourists.

Be accessible /inaccessible to do 容易（难以）接近的

.But people who are cut off not only from foreign tourists ,but even from their own countrymen can be hostile to travellers.

Not only form ……but form 强调介词，重复解释

cut off from :separate from /isolate from 从……分离,与相隔绝，老死不相往来

people who are cut off not only from foreign tourists ,but even from their own countrymen 定语从句修饰 peple 不与本国同胞相往来的人，也不与外国同胞相接解的人

cut off from 断绝往来

他出国之后和所有朋友断绝往来

He is cut off from all his friends after he went abroad.

被社会抛弃与世隔绝

Such people who are hostile to travelers are ones who are cut off from the society.

Visits to really remote villages are seldom enjoyable–as my wife and I discovered during a tour through the Balkans.

到真正遥远的山村参观很少给你带来乐趣的，As 引导非限定性定语从句用破折号隔开。33 课提及。

第一自然很重要，最好全文背下来。比如 In this much-travelled world; We always assume that ……; who are cut off not only from……but even from。通过这一段我们了解到为什么偏僻山村的人对人怀有敌意。是因为他们本身已经脱离了这个社会。

These attracted many visitors ,for they were not only of great architectural interest , but contained a large number of beautifully preserved

frescoes as well, On the day before our departure several bus loads of tourists descended on the town .

Of great interest 有意识的

Beautifully –preserved 被保存得很漂亮

On the day before our departure

在我们离开的前一天

several bus loads of tourists

好几辆坐满乘客的大巴

Taking a path which led out of the town ,we crossed a few fields until we came to a dense wood

came to a dense wood 出城影 / trace its way 继续向前延伸，trace 跟踪他的路线，穿过树林，继续向前延伸

make one's way out of 挤出出 / fight one's way 拼出一条路来，杀出一条路

feel one's way 摸出一条路来 / wind one's way 蜿蜒曲折

the river wind its way to the sea

这条小何蜿蜒曲折的流向大海。

We tramped through the wood for over two hours until we arrived a deep stream. We could see that the path continued on the other side. but we had no idea how we could get across the stream.

表示这条路程继续向前延伸用 continued，相当于 trace its way; on the 无伦次 other side 指小溪的另一岸

but we had no idea how we could get across the stream 。we had no idea 可以改成 we didn't know how we could get across the stream, how we could get across the stream 是作同位语说明 no idea 的内涵，如果改成 we didn't know 是 how 引导的宾语从句.，无论改成那种语气，后面的语句必须是陈述句，how we could..

Suddenly my wife spotted a boat moored to the bank. In it there was a boatman fast asleep

a boat moored to the bank 停在岸边的一艘小船,moored 过去分词作定语。

a boatman fast asleep 一个睡得很香的船夫，asleep 只能作表语，如果作定语放在修饰词的后面。Fast 副词修饰 asleep，一个睡得很香的船夫。

Though he was reluctant to do so at first ,we eventually persuaded him to take us

Eventually 替换为 at last，因为毕竟是终于成功的，不要替换成 in the end.

The path led to a tiny village perched on the steep sides of a mountain. The place consisted of a straggling unmade road which was lined on either side by small houses.

Perched,是栖息，及物动词过去分词作定语，视为定语从句必须用被动。高高座落在山坡上的一个小山村

一本题名为如何在一分钟内读 1000 字的书

A book entitled how to read thousands word in the minter

The place consisted of a straggling unmade road which was lined on either side

by small houses.

straggling unmade 用来修饰 road, The place consisted of 由什么组成是它的谓语动词，straggling unmade 用来修饰 road，这个地方是由乱七八糟的未人工修饰的路所组成，on either side 用 either 作定词所修饰的名词必须是单数形式，作起的作用是一个复数概念。on either side = on both sides。 On both side of road

which 指代的是 road,，which was 是前面用过 unmade，为避免重复用定语从句被动语态。

Even under a clear blue sky, the village looked forbidding as all the houses were built of grey mud bricks .the village seemed deserted

Forbidding 与 inaccessible 相呼应，让人望而却步。 As 改成 for 没有问题。

The village seemed deserted, the only sign of life being an ugly-looking black goat tied to a tree on a short length of rope in a field nearby.

被废弃的，空空荡荡的。The village seemed deserted 这个村里没人居住，才显得空荡荡的。the only sign of life being an ugly-looking black goat tied to a tree on a short length of rope in a field nearby.这句话没有谓语动词，不是完整的语句，没有连接词，简单句之间用逗号分开，没有连接词，逗号后面的内容是一个独立主格结构，进一步对前句作一个补充解释。

the only sign of life 唯一的生命迹象，ugly-looking 喻境的描述十分重要，不喜欢这个村庄就用 an ugly-looking black goat,名词和现在分词搭配构成了一个独立主格结构。对前句进行补充说明。

All at once,I noticed that my wife seemed to be filled with alarm

all at once = almost immediately 几乎就在同时

Looking up I saw that we were surrounded by children in rags who were looking at us silently as we ate

Looking up，sitting down 现在分词做短语。当我抬起头的时候，I saw 发出的一个动作。in rags 修饰 children。who were looking at us 引导的定语从句依旧修饰 children

I concluded that they were simply shy of strangers. When we later walked down

我得出一个结论他们只是由于腼腆怕见陌生人。

The village which had seemed deserted, immediately came to life.

和上文的 The village seemed deserted, the only sign of life being an ugly-looking black goat 相呼应。上句用 The village seemed deserted，一般过去式。这村庄似乎空无一人，本句中采用 The village which had seemed deserted，采用过去玩成时，所以为了突出，就在翻译的时候表达成：似乎刚刚还空无一人的村庄，马上就活过来了。

Men in shirt sleeves stood outside their houses and glared at us. Old women in black shawls peered at us from door-ways

看主干 Men glaredat us，恶狠狠的看着我们。children 用 look at，成年人憎恨心里更强，用 glare at 看，青壮年男子恶狠狠的目光，老太太的眼神很差，看用 peer at，眯着眼睛

The most frightening thing of all was that not a sound could be heard.

平行句式 Men in …old women in…对当时的情形进行描写，所有这些最让人害怕 是 that 引导的表语从句 not a sound could be heard 一点声音都听不到，这是他们不能忍受的。.有时候沉默意味敌意。

There was no doubt that we were unwelcome visitors.

There was no doubt = Beyond doubt.毫无疑问

there was no doubt 毫无疑问=句 here is no doubt that/without any doubts

we needed no further warning 我们不需要别人对我们的警告

further 加强语气。

Turning back down the main street, we quickened our pace and made our way rapidly towards the stream where we hoped the boatman was waiting.

Turning back down 动作由谓语发出来的。所以又沿着主路回去了，我们加快了我们的脚步，尽快赶回到 made our way rapidly towards where 定语修饰 **stream**

重点复习

现在分词作状语

定语从句

过去分词作定语

looking up

taking back

动词 ing 一定要和主句主语保持一致。过去分词作定语 A boat moored to bank

Lesson 49 The ideal servant 理想的仆人

New words and expression 生词和短语

Ramble vi.闲逛,漫步(troll , go for a walk/have a walk,go for a stroll/have a stroll);ramble about,漫谈,聊天(talk or write in the disorder way);植物的蔓延生长
They rambled through the wood.
The old lady began to ramble about her youth.
The wild rose rambled over the fence.
Rambling a.杂乱无章的

Sentimentally adv .感情上,多情地,sentiment(n.)
Sentiments n.情操
Feeling n.指某人某时候内心的感受
The sentiments of pity 恻隐之心
As students ,we must havd noble sentiments.高尚从情操
Emotion n.感情
I am so worried that you might do it out of sentiments.出于同情，
Sentimental =emotional

Lavishly a.慷慨地,大方地（***）
Lavish a.挥霍的,浪费的,奢侈的=extravagant ;vt 乱花钱
lavish money on sb/sth 在某人或某事上乱花钱
The lady always lavish her money on beautiful clothes..
Lavish praises on sb.;大肆吹捧=never grudge doing 从未舍不得
Grudge vt.舍不得给
Lavish care on sb 过度关心/宠爱
Generous a.慷慨大方的
Liberal a.开明的
Prodigal a.浪费的,挥霍无度的
Wasteful a.浪费的
(反)thrifty,.economical ,frugal

immaculate a.清洁的,无污点的 spotless

preside at 指挥
who will preside at the party?
Yesterday ,my friend visited me ,so I presided at the tea.招待
invisible
Scrub v.擦拭,刷洗(用水,肥皂等擦洗) brush/ polish :擦光、润色
Please scrub your coat.
Polish v.使之闪闪发光,引申为润色(文章)
A carefully polish article

Enlightened a.开明的

Fickleness 变化无常的

Unrelenting a.不屈不挠的,不松不懈的 =Strong-minded(坚强的)+Continuous

Disillusion vt.使幻想破灭

Industriousness n.勤奋

Mirth n.欢笑,高兴
Happiness, joy ,merriment,fun ,amusement,entertainment,delight ,rapture,glee(欢欣),bliss (极乐)

Text 课文

air one's views on sth./sb.
be attach to 迷上，不可分割的
persist in 坚持，
long before / short before
keep free from dust
refer to / regard sb. as 把人看成，
She pursues what is fashion in these days.
She was extremely difficult to please.
carry on 展开，
put sb. in charge of :安排某人负责
I can't find words to praise your clothes. 好的无以言表
act the role : play the role
be absent from 离开
not only 位于句首，部分倒装
below, above 用 well 修饰
bump into; knock oneself into/onto
come to the conclusion
draw a conclusion
arrive at conclusion
reach conclusion
jump to conclusion

have a difficult time dong sth.:have trouble/difficulty in doing sth.
find one's way

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

over,

Lesson 50 New Year Resolutions 新年的决心

New words and expression 生词和短语

学习词汇时仅知道汉语语义是不够的，要把单词放在语句中体会其应用
学习关键句结构是则要把它放在段落结构或文章里

Resolution
n. the quality of being resolute，决心 take resolution to do sth. / make up one's mind to do sth. / be determined to do sth. / decide to do sth.
n. formal decision，决议
同根词 **1. Resolve** vi . resolve to do sth. = take resolution to do sth.
--Before we came here ,we resolved to learn English hard.
Resolve sb. on sth. 使某人下定决心做某事
--I resolved him on English study.
--Nobody resolved him on this decision.
2. Resolute a.坚决的,果断的
--We must be true in word and resolute in deed.我们必须言必信,行必果.

Mentally adv. 内心里

Compile vt.编辑,编制(collect information and arrange in a book (great book/dictionary))
同义词 **Edit** vt .编辑(collect information and arrange in newspaper or magazine)
--The editor is busing editing the newspaper.

Formidable adj. 令人敬畏的

Occur vi. happen
--A good idea occurred to me. / It occurred to him that he should open the door.
形近词 **1. Recur** vi .再发生,又出现 occur again
2. Incur vt. 导致,招致,造成 (=lead to / result in / give rise to / cause)
--Air pollution incurs some terrible disease.

Regularity n. 规律性

Accomplish vt. 成功地达到目的 accomplish one's purpose/ goal/ dream/ aim/ work/ task
--He accomplish his journey.
同义词 **1. Attain** vt. 得到,获得(经过艰苦的努力)
Attain one's ambition Get success / attain success
Attain to 某人希望达到的成就 attain 某人已经达到的成就
--He has attained heights that I can never attain to .
--This is the height that I hope to attain to.
--This is the height that I have attained.
2. Achieve vt. 达到一定目的时的表现及努力
--This is what he achieved after ten years of hard work.
--We always cherish（珍惜 treasure / value / prize）what we have achieved.
--I feel very happy because you accomplish your dream.

3. Accomplishment n. 成就(主要用于修养,才艺,本领等方面的成就)

4. Achievement n. (最通俗的说法,可代替 accomplishment)

--Such accomplishment is beyond your attainment.

--His attainment is beyond my understanding.

--His accomplishment is unexpected to me.

Inveterate adj. 根深蒂固的

Self-improvement n. 自我完善

Scheme n. 简单的计划

Ambitious adj. 雄心勃勃的 **Ambition** (中性词)

--Everybody in the modern society must be ambitious.

--If you work hard, you can attain your ambition.

Pitfall n. 意外的困难

Modest adj. 要求不过分的;谦虚的

--I make New Year resolution and I think them modest.

--Be modest is one of our virtues.

Assiduously adj. 刻苦的 diligently

--If you study English assiduously, nothing is difficult.

Self-discipline n. 自我约束

Frame n. 躯体 = body

Betray

vt. 暴露,显露

--Her face betrayed her nervousness.

vt. 出卖,背叛

--I don't know who betrayed me.

Troop v. 成群结队的走动

Unsettle v. 使不安

Taunt vt./ n. 嘲笑,奚落人的话(try to make sb angry or upset by saying unkind remarks)

Taunt sb. with sth. 因为什么原因而讥笑某人

--They taunted him with being poor / poverty, so he felt angry.

Make fun of / laugh at

--He is wearing a strange hat ,so we make fun of him.

Jeer vi.

Jeer at 嘲笑,戏弄

--We know he is eccentric, but anyway don't jeer at him.

同义词 **1. Mock** vt./vi.

Mock at 嘲笑

--Mocked (at) by others ,he had my sympathy.

--When the teacher is writing on the blackboard ,naughty boy student mocked at him.

2. Scoff vi. Scoff at (渺视地)嘲笑 pour scorn on

--Don't scoff at those students who don't have good accomplishment / mark.

3. Gibe / jibe vi. 嘲弄,挖苦(that is intended to make the person look silly)

Gibe at sb. / sth.

--I gibed at him ,in my opinion ,he was dull.

Good-humouredly adv. 和气地，心情好的

Wane vi. 逐渐变小,变弱(becoming less or weaker)

--He exerts suttle influence on his children ,but his children are growing up ,so his influence is waning.

--The moon will wax, the moon will wane.月有阴晴圆缺.

同义词

1. Diminish

vt.减少,缩小(Make smaller in size / amount / number and so on)

--The second world war diminished the country's wealth.

vi.渐渐衰退,渐渐减小=wane

--Time will never cause our friendship to diminish / wane.

2. Reduce vt.(数量尺寸等程序)

--If you reduce the price to 10 dollars, I will take it.

Reduce to / reduce by

--The shop assistant reduced the price by 10 dollars.

3. Lessen vt.(指数量.价值可能性的)降低

--I agree to your idea that you can climb the tree, but anyway, please lessen the risk of being hurt / injured.

--That is a good idea, but you must lessen the possibility of failure.

4. Increase / decrease (使数量,程度)减小,降低

--Our interest in English is increasing.

--Our interest in clothes is not decreasing.

Hypnotize vt.使朦胧，使欲睡

Undoing n.毁灭的原因

Screen n.电视机的屏幕

lull sb. to sleep

Text 课文

<u>The Spring Festival is a time for gathering.</u>

A time for

<u>Mentally, at least, most of us could compile formidable lists of 'dos' and 'don'ts'.</u>

Mentally : at heart

--We become illogical when we decide what can be eaten and what can not be eaten.

The same old favorites recur year in year out with monotonous regularity.

Favorites : resolution
Recur : happen / take place
Year in year out : one year after another / year by year
day in day out : one day after another / day by day

We resolve to get up earlier each morning, eat less, find more time to play with the children, do a thousand and one jobs about the house, be nice to people we don't' like, drive carefully, and take the dog for a walk every day.
resolve to 下定决心

Past experience has taught us that certain accomplishments are beyond attainment.
--It is hard for us to attain some certain attainment.

If we remain inveterate smokers, it is only because we have so often experienced the frustration that results from failure.
Inveterate : deep rooted
--Because we have too often experience the frustration, it means nothing to me.
Frustration : disappointment in one's mind or the feeling that you get from you failure
Result from 由……产生的
Result in : lead to / cause
--Failure will result in frustration.

Most of us fail in our efforts at self-improvement because our schemes are too ambitious and we never have time to carry them out.
Carry out : carry off
Fail in our efforts / attempt
--We accumulate clutter in an attempt to avoid waste.

We also make the fundamental error of announcing our resolutions to everybody so that we look even more foolish when we slip back into our bad old ways.
Error : mistake
--Even beans have got their black.
--If you often make some common mistake, you will get the frustration.
slip back into : return to the normal way

Aware of these pitfalls, this year I attempted to keep my resolutions to myself.
--Keep my resolution to myself : keep my resolution secret
--We arrived at our destination exhausted. Exhausted, we arrived at our destination.
--Aware of the importance, I attempt to carry it out.

I limited myself to two modest ambitions: to do physical exercise every morning and to read more of an evening.

Limit oneself to limit 限定到点 / restrict 限定到范围
Ambitions : New Year resolution
--A good beginning is half success.

An all-night party on New Year's Eve provided me with a good excuse for not carrying out either of these new resolutions on the first day of the year, but on the second, I applied myself assiduously to the task.

Apply oneself to / apply one's time to / apply one's mind / energy to / be devoted / dedicated to

--In 2002, I shall apply myself to learning English.

The daily exercises lasted only eleven minutes and I proposed to do them early in the morning before anyone had got up.

Propose to do / proposal

--I propose to do / I decided to do.

The self-discipline required to drag myself out of bed eleven minutes earlier than usual was considerable.

Required 与 The self-discipline 是动宾关系

--The self-discipline required to study English hard is considerable as well.

Nevertheless, I managed to creep down into the living room for two days before anyone found me out.

Nevertheless : however

After jumping about on the carpet and twisting the human frame into uncomfortable positions, I sat down at the breakfast table in an exhausted condition.

in an exhausted condition : exhausted

It was this that betrayed me.

It……that……句型

--It was exhausted condition that betrayed my secret.

The next morning the whole family trooped in to watch the performance.

Troop in : went / came into the room in group

That was really unsettling, but I fended off the taunts and jibes of the family good-humouredly and soon everybody got used to the idea.

Unsettle : upset

Fend off : defeat

However, my enthusiasm waned. The time I spent at exercises gradually diminished. Little by little the eleven minutes fell to zero. By January 10th, I was back to where I had started from.

Wane : diminish step by step

I argued that if I spent less time exhausting myself at exercises in the morning, I would keep my mind fresh for reading when I got home from work.

Argue : got a good excuse

Keep one's mind fresh for doing sth.

Resisting the hypnotizing effect of television, I sat in my room for a few evenings with my eyes glued to book.

The temptation to do

One night, however, feeling cold and lonely, I went downstairs and sat in front of the television pretending to read. That proved to be my undoing, for I soon got back to my old bad habit of dozing off in front of the screen.

Slip back into our bad old ways / I was back to where I had started from / got back to my old bad habit
Dozing off : half sleep
--I soon got back to my old bad habit of nodding.

I still haven't given up my resolution to do more reading. In fact, I have just bought a book entitled How to Read a Thousand Words a Minute. Perhaps it will solve my problem, but I just haven't had time to read it!

a book entitled : a book which is entitled

Special difficulties 难点

Mentally 本质上，内心里 at heart / in the mind
Formidable : causing fear
Recur year in year out : occur again, appear year after year
beyond attainment : can not be attained / accomplished / achieved
Inveterate : deep rooted
Frustration : disappointment in one's mind or the feeling that you get from you failure
Carry out = put into practice

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1…正确答案：C --I choose the job which I think is within my scope. **2**…正确答案：A
3…正确答案：D one's effort to do sth. 干什么事所做出的努力
句型结构题和词汇题是每课的关键

4…正确答案：D **5**…正确答案：B **6**…正确答案：C **7**…正确答案：B

8…正确答案：A
Private 强调私人所有的 / solitary 宁静的、孤独的 he is leading a solitary life.
Intimate 亲密的

9…正确答案：C
meanwhile = at the same time little by little = step by step by all means 通过各种方式
just the same = in spite of this = still
10…正确答案：C gather around 聚集在...周围 march 行军而过 a flock of sheep 一群羊
11...正确答案：B

fade 褪色、凋零 The flower has already began to fade. The color of the dress faded.
Run out 用完、用光 We run out of petrol. Evaporate 蒸发、消失，渐渐化为乌有
12…正确答案：B

Lesson 51 Flash 无讲解

Lesson 52 Mud is Mud 实事求是

New words and expression 生词和短语

学习词汇时仅知道汉语语义是不够的，要把单词放在语句中体会其应用
学习关键句结构是则要把它放在段落结构或文章里

permanent	adj.永久的
tint	v.给...染色
delicate	adj.淡色的
shade	n.色度
observant	adj.观察力敏锐的
grayish	adj.浅灰色的
dispel	v.驱散，消除
outlandish	adj.稀奇古怪的
acquisition	n.获得
cosmetic	n.化妆品
outrageous	adj.无理的
fanciful	adj. 想象出来的
insoluble	adj.不可溶解的
prompt	v.敦促，激励
exclusive	adj.专售高档商品的
syllable	n.音节
bewilderment	n.迷惑，糊涂
freckle	n.雀斑
evidently	adv.显然地，明显地
weird	adj.奇异的，古怪的
concoction	n.调制品
intoxicate	v.陶醉，得意忘形
blank	adj.无表情的
discreetly	adv.谨慎地
clutch	v.抓住
adorn	v.装饰，打扮

mud is mud 实事求是
同义 spade is spade 实事求是
fact is fact

permanent adj. 永久的 ~job/house
----temporary 临时的

tint v. 给...染色 一般了解

eg. Tint the paper yellow 把纸染成黄色

delicate adj.淡色的 清淡的,雅致的
eg. I like the delicate dress

shade n.色度 荫凉 in the shade 在荫凉处 shady adj.
短语 in the shady street / in the shady spot

observant adj.观察力敏锐的
grayish adj.浅灰色的 light gray
dispel v.驱散,消除
outlandish adj.稀奇古怪的 odd/strange/ fantastic，queer，peculiar，weird 强调奇异的古怪的,相当于 odd
同义 eccentric 古怪的
eg. I can't get along well with the weird.
因为离奇而让人产生奇怪
outlandish : queer odd
----strange and unpleasant 奇怪也让人感觉到不开心
weird: strange and unnatural
----difficult to understand 不可思议的,荒唐的

acquisition n.获得 * acquire get gain obtain 获得技能，信息勇气
acquire confidence /courage/knowledge/skills
acquisition : the act of acquiring
eg. He devotes his time to the acquisition of knowledge
devote one's time to
既包括精神上的也包括物质上的
the acquisition of sth. (通常形式)
Acquiring confidence is essential.
The acquisition of confidence is essential.
The acquisition of skills is necessary in the modern society.
acquirement 仅指精神上的获得
acquisition 可以指泛泛的概念
the acquisition/acquirement of knowledge 知识的获得
the acquisition of money 金钱的获得
The acquisition of money is what a large number of people run after.
the ~ of sth.

cosmetic n.化妆品
outrageous adj.无理的 He found my offer outrageous.
unreasonable irrational illogical ridiculous unpleasant unpleasing

fanciful 想象出来的 imaginable

imagining doing / fancying doing

insoluble adj.不可溶解的 solve 解决 insolve 不可溶解

*** **prompt** v.敦促,激励 vt. urge sb. to do sth. Persuade sb. to do sth.怂勇某人作某事
prompt sb. to do
eg. What prompted him to be so generous.什么事情使他这么慷慨大方呢
Our discussion prompted some questions.我们的讨论引出了几个问题
lead to ; cause ; result in; prompt 激励，敦促
eg. What prompts you to study English so hard?
promptly adv.
Prompt : quick
take measure 采取措施
eg. He took a prompt measure.
He made a prompt decision.他做出了果断的决定。
swift His rise to fame was swift.他出名这事可以说是相当迅速。
swift 没有任何干扰，一点也不费力的连续不断的迅速.形容相当快
----The car is going fast.
----The car is going swiftly.
He made rapid/swift progress.
rapid:迅速的 某事发生的速度快
rapid recovery 快速康复
He is still young , so his recovery is rapid.
speedy don't do it in such a speedy way
haste : more haste less speed 欲速则不达
hasty 匆匆忙忙，草率
----Sometimes we make a decision in a haste way.
----Sometimes we make a decision in a hastily.

exclusive adj.专售高档商品的
syllable n.音节
bewilderment n.迷惑,糊涂
bewilder :puzzle
eg. Your question puzzled me.
bewilder 令人眼花缭乱
eg. Yesterday I went shopping ,but countless beautiful dresses bewildered me.
in bewilderment 处于茫眼不知所措之中

freckle n.雀斑
evidently adv.显示地,明显地 evident 显眼的，突出的
eg. She is evident at party.她在晚会上很突出
in evidence 相当于 evident evidently

weird adj.奇异的,古怪的

concoction n.调制品
intoxicate v.陶醉,得意忘形 excite greatly beyond self control
be intoxicated by
be intoxicated with
When we pass our important examinations , we are intoxicated with our success.
intoxicate 使喝醉
If you drink too much whiskey ,you will get intoxicated.
get drunk 喝多了
become intoxicated
intoxicating 令人陶醉的
intoxication
----He failed in his examination ,but he was intoxicated with that ,and his intoxication was beyond my understanding.

blank adj.无表情的
discreetly adv.谨慎地 discreet=careful in speech and action
----He's discreet in giving his opinion.
----He's discreet in airing his views.
言行举止很谨慎
eg. When you have to make a big decision, particularly in front of a large number of people ,you must be discreet.
be discreet in doing sth.
careful 细心的 只是表明细心的，并不表示谨慎
Whatever we do ,we must be careful.
Be careful, a car is rushing towards you.
cautious 谨慎的 既表示谨慎也表示细心
He is a cautious person ,so whatever he does ,he is not only discreet but careful as well.
considerate 考虑周到的，细心的 thoughtful
You will live easily if you have a considerate friend with you.
prudent 慎重的，与细心无关
You must make a prudent decision.
wary 小心翼翼的 比 careful 语气要强
tactful 机智的 tact 机智 表示考虑周全的

clutch v,抓住 snatch seize grasp clasp
adorn v.装饰,打扮
well decorated walls 装饰得很漂亮的墙壁
adorn 打扮，配戴 eg. We adorn our rooms with flowers.
decorate 装修 Newly weds embark on the task of decorating their new house.
新婚夫妇忙着装修他们的新房子
adorn 装点
He adorned his story with all sorts of adventures that never happened.
adorn sth. with

She adorned her dress with a lace.
ornament v.增添细节或装饰物 同 adorn
The dress is ornamented/adorned with lace.
一位珠光宝气，身穿皮衣的女士
a woman adorned in jewelry and fur
in jeans in jewelry in fur
a miss adorned in mink coat
a beautifully adorned room 装饰的.....
a beautifully decorated house 装修的.....

Text 课文

Mud is Mud

Mud is mud 实事求是
直接了当叙述事物，人物，地点
(记叙文)

My cousin , Harry , keeps a large curiously shaped bottle on permanent display in his study .
keep sth. on permanent display
curiously-shaped 形状奇怪的
eg. wine bottles of all shapes and sizes

Despite the fact that the bottle is tinted a delicate shade of green , an observant visitor would soon notice that it is filled with what looks like a thick , grayish substance.
despite the fact that
in spite of the fact that
尽管事实如此

would 现在有可能存在
used to 过去常常存在而现在不了
He would often have class in the morning.
if you should 和 if you were to 可能互换
what looks like---what 所引导的层次结构,what 起的作用就是一个修饰的词汇

If you were to ask Harry what was in the bottle , he would tell you that it contained perfumed mud.
说明将来事实相反的一种虚拟,假设
should +动原. 可能性大
were to +动原.可能性极小

If you expressed doubt or surprise he would immediately invite you to smell it and then to rub some into your skin. This brief experiment would dispel any further doubts you might entertain.
brief 简单的 简洁迅速
simple

The bottle really does contain perfumed mud, How Harry came into the possession of this outlandish stuff makes an interesting story which he is fond of relating. Furthermore, the acquisition of this bottle cured him of a bad habit he had been developing for years.

does 用来加强语气

come into the possession of sth.获得的过程

eg. ----How Harry married his beautiful wife makes an interesting story.

Harry 是怎么样娶了这样一位漂亮的妻子还有一段有趣的故事。

采用一般现在时态

he is fond of relating=he is fond of talking about

stuff=material=substance

furthermore=what is more=more over

furthermore……. (承接上文)这个瓶子的获得，还治好了他的一个坏毛病。

that 引导定语从句(省略)

own habits by heart 积习难改，本性难移

Harry used to consider it a great joke to go into expensive cosmetic shops and make outrageous requires for goods that do not exist.

consider is a great joke to do sth. 把做某事看作是巨大的乐趣,是件开心的事.

consider it great fun

consider it great amusement

consider it a great joy

He would invent fanciful names on the spot. On entering a shop, he would ask for a new perfume called "Scented Shadow' or for 'insoluble bath cubes'.

He would/used to invent names imaginable on the spot.

on the spot 当场，当时

on entering a shop=as soon as he enters a shop

pretend to do 装做...

considerably=greatly

on doing sth.

If a shop girl told him she had not heard of it, he would pretend to be considerably put out.

pretend to do….

put out=upset=annoy 经常用在被动语态当中

eg. --He was put out by my rude words.

我的粗鲁的话语使他非常的生气/恼怒。

He loved to be told that one of his imaginary products was temporarily out of stock and he would faithfully promise to call again at some future date, but of course he never did.

imaginary 虚构的，想象的

out of stock 脱销，没有货

faithfully promise 信誓旦旦地说

at some future date=some day=one day

How Harry managed to keep a straight face during these performances is quite beyond me.
keep a straight face=keep serious 板起面孔
how 引导主语从句…谓语动词用一般现在时
is quite beyond me=is quite beyond my understanding
=is quite beyond my imagination

Harry does not need to be prompted to explain how he bought his precious bottle of mud.
keep sth. on permanent display 永远展示，陈列
----We don't know how he came into (the) possession of the farm.
----You needn't encourage him to explain his story.
of his own accord 自然而然地，相当于 willingly

One day, he went to an exclusive shop in London and asked for ' Myrolite '.
exclusive shop:only wealthy people can visit such expensive shop
exclusive right to publish their stories
exclusive 1 独家的，独占的 2 不相容的
The school is exclusive.
exclusive shop 专售高档商品的商店

The shop assistant looked puzzled and Harry repeated the word, slowly stressing each syllable.
puzzled 茫然不知所措

When the girl shook her head in bewilderment, Harry went on to explain that ' myrolite ' was a hard, amber-like substance which could be used to remove freckles.
bewildered
stressing 加重每一个音节
go on to do sth.继续做别的事情
cat-like;dog-like
amber-like 像琥一样的
be used to do 被用来干...
be used to doing 习惯于做...

This explanation evidently conveyed something to the girl who searched shelf after shelf.
She produced all sorts of weird concoctions, but none of them named with Harry's requirements.
shelf after shelf=one shelf after another
produced=showed
He produced a cigarette to me.他拿出了一颗烟给我.
meet with sb's requirements
requirements=demands

When Harry put on his act of being mildly annoyed, the girl promised to order some for him .

put on his act of doing 装模作样

put on =pretend

She said that she felt ill,but she was just putting it on.

她说她生病了，其实她只是装出来的。

He put on the act of understanding me/what I said.

他装出理解我的话的样子。

He pretends to be wealthy.

He put on an act of being wealthy.

Intoxicated by his success, Harry then asked for perfumed mud. He expected the girl to look at him in blank astonishment.

in blank astonishment 茫然惊奇地

amazed 惊奇的

The custom officer's face lit up as soon as he saw the tiny bottle on the bottom of my suitcase.

However, it was how turn to be surprised, for the girl's eyes immediately lit up and she fetched several bottles which she placed on the counter for Harry to inspect.

inspect=choose=select

For once, Harry had to admit defeat. He picked up what seemed to be the smallest bottle and discreetly asked the price.

admit defeat =take a beating 认输

My aunt Harriet found piles of bottles of all shapes and sizes in what had been Bessie's wardrobe.

what was in those days enlisted policy 当时所谓的开明政策

seemed to be=looked like

He was glad to get away with a mere five guineas and he beat a hasty retreat, clutching the precious bottle under his arm.

discreet 言行小心

retreat 撤退，指大规模的撤退

beat a retreat 溜走

hasty=speedy

He left the shop as quickly as possible.

clutching 现在分词做伴随状况状语

夸张的口吻

I got away with precious chalk marks on my luggage.

From then on, Harry decided that this little game he had invented might prove to be expensive. The curious bottle which now adorns the bookcase in his study was his first and last purchase of rare cosmetics.

pay the price 付出代价

----The girl studies English well who lives in my neighbourhood.

----The girl, who lives in my neighbourhood ,studies English well.
admit defeat 认输
beat a hasty retreat 匆忙溜掉
stress each syllable 加强音节
in bewilderment
in blank astonishment

补充：

一、词组

curiously shaped 奇形怪状的 oddly shaped
on display 陈列 on show
what looks like 一种看上去像 things that look like
came into the possession of 有，手里有 got(took) possession of
in fond of 喜欢 is attached to ,likes
cured him of 医好了他的...,made him completely better in health after an attack of ...(illness)
on the spot 当场，立即 immediately
pretend to 假惺惺装作 to appear, say ,claim falsely in order to mislead
be put out 不悦 to cause sb to feel uncomfortable ,annoyed
was out of stock 没有存货 had nothing in stock
at some future date 不日 at an uncertain date
keep a straight face 扮得一本正经 in all seriousness, in dead earnest(be)
is quite beyond me: 令我费解 beyond me = beyond my ken
be prompted to 提醒 be incited to
in bewilderment 迷惑不解地 in a state of blank perplexity
went on to 接着 began to
conveyed sth. To 对...有所启示 made (sth.) known to (sb.) 对...说明某一问题
met with requirements 符合需要，满足要求 satisfied one's needs.
put on his act of 装作 acted as if he were...
intoxicated by 沉醉于，这里是被动形式，本身沉醉于用 be intoxicated with (success)
in blank astonishment 目瞪口呆地 dumbfounded
lit up 现出喜悦的神情 became more cheerful
for once 就这一次 on this one occasion
admit defeat 认输 throw up the sponge ,give up
picked up 拿起 lifted something from...
what seemed to be 那种似乎是...things that seemed to be...
get away 离开 leave
beat a (hasty) retreat 急忙退却，逃之夭夭 withdraw quickly
little game 小小玩笑 little trick

二、若干表达法示例

1.put out 不高兴

----1) He seemed greatly put out by the arrival of the new workers.

----2) She never gets put out even by the most difficult maters.

2.on the spot 当场

----1) No one could look at that dear sweet little face of yours without falling in love with you on the spot.

----2) He did it on the spot.

----3) He died on the spot.

3.convey to 把什么一种...使人理解

----1) How can I convey these idea to the children?

----2) The phrase does not convey this meaning.

----3) This description, picture ,sketch will convey some idea of the scenery.

----4) It conveyed to me the idea of a battlefield.

(idea 是概况的意思)

4 lit up 显出愉悦的神情

----1) Her face lit up with joy when she heard the good news.

----2) A smile lit up his face.

5 beat a retreat 退却

----1) They beat a retreat when they saw that they were too few.

----2) The cat beat a hasty retreat when he saw the dog coming.

----3) He beat a retreat ,when he saw me.

----4) The enemy beat a hasty retreat when they found the place occupied.

----5) Seeing that his rival was outwitting him ,he beat a hasty retreat by saying that he was not feeling well and had to go to the doctor's.

Lesson 53 In the public interest 为了公众的利益

New words and expression 生词和短语

学习词汇时仅知道汉语语义是不够的，要把单词放在语句中体会其应用
学习关键句结构是则要把它放在段落结构或文章里

evolve v. 逐渐形成
= develop gradually
-- He has developed /evolved a new system for running the factory.
evolve a system for doing sth
形成了发展了一套…的体系
evolve from 演化
--Man has evolved from the ape(类人猿).
evolution n. 发展,演变
--The evolution isn't unexpected.
-ism / socialism / evolutionism / evolutionist / evolutional
evolutionism n.进化论
evolutionist n.进化论者
evolutional a.发展的，进化的
resolve / resolve to do sth / resolution / revolve
resolve v. 下决心
resolve to do sth 下定决心做某事
resolution n.解决
revolve v.旋转
--The earth is round ,and every day and night it is revolving.
involve / be involved in
involve v.卷入,牵涉
--He is involved in the case.

competent : **having ability / qualification to do sth.**
有资格去做某事
be competent to do sth..
be competent for sth..
=qualified / fit
--He is competent / qualified / fit for the job.
incompetent / unfit
competent : **sufficient / enough adequate**
--He has a competent knowledge of French.
--He is competent to teach the language.
competence / qualification for / to
the competence for / to
--He has the ability to do the job.

他有能力做这项工作
--He has the capability / capacity of doing the job.
competence 侧重点在于能够胜任
--He has the competence to do / for the job.
最好的解释是 qualification

over-zealously a.过分热情地
over-zealous / zealously

safeguard v./n.保护(正式,书面语或严肃大的场合下)
protect v.保护
--We must safeguard our motherland.
--We must safeguard our state territorial integrity.
--Keeping clean is a safeguard against disease.
safeguard / guard. 保安
--We need several safeguards.
safeguard / protect our eyes.

grievance n.不平,冤屈
grief n.极度的悲伤
--I can't go to the cinema with you tonight because I have to comfort my friend in grief.
grieve v.**: cause grief to** 使悲伤，是伤心
--It grieves me to see him in such bad health.
grieve for / about / over 为什么而悲伤
grief / in grief
grieve / it grieves me…..

secretive adj. 保密的
secretive letters 保密的信件

correspondence n.来往信件
keep up correspondence 保持通信联系
--keep in touch with sb. by writing letters
--We keep up correspondence recently for several years.
by / through correspondence =by writing letters
correspondence school 函授学校
correspondence course 函授课程
correspondence : agreement / similarity 相似，一致，和…相符
in correspondence with sb. 与…相一致 ；与某人有通信
bring sth. into correspondence with sth 使某事与另一事相一致
--We must bring your idea into correspondence with mine.
correspondent n. 通讯员,通信者

alter vt .改变 : change in character, appearance etc. partly
--The shirt must be altered .It is too large.
change v.完全,彻底的变化,往往指以新代旧
--Great changes have taken place in our country.
--He changed a lot after so many years of hard work ,so I even can't recognise him.
convert v.改变 (态度/信仰等)
--He converted to Buddhism. 他改信佛教了。
--The new house is converted from an old one.
transform v.在形态或性质上发生变化,尤其指物理能量或电压的改变
--We can transform one form of energy into another.
vary v.改变(强调事物在不同时间\条件\状况下的变化,强调多样化)
--Customs vary with the times.风俗随时代而变化。
turn =change

ascertain v.查出,查明=**find out / get to know / make certain / make sure**
--Let us ascertain when we will hold the party.

prejudiced a.有偏见的,不公平的
prejudice n.
pride and prejudice 傲慢与偏见

prompt adj. 即时的
prompt / swift / rapid / speedy / hasty

Text 课文

The Scandinavian countries are much admired all over the world for their enlightened social policies.
斯堪的纳维亚半岛各国实行开明的社会政策，受到全世界的推崇。
for : because of
be admired for 因为…而受到羡慕钦佩。
--He is admired by us for his humor.
Worldwide 全世界范围内

Sweden has evolved an excellent system for protecting the individual citizen from highhanded or incompetent public officers.
在瑞典，已逐渐形成了一种完善的制度以保护每个公民不受专横的和不称职的政府官员的欺压。
evolve a system for doing sth.. 形成了发展了一套…的体系
protect 可用 safeguard from 替换，更加正规。
--I can't conceal my amusement. （信 达 雅）
我不能掩饰我幸灾乐祸的心情。

--Your excitement is beyond me.
你的激动的心情是我难以理解的。
所以原文要把迫害欺压的字眼翻译出来。
evolve an excellent system for doing sth..

The system has worked so well, that it has been adopted in other countries too.
由于这种制度行之有效，已被其他国家采纳。
has worked so well : workable
adopt / adapt （ 四级辨析 ）
adopt 采纳
adapt 改编，以适应

The Swedes were the first to recognize that public official like civil servants, police officers, health inspectors or tax-collectors can make mistakes or act over-zealously in the belief that they are serving the public.
是瑞典人首先认识到政府工作人员如文职人员、警官、卫生稽查员、税务人员等等也会犯错误或者自以为在为公众服务而把事情做过了头。
unsuitable mistakes 很不合情理的错误
were the first / second / last / only to do sth.
public officials : publics officers 政府工作人员
in the belief that : believe in 都是介词短语或分词结构在这里做状语，它们和 make， act 相搭配。
--He turned to me for help because he believed that I could help him.（书面语就不要用）
--He turned to me for help in the belief that I could lend him a hand.
--He turned to me foe help believing that I could lend him a hand.
他向我求助，因为他相信我会帮他。
in the hope : hoping
in the thought : thinking
--We come here in the hope that we will learn English well.
--We come here hoping to learn English well.
我们来到这里为了把英语学好
under the impression that
--Judges, however wise or eminent, are mortal and can make mistakes.

As long ago as 1809, the Swedish Parliament introduced a scheme to safeguard the interest of the individual.
早在 1809 年，瑞典论会就建立一个保护公民利益的制度。
As long ago as 1809 : dating back to 1809 追溯的 1809 年
Date back to / date from
introduce : bring in 引入
--He introduced science to the game boxing.
--He brought science into the game boxing.
Scheme 制度

59 课

--Sometimes, you need to find a right place to put your latest addition.

为最新的收藏品寻找一个合适的位置。

A parliamentary committee representing all political parties appoints a person who is suitably qualified to investigate private grievances against the State.

议会内有一个代表各政党利益的委员会，由它委派一位称职的人选专门调查个人对国家的意见。

represent 代表

--The statue represented a goddess.

在使用代表什么的利益的时候，一定注意用-ing 形式做定语。

A monitor representing his classmates.

be qualified to do sth. / be competent to do sth. 有能力有资格去做某事

The official title of the person is 'Justiteombudsman', but the Swedes commonly refer to him as the 'J.O.' or 'Ombudsman'.

此人官衔为“司法特派员”，但瑞典人一般管他叫“J.O.”，即“司法特派员”。

refer to sb. as 被称之为…

The Ombudsman is not subject to political pressure.

司法特派员不受任何政治压力的制约。

be subject to sth . （1）表示易受……的影响 ，to 是介词 ；隶属于，受…的限制

--He is subject to cold during winter.

be likely to do

He is likely to catch cold during winter.

be prone to 易受……的影响 ，有可能如何，to 是介词

--He is prone to flu during winter.

在冬季他容易得流感。

be liable to do

（2）隶属于，受…的限制

--Your plan is subject to my approval.

--We have a good plan , but the plan must be subject to our teacher’s approval.

He investigates complaints large and small that come to him from all levels of society.

他听取社会各阶层的各种大小意见，并进行调查。

complaints large and small 形容词短语作定语通常放在被修饰名词的后面。Complaints 就替换上面的 grievances。

--A great many students , boy and girl . went to the party yesterday.

--Many people, old and young , visit the shop.

As complaints must be made in writing, the Ombudsman receives an average of 1,200 letters a year.

由于意见均需用书面形式提出，司法特派员每年平均收到 1,200 封信。

be made in writing : be written down

an average of 平均

--I work for 8 hours every day.

--I work for an average of 8 hours a day.

--We have got 15 students in each class.

each 两个的平均

every 三个以上的平均

--We have got an average of 15students in each / every class.

--He has eight lawyer assistants to help him and examines every single letter in detail.

in detail. / in details 详细地

If a citizen's complaint is justified, the Ombudsman will act on his behalf.

如果公民的意见正确，司法特派员便为他伸张正义。

Justified ： justice 符合事实的，公正的

On his behalf : in his interest 代表他的利益

注意介词的应用

The action he takes varies according to the nature of the complaint.

司法特员采取的行动因意见的性质不同而有所不同。

Varies / varied / various

名词前加定冠词 the 表示“这一类”时，名词就不要加表示复数的 s，否则则表示这部分。

--The refrigerators are useful during hot summer. （错）

--The refrigerator is useful during hot summer.

--Refrigerators are useful during hot summer.

--A refrigerator is useful during hot summer.

nature : character 特性

He may gently reprimand an official or even suggest to parliament that a law the altered.

他可以善意地批评某位官员，也可以甚至向议会提议修改某项法律。

a law (should) be altered 省略了 should

suggest to sb. 像某人提建议

The following case is a typical example of the Ombudsman's work..

下述事件是司法特派员工作的一个典型例子。

--The following case is a typical example of it you can judge by yourself.

是一个常用的句式。

A foreigner living in a Swedish village wrote to the Ombudsman complaining that he had been ill-treated by the police, simply because he was a foreigner.

一个住在瑞典乡村的外国人写信给司法特派员，抱怨说他受到警察的虐待，原因就是因为他

是个外国人。

A foreigner living in a Swedish village :=A foreigner who is living in a Swedish village

--A foreigner wrote a letter to the Ombudsman complaining ……

--The editor sent a fax instructing the journalist to get statistics.

simply because : only because / just because 只是因为…

There was nothing in the record to show that the foreigner's complaint was justified and the Chief of Police strongly denied the accusation.

材料中没有任何文字记载证明外国人所说的情况符合事实，警察局长矢口否认这一指控。

accuse sb. of doing sth. 指责，指控某人做某事

accusation. n. 控告

It was impossible for the Ombudsman to take action, but when he received a similar complaint from another foreigner in the same village, he immediately sent one of his layers to investigate the matter.

司法特派员难以处理。但是，当他又收到住在同一村庄的另一个外国人写的一封内容类似的投诉信时，他立即派出一位律师前去调查。

The matter : the case

The lawyer ascertained that a policeman had indeed dealt roughly with foreigners on several occasions.

律师证实有个警察确实多次粗鲁地对待外国人。

ascertain that / sth.

=made sure that / made certain that

dealt roughly with= ill-treated 很粗暴的对待

The fact that the policeman was prejudiced against foreigners could not be recorded in the official files.

警察歧视外国人的事在官方档案中不可能加以记载。

这是一个同位语从句

be prejudiced against sb. / sth. 对什么有偏见

--If you are prejudiced against sth. , you must take objection to it.

It was only possible for the Ombudsman to find this out by sending one of his representatives to check the facts.

司法特派员只有派他的代表去核对事实才能了解真相。

find this out : to discover it

check the facts : verify the facts 核对事实

句中注意 only 的位置

--It is only possible for us to learn the language well if we study hard.

representative n ./ represent v.代表

--a committee representing all political parties 代表各个政党的委员会
representatives 代表了上文的 lawyer assistants

The policeman in question was severely reprimanded and was informed that if any further complaints were lodged against him, he would prosecuted.
当事的警察受到严厉的斥责，并被告知，如果再有人投诉他，他将受到起诉。
in question 涉嫌
注意句子结构的一致性

The Ombudsman's prompt action at once put an end to an unpleasant practice which might have gone unnoticed.
司法特派员及时采取的行动，迅速制止了这一起不愉快的事件，不然这件事可能因未得到人们注意而不了了之。
practice : **what the policeman did / the way that he treated with foreigners**
put an end to （关键短语）把什么画上了一个句号 不妨翻译成停止了，结束了
=stop
prevent 阻止，妨碍 有时强调妨碍，会引起歧义
--You prevent me from doing the work.
which might have gone unnoticed ： which might have gone without being noticed
--If they had had only one more child , they would have lived in obscurity unnoticed.（45 课）
他们依旧过着贫困的生活而不会引起任何人的注意。Unnoticed 形容词在这里做状语

Multiple choice questions 多项选择 flash 中没有 changtong 2004-3-8

Lesson 54 Instinct or cleverness? 是本能还是机智

New words and expression 生词和短语

学习词汇时仅知道汉语语义是不够的，要把单词放在语句中体会其应用
学习关键句结构是则要把它放在段落结构或文章里

wage v.进行(斗争)
=begin and continue a struggle
=carry on 表示开始进行
=undertake to do 着手
--He undertook to inform people concerned.
wage a war against / on 就什么方面展开斗争
--Life means perpetual struggle against poverty.
engage in 不仅开展,而且全身心地投入
be engaged in / be determined on sth / be dedicated to sth / be devoted to sth

contaminate v.弄脏,玷污
: make dirty or bad or impure by mixing with dirty or poisonous matter
--Don't eat the apple .It has been contaminated by flies.
--Don't read the hot story (黄色书刊)just because it will contaminate (毒害)your mind.
pollute v. 污染
--The air has been polluted **severely / terribly / badly.**
pollution n.
polluted a.
tint vt. 弄脏(通常用被动语态,突出坏因素对人的负面影响)
=contaminate
--Don't read the hot story just because it will **contaminate / tint** your mind.
--His reputation was tinted by the scandal.(丑闻)
foul :make sth dirty
--Dogs are forbidden to go into the streets because we are afraid the streets will be fouled.
--The factory is responsible for fouling up the air.
foul up=pollute
defile : make sth impure
=contaminate 使污染，内含不纯
--I like honey ,but I don't want to drink the honey defiled by flies.
poison vt 污染(较口语化)
= foul up / pollute
--Gases from cars are poisoning the air of our city.

provocation n. 惹怒，激怒
provoke v.激起
=make angry or bad-tempered / cause 挑衅，引起，激起

--He was provoked beyond his endurance.
--He was provoked and it was more than he could endure.
他是怒不可遏。
arouse v. 激起
--The book **arouses / provokes** my interest.
bring about / result in / lead to / give rise to
provoke sb's interest in sth 激起某人兴趣
provoke sb to do / provoke sb into doing / cause sb to do sth 致使某人做某时
--You provoked him to say so,why?

revulsion n.厌恶
=disgust / dislike

uncanny a.神秘的,不可思议的
mysterious a. 神秘的
--They are leading a mysterious life.
--In spite of this ,he survived mysteriously.
eerie a.怪诞的,奇异的
--He looks eerie.
--What he said is eerie to me.
weird a.怪异的,怪诞的,奇异的
--I can't get along well with him because he is a weird person.
--Why do you decide to marry such a weird person?
cryptic a.神秘的,突出鬼鬼祟祟的
--Why did you do such a little thing in a cryptic way.

erase v.擦,抹去
--Erase the idea from your mind!
--He erases the name from the namelist.
cancel 取消
write off 把……勾销，注销
cross off 把……划去
--The word is unnecessary here, so it crossed off.
wipe out 完全擦掉
--I want to write on the blackboard , so I have to wipe all the words here out.
--I can't imaging why your are so hot ,please wipe out sweat on your face.
obliterate v. 涂去
--He obliterated two words in ink / with a pen.
--I obliterate the word with chalk.

entranced a.出神的
entrance n/vt: **carry away with joy and delight**
entrance to the room / hall
be entranced in thought 想得入了迷/出了神

--I don't know what he has in his mind, anyway he is entranced in thought.

be entranced with fear 吓得魂不附体

--At the story at night , I was entranced with fear.

be pleased with / be satisfied with / be popular with / entranced with +Performance/film/book

表示入迷

--He was entranced with film.

--Are you entranced with the story?

--He listened to the story entranced.

--The writer watched ants entranced.

ingenuity n.机灵

--The boy shows ingenuity **in** making toys.

这男孩在制作玩具方面显得机灵。

Text 课文

We have been brought up to fear insects.

我们自幼就在对昆虫的惧怕中长大。

We have been brought up to eat certain food.

We have learnt to do… 表示已经学会适应了什么。

--We have learnt to fear insects.

--Girls have been brought up to fear mice.

We regard them as unnecessary creatures that do more harm than good.

我们把昆虫当作害多益少的无用东西。

do morn harm than good

--The exercise will do you good.

--Smoking will do you harm.

We continually wage war on them, for they contaminate our food, carry diseases, or devour our crops.

人类不断同昆虫斗争，因为昆虫弄脏我们的食物，传播疾病，吞噬庄稼。

Wage war against / wage war on them

devour 吞噬

--Two dogs benefited from the accident and they devoured the remains of the cake.

--Her eyes devour the beautiful dress

They sting or bite without provocation; they fly uninvited into our rooms on summer nights, or beat ageist our lighted windows.

它们无缘无故地又叮又咬；夏天的晚上，它们未经邀请便飞到我们房间里，或者对着露出亮光的窗户乱扑乱撞。

fly uninvited into our rooms / without being invited

做定语时，light 只能用 lighted 形式

We live in dread not only of unpleasant insects like spiders or wasps, but of quite harmless one like moths.

我们在日常生活中，不但憎恶如蜘蛛、黄蜂之类令人讨厌的昆虫，而且憎恶并无大害的飞蛾等。

书面语中常常借助介词短语

口语中 I did so as / because I believe that you can do it well.

我这样做是因为我相信你能把这项工作做得很好。

书面语中 I did so in the belief that…

in the thought that / in the hope that

in / under 书面语中常使用

--Even he still lives under the illusion that country life is much more beautiful.

我的这些朋友还依旧抱有一种幻想乡村生活更美。

--We live under the illusion that city life is wonderful.

in dread : in fear

in dread of 害怕什么

dread doing / dread to do

ones : insects

在使用 **not only ……, but (also)……(as well)**句型时，要突出介词短语或动词短语中的介词，则此介词要重复出现。

--I live in dread not only of dogs, but of cats.

be afraid of

--I am afraid not only of dogs , but of cats.

both……and……

--We live in dread of both dogs and cats.

--I am interested not only in English , but in French.

Reading about them increases our understanding without dispelling our fears.

阅读有关昆虫的书能增加我们对它们的了解，却不能消除我们的恐惧的心理。

dispel : erase / get rid of / remove 消除，去除

Knowing that the industrious ant lives in a highly organized society does nothing to prevent us from being filled with revulsion when we find hordes of them crawling over a carefully prepared picnic lunch.

即使知道勤奋的蚂蚁生活具有高度组织性的社会里，当看到大群蚂蚁在我们精心准备的午间野餐上爬行时，我们也无法抑制对它们的反感。

in a highly organized society 具有高度组织性的社会

--We live in a highly organized society.

does nothing to do 不会起作用

--Doing so does nothing to prevent me from hating you.

Prevent sb. from doing sth. 阻止某人做某事

--Nothing will prevent me from saying so.

--Whatever you say does nothing to prevent me from attaining / accomplishing my goal.

无论你说什么都不会阻止我去实现我的梦想。

Accomplish goal / attain goal

Accomplish aim / attain aim

Horde / colony

Crawl / creep / climb

No matter how much we like honey, or how much we have read about the uncanny sense of direction which bees possess, we have a horror of being stung.

不管我们多么爱吃蜂蜜，或读过多少关于蜜蜂具有神秘的识别方向的灵感的书，我们仍然十分害怕被蜂蜇。

No matter how : however much

Dread / fear / horror / terror 语气逐步加强

--We become illogical when we have a horror of being stung.

Most of our fears are unreasonable, but they are impossible to erase.

我们的恐惧大部分是没有道理的，但去无法消除。

It is impossible for us to do sth

It is impossible for us to erase the fears.

It is easy foe everyone to read ./ it is easy to read.

At the same time, however, insects are strangely fascinating.

同时，不知为什么昆虫又是迷人的。

Be fascinated with 对……着迷

Strangely / uncanny 神秘的

We enjoy staring at them, entranced as they go about their business, unaware (we hope) of our presence.

我们喜欢看有关昆虫的书，尤其是当我们了解螳螂等过着一种令人生畏的生活时，就更加爱读有关昆虫的书了。

go about their business : as they do what they should do 干它们应该干的事

as they get down to their business

--let us get down to our business. 让我们言归正传。

--You should go about your business. 干你们应该干的事情。

注意该句的平行结构。

Who has not stood in awe at the sight of a spider pouncing on a fly, or a column of ants triumphantly bearing home an enormous dead beetle?

当看到蜘蛛扑向一只苍蝇时，一队蚂蚁抬着一只巨大的死甲虫凯旋归时，谁能不感到敬畏呢？

Stand in awe : fear but respect 敬畏

At the sight of : as soon as you see……一看到……
Pounce on : jump at / charge at 向什么猛扑过去
Stand in awe of 敬畏什么
--Generally speaking , employees stand in awe of their employer.
--In primary school , pupils stand in awe of their teacher.
A colony of ants 一群蚂蚁

Last summer I spent days in the garden watching thousands of ants crawling up the trunk of my prize peach tree.
去年夏天，我花了好几天时间站在花园里观察成千只蚂蚁爬上我那棵心爱的桃树的树干。
Prize ： dear

I am especially proud of it, not only because it has survived several severe winters, but because it occasionally produces luscious peaches.
那棵树是靠着房子有遮挡的一面暖墙生长的。我为这棵树感到特别自豪，不仅因为它度过了几个寒冬终于活了下来，而且还因为它有时结出些甘甜的桃子来。
如果要突出原因，则要重复 because.

During the summer, I noticed tat the leaves of the tree were beginning to wither.
到了夏天，我发现树叶开始枯萎.
Wither 枯萎
Horde / colony / column / cluster
一般形容小的动物。

<u>Clusters of tin insects called aphids were to be found on the underside of the leaves.</u>
结果在树叶背面找到成串的叫作蚜虫小虫子。
Were to be found / were found
See / find / congratulate 常和 be to 搭配，用于被动语态
The boy was found behind the door. 口语中
The boy was to be found behind the door. 书面语中
--He was congratulated by his friends.
--He was to be congratulated by his friends.
We can't find him anywhere. / we can find him nowhere. 到处也找不见他
He is nowhere to be **found / seen** 比较正式的书面用语

They were visited by a large colony of ants which obtained a sort of honey from them.
蚜虫遭到一窝蚂蚁的攻击，蚂蚁从它们身上可以获得一种蜜。
Which obtained : to obtain

I immediately embarked on an experiment which, even though if failed to get rid of the ants, kept me fascinated for twenty-four hours.

我当即动手作了一项试验，这项试验尽管没有使我摆脱这些蚂蚁，却使我着迷了 24 小时。

embarked on : set out to do / set about doing 正式的开始着手做某事

--I immediately set out to do an experiment.

kept me fascinated ： kept me occupied

<u>I bound the base of the tree with sticky tape, making it impossible for the ants to reach the aphids.</u>

我用一条胶带把桃树底部包上，不让蚂蚁接近蚜虫。

Bind / bound 捆绑

making it impossible for sb. to do -ing 形式做状语，进一步修饰前一步的情况。

--I work hard making it possible to pass the examination.

--I prepared dinner carefully, making it possible to please my guests.

The tape was so stick that they did not dare to cross it.

胶带极粘，蚂蚁不敢从上面爬过。

The didn't dare to cross it . / They dared not cross it.

注意 dare 用法。

Need / You needn't come here on Sunday.

You don't need to come here on Sunday.

For a long time. I watched them scurrying around the base of the tree in bewilderment.

在很长一段时间里，我看见蚂蚁围着大树底部来回转悠，不知所措。

In bewilderment : were lost 迷惑了

I even went out at midnight with a torch and noted with satisfaction (and surprise) that the ants were still swarming around the sticky tape without being able to do anything about it.

半夜，我还拿着电筒来到花园里，满意地（同时惊奇地）发现那些蚂蚁还围着胶带团团转。

Swarm around 团团转

Without being able to do anything about it 茫然不知所措

=unable to do anything about it

I got up early next morning hoping to find that the ants had given up in despair.

第二天早上，我起床后希望看见蚂蚁已因无望而放弃了尝试.

Hoping to do : in the hope that

I realized sadly that I had been completely defeated by their ingenuity.

我懊丧地感到败在了足智多谋的蚂蚁的手下。

I took a beating completely.

The ants had been quick to find an answer to my thoroughly unscientific methods!
蚂蚁已很快找到了相应的对策，来对付我那套完全不科学的办法！
Be quick to find an answer to / a solution to
--Daniel Mendoza was quick to learn.
--Ants are quick to find answer to their problem.

Vocabulary 词汇

Contaminate : make dirty , make impure.
Contaminate / taint
Contaminate / defile
Pollute / foul up / poison
Devour : eat hungrily
Provocation : being made angry
Provoke : make angry
Dispelling : erasing
Dispel : erase
Nothing can dispel our fear.
Industrious ： hard working
Revulsion : dislike
Pouncing : jumping at suddenly
Pounce on 猛扑向
The customs officer pounced on my tiny bottle.

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

Comprehension

1… 正确答案：B
rational 理性的 / irrational 没理性的
logical / illogical reasonable / unreasonable
rational / irrational
outrageous / ridiculous
be likely to do 有可能做
no less likely 可能性不大
掌握 we are no less likely to do sth.

2 正确答案：D

3 正确答案：A
虚拟语气，表示与过去事实相反

4 正确答案：C

up and down 上上下下 / 来来回回

around 来来回回

clusters of insects called aphids were to be found on the underside of the leaves.

5 正确答案：C

与第一题结合

6 正确答案：A

与第一题结合

7 正确答案：C

in spite of / despite / in contempt of / in disregard of

8 正确答案：D

it takes sb. or sth. Some time to do

表示花费某人某物多长时间

9 正确答案：B

can not help doing / can not resist doing

表示禁不住

10 正确答案：B

uncanny 神秘的

11 正确答案：B

luscious 甘美的

12 正确答案：C

speedy / swift / rapid / fast / quick / speedy / hasty

changtong 编于 2004-3-9

Lesson 55 Flash 无讲解

Lesson 56 Flash 无讲解

Lesson 57 Flash 无讲解

Exercise (lesson 54)

Vocabulary

contaminate v. 弄脏 玷污 *make dirty ,make impure*

contaminate / taint

contaminate/defile

pollute/foul up/poison

devour v.吞食 :*eat hungrily*

provocation n. 惹怒，挑衅 :*being made angry* provoke v. *make angry*

dispelling:*erasing* dispel:*erase*

industrious adj. 勤劳的 *hard working*

nothing can dispel our fear.

revulsion: *dislike*

pouncing: *jumping at suddenly* pounce on :猛扑向 *jumping on*

➢ Multiple choice questions 多项选择

comprehension

1. 正确答案：B（该句背熟）

even though , yet it can not with we have been broad up to fear them.

rational 有理性的 irrational 无理性的

logical/illogical reasonable/unreasonable rational/irrational outrageous/ridiculous

be likely to do 有可能做某事

no less likely 可能性不大（双重之否定）

we are no less likely to do sth. (记熟)

2. 正确答案：D

3. 正确答案：A

4. 正确答案：C

up and down 上上下下/来来回回 around 来来回回

Clusters of insects called aphids were to be found on the underside of the leaves.

struture

5. 正确答案：C

6. 正确答案：A

7. 正确答案：C

in spite of /despite/in contempt of/in disregard of

8. 正确答案：D

it takes sb. or sth. sometime to do .

9. 正确答案：B

can’t help doing sth. =can’t resist doing sth

10. 正确答案：B uncanny

11. 正确答案：B

luscious 甘美的， delicious 修饰食物 exotic 外来的

12. 正确答案：

迅速的：speedy （仓促的）/swift/rapid/fast/quick/speedy/hasty ingenuous 天真的老实的

by the inventive creatures 善于发明的动物 creative/inventive

Lesson 58 A spot of bother 一点小麻烦（记叙文）

Vocabulary

lift n. 电梯 elevator
monstrous adj. 极大的，可怕的 （个头比较大）monstrous ghost 可怕的妖怪
negligence adj. 粗心大意的（正式） 不可数名词 carelessness
prudent adj. 谨慎的 discreet/cautious/careful
例句：we must be careful otherwise we would get into the trouble because of negeligence.
composure n. 镇静 沉着 calm burglar
intruder n.入侵者 burglar 夜盗
lurk v.潜藏 lurk in the darkness
hinder v. 妨碍 hinder sb from doing sth. / prevent sb. from doing sth. 阻止某人做某事
fingerprint n.指纹
chaos n.混乱，无秩序 in the state of chaos 杂乱无序的状态 order / disorder confusion
inconceivable adj. 不可思议的 conceive (of) 构想/I can't conceive of it
conceive of …as 把.. 看作为/I conceive of the life there as beautiful picture.
regard as /describe as /imagine as/refer to…as/think of… as
conceivable/inconceivable
veritable adj. 真正地，地道的
magpie n.喜欢收藏物品的人 a person who like to collect things as a mania or serious hobby collector
toss v. 抛 toss a coin /Let us toss a coin to decide.
disgard v.丢弃 abandon/desert/forsake
give up as useless 因为没有用而放弃. desert 放弃自己责任 desert/forsake 放弃家人
disgard useless thing / disgard A for b 把 A 舍去换 B
constable n. 警察
balcony n.阳台
ransack v. 洗劫 The robbers ransack the bank.
fussy adj. 大惊小怪的 小题大做的 I know that boy ,he is fussy .(口语中)

➢ **课文讲解**

a spot of bother: a bit of bother 一点小麻烦
exhausted/tired out/worn out/ wear out 筋疲力尽（此句背熟）
having a lesson tied me as my school bag had grown heavier with every step of the way home.
thoughts …on 整个心思

例句：I didn't notice u as that moment because my thoughts were on the **Text** 课文 book.

You thoughts must be on them.
in the belief that ..
a piece of negligence negligence 不可数 （此句背熟）
when :at that moment
over 在.. 周围
confusion: chaos

it was as clear as that daylight that …

例句： he is as stubborn as a mule. / he is as poor as a church mouse.

obviously

impulse

a strong tea 浓茶

regain :recover

she was ready to set off to search for any intruders who might still be lurking in her flat with the porter's assistance.

go through : search

as though :as if

forced :broken

there was no trace of sth.

bundle: parcel a bundle of hay 一捆干草

enter v. entry n. enter WTO

apparently : obviously

creature: living things 生物

in her sudden discovery that

in the belief that..

可作口语材料

Lesson 59 Collecting 收藏

本课的重点：重复使用关键词，用来突出你的主题

收藏： amass
accumulate
collected
collecting
treasure
collection
addition
hobby=collecting
the latest find

New words and expression 生词和短语

Amass v. 积累（书面化）：花很长的时间；具有很大的价值，比 accumulate 正式的多。
同义词：
--gather: (小型)聚会
--assemble: (大型)聚会
--collect vt. 收藏 collect stamps / matchboxes/tax/parcel
--store/hold up: 大量的贮藏,

Indiscriminate adj. （不分青红皂白的）不加选择的
--He is indiscriminate in making friends.
同义词：
Uncritical：不加以批评的，随意的 [critical :批评的，批判的]
--She is uncritical while going shopping.(不分好坏的)
Unselective：不加以选择的 = uncritical，indiscriminate，[select：选择]
Haphazard: 任意/无计划的
--make haphazard remarks(妄作评论，随口乱说)
Random adj./n. 任意胡说的
-- at random {n.}
--Don't waste your time at random.(随便，随意)
--This is my random guess.
Casual：随便的（漫不经心的）[casually ad.]
--Do you speak casually?
Undiscriminate :不加以区别的 [discriminate:加以选择]
Desultory: 随意的（无条理）
--The careful study of a few books is better than the desultory reading of many.

Clutter: n. 一堆杂物（junk）
--Piles of junk litter that floor.

String: a. 连锁的
-- a string of 一串…

Requisite n. 必需品
--living requisite 生活必需品
同义词：
Necessity: 生活必需品；必不可缺的因素

Mania: n. 癖好
---have a mania for doing sth. 有做好某事的癖好（狂热）
同义词：
Craze: n. 狂热（时尚）
--be crazy about
Hobby: 很重视（不会忽略）
Mania：癖好（老人）
Desire：做某事的强烈愿望
--have desire for [to do] sth.
Madness: 疯狂的行为
--be mad about
--His madness of playing football is beyond me.
Insanity: 疯狂 =madness；crazy(但是 crazy 偏于“时尚”方面)
[Insane a.失去理智的，精神错乱的]
--His insanity is unexpected.

Remote: a.(机会，可能性)少的，小的
同义词：Slight
--The chances that he will pass the examination are remote.
=> The chances are remote that he will pass the examination.
反义词：good
--the chances that he will leave the hospital for New Year celebration are good.

Verify vt. 查证，核实
--you must verify the numbers/statistics.
同义词：
Certify: 证明，保证
Confirm: 证实
--My boss can confirm that I was here at that time.
Document: n. 文件
v.用文件证明
--Please document what you said just now. (v)
--I don’t believe you. I only believe in document. (n.)
Substantiate:证明（某事有根据）
--I can substantiate it.
Validate: 使生效的——〉确认证实[valid：有效的]

--we must validate the law.
Prove:证明证实是否怎样
Check:查对
--please check/verify the figures / statistics.

Bearing n. 关系，联系=relation/connection

Like-minded a. 志趣相投的
--we'd like to make friends with like-minded people.

Contented a. 心满意足的=pleased/satisfied/delighted
--Robert was not only pleased with my arrival but also delighted with my little gift.
Be {contented} with sth./sb.
{Pleased}
{Satisfied}
{Delighted}

Boredom n. 烦恼，无聊
同义词：
Monotonous/tedious/tired/tiresome/bored a.

Text 课文

写作特点：
对比：通过事物比事物法，分析事物之间的差异。

Tend to : 喜欢，有……倾向

Without being aware of doing sth.=>unawaring of doing sth.

Have a delighted surprise 有惊喜的感觉

What 引导 主语从句
--I am a collector of what can be described as valuable stamps.
--I know a person of what can be described as bookworm.

Unwanted objects 不要的东西

介词短语：在句中相当于动词
In the belief that= believe in
-- I did so in the belief that you can help me.
In the thought that =think in
--I said so in the thought that I wouldn't hurt you.
Under the impression that

--I am under the impression that the diamonds are really beautiful.

Very ,加强语气

At exactly that moment=at that very moment 就在那时

英文中注意词性相同的概念：

I failed my examination for two reasons, lack of hard work, being late for the examination.

Reason (n.)=>lack….; being…. (n.)

Sentiment : n.情感

Sentimental: a. 多愁善感的

in an attempt to do sth. 竭尽全力做某事 [比 to 表目的 赋予了感情色彩]

--He rarely goes shopping in an attempt to save up.

Thrifty=economical, frugal 节俭的

Save doing sth. 免掉做某事的麻烦

--after supper, I will wash up them and then you will save doing so.

[作进一步解释] save the trouble of doing sth

Sufficiently->enough

Every time=whenever

Collection 强调收藏品

Collecting 强调的是动作

--collecting stamps is my favorite hobby.

Relaxation=entertainment, amusement **休息，娱乐**

Treasures=valuable collection **珍宝，财宝**

由……组成：

consist of / be made up of / comprise / constitute /

与……密切相关

Have bearing on sth. / relation to /be related to/ have relation to

利益

Advantage / privilege / benefit

Be confined to 限定于……区域范围之内

--He is confined to the box.

Over the years=as time goes on :随着时间的流逝

Well.用来加强语气

Lesson 60 Too early and too late 太早和太晚

New words and expression 生词和短语

punctuality n. 准时
punctual adj. 守时
Whatever we do we must be punctual.无论我们做什么都应该守时。
be punctual to the minute 非常守时
He is a person who is punctual to the minute.他是一个非常守时的人

rural adv. 农村的
urban:城市的
rural life 乡村生活
urban life 城市生活

disregard v. 不顾，无视
disregard sth
disregard= ignore
pay no attention to
take no notice of
in disregard of
treat sb with disregard:怠慢某人

intellectual n. 知识分子

abstruse adj. 深奥的
abstract:抽象的
I am not good at mathematics because the subject is not only abstract but also abstruse.我不擅长数学因为它不仅抽象而且深奥。

coordinate v. 协调
Our efforts need to be further coordinated for higher efficiency.为了更好的提高效率我们需要更进一步的协调我们各方的努力。
efficiency=be efficient 效率
If you want to complete an ideal job with your classmates as quickly as possible,I think you must coordiate everthing as much as you can.如果你想和你的同学们更快的完成一项艰难的工作你们需要协调每一件事情。
coordinate work:协调工作
arrange:安排
Who will arrange the party?谁来安排这次聚会？
How can I arrange the paragraph?我该怎么安排这个自然段？
organize:组织
It's your duty to organize our meeting.组织我们的会议是你的责任。

harmonize vt.&vi.协调，使调和，配和音
The music is harmonized.这音乐已经给配上了和音。
We have to harmonize our work.我们不得不协调我们的工作。

reproach v. 责备
语气强于 blame/scold 弱于 reprehend
Don't reproach/blame him for such a little thing.不要因为这么一件小事而去责备他。
blame sb for sth
reproach n.
beyond reproach:无可指责
beyond doubt：毫无疑问
beyond understanding:无法理解
beyond description:无法描述
The problem is beyond/above me.这个问题难倒了我。

puncture v. 刺破（轮胎）

diversion n. 改道，绕道

trial n. 讨厌的事，人
nuisance：讨厌的人，事
trial:审讯，审判，尝试，实验
After his trial,he set out with his new plane.试飞之后，他开着他的新飞机出发了。

fraction n. 很小一点儿
a fraction of=a bit of

flourish n. 挥舞（打手势）
gesticulate v. 打手势

microscopic adj. 微小的
microphone:麦克风
microfilm:微型胶片
microwave oven:微波炉

adamant adj. 坚定的，不动摇的
steady：稳定的
He is living a steady life.他生活的很稳定。
strong-minded/firm/stable
贬义同义词：obstinate/stubborn
stable:(人)坚定的
If you are adamant,nothing is difficute for you to study English.如果你很坚定，那么学好英语那是一定的。
give up=yield=surrender:放弃，投降

unyielding=unsurrendering=adamant

He is(so)adamant(as)to stick to his stupid idea.他是如此地坚定以至于坚持自己这个愚蠢的想法。

All the students here are adamant enough to study English hard.

Text 课文

Punctuality is a necessary habit in all public affairs of a civilized society.

准时是文明社会各项公共事务中一个必不可少的习惯。

in civilized society=in modern society

necessary=essential

Mania is a habit we develop for a long time .癖好是长时间形成的一种习惯。

Without it ,nothing could ever be brought to a conclusion.

没有它，则一事无成。

bring sth to conclusion:作出结论

everything would be in a state of chaos.

事事都会处于混乱状态。

nothing 和 everything

平行句式，平行结构，同义词的重复，关键词的使用

everything would be in confusion/a state of chaos/disorder

Hard work is our necessity to study English.

用以下的句式体现 hard work 的重要性

Without it,we could not get any success./nothing could be completed.

Only in a sparsely-populated rural community is it possible to disregard it.

只有在人口稀少的农村里，才可能不顾及准时。

倒装：only 引导介词短语，时间/条件状语放在句首，句子要部分倒装。

第一个 it 是一个形式主语，第二个是代词代 punctuality

In ordinary living there can be some tolerance of unpunctuality.

在平时的生活中，对不准时的行为可以给予一些宽容。

in ordinary living=in our daily life

tolerance=the state to tolerate something terrible

不是某人所特有的而是一种普遍现象用 there be 句式

has everything coordinated and organized for the matter in hand

使一切都协调一致而且组织周密。

背诵这个表达方式。

Keep sb occupied 忙碌

But people are often reproached for unpunctuality when their only fault is cutting things

fine.
但是有些人的过错仅仅是由于时间抠的太紧而迟到，常会受到指责。
Cut things fine 压钟点
Most people have been tucked away at home. 很多人都呆在家里。

It is hard for energetic, quick-minded people to waste time, so they are often tempted to finish a job before setting out to keep an appointment.
精力充沛、头脑灵敏的人是很少浪费时间的，因此他们在出发前常常会设法完成某项工作。
Do sth before doing 在什么之前把什么结束掉
Be tempted to do :特别想要做某事
Be eager/anxious/desperate to do
Prefer to do
Would like to do
Would rather/sooner do
Would prefer to do
I can't resist the temptation to buy the beautiful dress.我特别渴望买下这条漂亮的裙子。
(书面语)I 'm quite/particularly tempted to buy the beautiful dress.

If no accidents occur on the way, like punctured tyres, diversions of traffic, sudden descent of fog, they will be on time.
如果途中没有发生像暴胎、改道或是突然降下大雾一类的意外的话，他们会准时到达的。
Descent:降临
Darkness descent very soon.夜幕降临
On time=keep punctuality
Some people can be forgiven because of what they do even though they are unpunctual.
一些人因为他们的工作可以被原谅，即便他们迟到。

The over-punctual can be as much a trial to others as the unpunctual.
过于早到和迟到一样让人受不了
重点句型，背熟
the + adj.=n.形容词名词化

The guest who arrives half an hour too soon is the greatest nuisance. Some friends of my family had this irritating habit.
Nuisance=trial

The only thing to do was ask them to come half an hour later than the other guests. Then they arrived just when we wanted them.
唯一的措施就是约请他们比别的客人晚半个小时，这样他们正好在我们要求的时间到达。
The only thing to do is help you in this way.我只能这样帮你了。
What I want you to do is help me.
如果当不定式做表语，主句结构当中也出现了不定式，坐表语的不定式 to 符号应该被略掉，以避免重复。

Although being early may mean wasting a little time, this will be less than if you miss the train and have to wait an hour or more for the next one.

尽管早到可能意味着浪费一点时间，但是比起你搭上车而不得不等一小时或更长一些时间来乘下一趟车所浪费的时间要少些。

Mean doing sth 意味

注意 less 的翻译

And you avoid the frustration of arriving at the very moment when the train is drawing out of the station and being unable to get on it.

而且你避免了正好在火车离站时到达而不能上车的挫折。

Draw up:停车

Draw(pull) out of station:离战

When we get failures over and over again, we always get the frustration inside our heart. The frustration inside you can prevent you from doing what you are doing.

如果我们总是失败,我们的内心就会有一种挫败感. 挫败感会妨碍你做任何一件事情.

An even harder situation is to be on the platform in good time for a train and still to see it go off without you. Such an experience befell a certain young girl the first time she was traveling alone.

一个更难以忍受的情景是刚好及时来到站台，仍然眼巴巴看着火车开走而上不了车。某个年轻姑娘初次单独旅行时曾有过这样的经历。

In good time =on time

Befall=sth bad happen to

She entered the station twenty minutes before the train was due, since her parents had impressed upon her that it would be unforgivable to miss it and cause the friends with whom she was going to stay to make two journeys to meet her.

这个姑娘在列车进站前 20 分钟就进了站。因为她的父母叮嘱她说误了火车并迫使她去聚会的朋友跑两次去接她，这是不可原谅的。

Due:按计划而正常进行

The meeting is due to begin at 9 o’clock tomorrow morning.

会议明天早上九点如期举行。

The train is due to set off at 3 pm.

Impress upon sb that:再三的叮嘱某人，repeat sth over and over again

Make two journeys to meet her 接她两次

He agreed that a train did come into the station at the time on the paper and that it did stop, but only to take on mail, not passengers.

这个搬运工承认按纸上所写的时间是有一列火车进站，而且也会停，但是只是装邮件，不运载旅客。

Did 在句中表示强调

Only 表示很遗憾的心情

I hurry to the store only to find it was closed.

The girl asked to see a timetable, feeling sure that her father could not have made such a mistake.

这个姑娘要求看时刻表，心里想她父亲不会犯这样的错误。

Feeling sure that……

We have learnt to expect that trains are punctual.

The girl, tears streaming down her face, begged to be allowed to slip into the guard's van.

这个姑娘的脸上流下了泪水，哀求让她溜进列车员的车厢。

tears streaming down her face 独立主格结构

And she had to watch that train disappear towards her destination while she was left behind.

她只得眼望着火车消失在她要去的方向，而自己却被留下了。

Disappear towards:朝着什么消失

Multiple choice questions 多项选择

1…b…

neglect=disregard=ignore

sparsely populated,fewpeople

only in a sparsely population rural community is it possible to disregard punctuality.

2…b…cut things fine/cutted fine/cut time fine

3…d…

4…b…it is/will be/would be possible for sb to do sth

5…b…through:通过

although being early may mean wasting a little time.

6…c…had better,上级对下级或有经验的人对没有经验的人

7…a…

8…c…

9…c…in varying degrees:在不同的程度上（不断变化）

10…b…

trial:讨厌的事

trying adj.气人的

detestable:可恨的，可憎的

provident:有先见之明的，有深谋远虑的

considerate=thoughtful:体贴的，inconsiderate:没有慎重考虑的

11…a…

impress upon:再三嘱托

stress the point

give the impression:给某人以印象

12…c…